Intelligent Workflow Approvals on Salesforce Summer 2019 Administrator Guide Rev A

10 September 2019

Table of Contents

About This Guide 11

What's New 13

About Apttus Intelligent Workflow Approvals 15

Key Capabilities for Intelligent Workflow Approvals 15

Installing Apttus Intelligent Workflow Approvals 16

Logging in to Apttus Intelligent Workflow Approvals 18

To log into the application 18

Upgrading to Intelligent Workflow and Approvals 19

Upgrading to 7.2 Intelligent Workflow and Approvals 19

Upgrading to Intelligent Workflow and Approvals 7.1 20

To configure related user values 21

Related User Assignee Backward Compatibility Support 22

Recommended Configurations for Intelligent Workflow and Approvals 7.1 22

CPQ Cart Approvals Preview from Quote 23

Configuring the Preview Page 23

To configure the Preview page and Controller class 24

Recommended Configurations for Intelligent Workflow and Approvals 7.1 25

Upgrading from Intelligent Workflow and Approvals 6.5 to 7.1 **25**

Related User Assignee Backward Compatibility Support **27**

Quote/Proposal Package **28**

Approval Functional End User Workflow 29

CPQ Workflow **30**

Approving a Request **31**

Submitting a Request with Attachments **32**
Submit with Attachments on SF1 33

Approvals and My Approval Pages **33**
Approvals Page 33
Approvals Page on SF1 34
My Approvals Page 35
My Approvals Page for SF1 36

Continue Pending Approvals on Reject **37**
Continue Pending Approvals on Reject Scenario 37

Auto Reapprovals **40**
Auto Reapprovals Scenario 40

Consolidated Approvals **45**

Delegate Approver for an approver **48**
Setting up Backup or Delegate Approvers 49

Adding an Ad Hoc Approver **60**
Adding an Ad Hoc Approver After an Assigned Approver 61
Adding an Ad Hoc Approver Before an Assigned Approver 62
Adding an Ad Hoc Approver Parallel to an Assigned Approver 64
Prerequisites for Adding an Ad Hoc Approver 65

Reassigning an Approval Request **66**

Prerequisites for Re-assigning an Approver 67
To reassign an approver 67

Custom Query Callback for Reassigning and Adding Approver 68
To override the default behavior 71
To specify the custom reassign user search, do the following: 71
To override the Default Query Callback class 71

Auto-escalating Approval Requests 80
Configuring Auto-escalation 81
Email Templates for Auto-escalation 85
Auto-escalation Behavior 85
Best Practices 89

Clone Quote with its existing configuration 90

Approval Submission Comments 93
Configuring Approval Comments 93
Submitting Comments 96
Making Comments Mandatory or Optional 98

Configuring CPQ Approval Workflow 100

Mandatory Configuration 103
Approval System Properties 103
To set the Approval & Config System Properties 105
Configuring Global Settings 106
To configure global settings 106
Setting up the Admin Profiles 108
Configuring Email Templates 108
Installing Customization Samples package 109
Configuring Email Templates 109
Configuring Search Filters 118

Approval Process for CPQ 120
Consolidating Approvals and Notifying Users 123
Approval Step Enhancements 129
Creating Advanced Options 140
Initiating an Approval Request 142

Dimensions 143
Approval Rules 144
Approval Rule Assignees 145
Setting up Auto-escalation for Rule Assignees 148
Approval Policies 149
To configure buttons and fields for approvals in communities 157
Custom Assignee Example 159

Configuring Intelligent Workflow and Approvals for Custom Objects 174

Configuration Overview 174
To configure global settings 177

Mandatory Configuration for Custom and Agreement Objects 181
Approval System Properties 181
To set the Approval & Config System Properties 184
Configuring Global Settings 184
To configure global settings 184
Setting up the Admin Profiles 185
Configuring Email Templates 186
Installing Customization Samples package 187
Configuring Email Templates 187
Configuring Search Filters 198
Configuring Email Templates for Custom Objects 200
Global Settings for Custom Objects and its Related Objects 202

Adding Approval Status to Objects 204
To add a picklist field for approvals to objects 204

Adding Values to Approval picklists 205
To add a new Object to Approval Process picklist 205
To add API name to Approval Process picklist 206
To add API name to Approval Rule Dimension picklist 206
To add API name to Approval Rule picklist 206
To add API name to Search Filter picklist 207

Configuring My Approvals and Approvals Pages 207
Configuring the My Approvals button 208
Configuring the Preview & Submit Approvals button 209

Approval Required Check **212**
Workflow Rules: An alternative to Approval Required Check 213
213
To create an approval required check trigger 213
Creating Search Filters (Approvals) 215
Configuring and Creating Search Filters 215

Approval Process for Custom Objects **217**
Consolidating Approvals and Notifying Users 219
Approval Step Enhancements 226
Creating Advanced Options 237
Initiating an Approval Request 239
Dimensions 240
Approval Rules 241
Approval Rule Assignees 242
Setting up Auto-escalation for Rule Assignees 245
Approval Policies 246
To configure buttons and fields for approvals in communities 254
Custom Assignee Example 256

Licensing Intelligent Approvals for Custom Objects **270**
To license users 270

Configuring a Custom Approval Action for Non-Salesforce or Apttus profiles **271**

Configuring Intelligent Workflow and Approvals for Agreement and related Objects 272

Configuration Overview **272**
Best Practices 278

Mandatory Setting for Agreement Objects **280**
Approval System Properties 280
To set the Approval & Config System Properties 283
Configuring Global Settings 283
To configure global settings 283
Setting up the Admin Profiles 284
Configuring Email Templates 285

Installing Customization Samples package 286
Configuring Email Templates 286
Configuring Search Filters 297
Configuring Email Templates for Agreement and its related Objects 299
Configuring Global Settings for Agreement and its related Objects 301

Adding Values to the Agreement Picklist 303
To add a new Object to Approval Process picklist 303
To add API name to Approval Process picklist 304
To add API name to Approval Rule Dimension picklist 304
To add API name to Approval Rule picklist 304
To add API name to Search Filter picklist 304

Adding Approval Status to Agreement and its related Objects 305
To add a picklist field for approvals to objects 305

Approval Required Check for Agreement 306
Workflow Rules: An alternative to Approval Required Check 307
To create an approval required check trigger 307
Creating Search Filters (Approvals) 309
Configuring and Creating Search Filters 309

Pre requisite: 311

Approval Process for Agreements and its Related Objects 315
Consolidating Approvals and Notifying Users 317
Approval Step Enhancements 324
Creating Advanced Options 335
Initiating an Approval Request 337
Dimensions 338
Approval Rules 339
Approval Rule Assignees 340
Setting up Auto-escalation for Rule Assignees 343
Approval Policies 344
To configure buttons and fields for approvals in communities 352
Custom Assignee Example 354

Licensing Intelligent Approvals for Agreement and its related Objects 368
To license users 368

Creating Term Exception Approval Processes 369

To create a Term Exception Approval 370
371
To create a Term Exception Approval Condition 371

Optional Configuration 373

Changing the Default Approvals Process User Interface 374
To change the default Intelligent Approvals Process UI 374
To change the default Term Exception Approvals UI 374

Changing the Assignee Search page results list 375
To set the assignees search page 375

Opportunity record fields and Advanced Currency Management 375

Support for Apttus Intelligent Approvals from Communities 376
To configure buttons and fields for approvals in communities 378

Reporting on Approval Request Channels 378
To create a custom report 378

Changing Approval Rule Step Behavior 379
To set the admin property setting 379

Setting up Custom Assignee Value Expression Objects 380
To set up Custom Value Expression Objects 380
Custom Assignee Example 381

Creating Approval Matrices 384
To create Global Discount Policies 384
To create an approval matrix 385

Adding Related fields to a Criteria 387
To add business objects to Formula Field picklist 387
To set up Formula Fields (Approvals) 388

Child Object Filters for Step Entry Criteria 389
Configuring the Search Filters 390
Walkthrough 390
Example: Child Object Filters 391

To configure the Cart Approvals page and Apex class 394

To create Custom Queues: 396

Appendices 401

Glossary of Intelligent Approval Terms 402

Approval Email Notification Templates 408

Approvals Custom Config Settings 411

Limitations and Exceptions 412
Supported Mobile Browsers for Approvals 412
Windows 10 browser support 413
Handling a large number of Approval Rules 413
Lightning and SF1 limitations 414

Supported SOQL Limits 414

FAQs 415

Migrating Approval Data 416
Tools used for Migrating Data 416
Naming convention 417
Execute the following steps 417
Exporting Data 417
Importing Data 418

Apttus Copyright Disclaimer 423

About This Guide

With the Intelligent Workflow Approvals on Salesforce Administrator Guide, you can find out how Apttus Intelligent Workflow Approvals works and how to set up approvals for your customers.

Topic	Description
What's Covered	This guide is designed to provide administrators with information on setting up approvals within Apttus Intelligent Workflow Approvals. This guide covers the most common use cases for administration and assumes a level of familiarity with basic Salesforce.
Primary Audience	Admin users responsible for setting up approvals and users for Apttus Intelligent Workflow Approvals.
IT Environment	Refer to the latest Apttus Intelligent Workflow Approvals on Salesforce Release Notes for information on System Requirements and Supported Platforms.
Updates	For a comprehensive list of updates to this guide for each release, see the What's New topic.
Other Resources	• Intelligent Workflow Approvals SOAP API Guide: Refer to this guide for APIs provided to work with Intelligent Workflow and Approvals objects.

This guide describes the following tasks:

- Approval Functional End User Workflow
- Configuring CPQ Approval Workflow
- Configuring Intelligent Workflow and Approvals for Agreement and related Objects
- Configuring Intelligent Workflow and Approvals for Custom Objects
- Optional Configuration

Before using Intelligent Workflow Approvals, you must be familiar with the following:

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- Basic Salesforce administration
- Salesforce and Apttus terms and definitions

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

What's New

The following table lists changes in the documentation to support each release.

Release	Topic	Description
Summer 2019 Rev A	Approval Submission Comments	Modified topic to update information related to mandatory comments for approval and rejection.
	Migrating Approval Data	Modified topic. Added note to clarify Step Group migration step.
Summer 2019	Custom Query Callback for Reassigning and Adding Approver	Modified topic. Added information for reassigning approver.
	Setting Up a Backup or Delegate for Out-Of-Office	New topic.
	Creating Approval Steps	Modified topic.
	Creating the Process Definition	Modified topic.
	Setting Up Backup and Delegate Approvers	Modified topic.
	Approval Email Notification Templates	Modified topic.
	Approval and My Approval Pages	Modified topic.
Spring 2019	N/A	No new topics were added.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Release	Topic	Description
Winter 2018	Configuring CPQ Approval Workflow	Modified topic. Added information for Standard Approval Step and Approval Rule Entry Step.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

About Apttus Intelligent Workflow Approvals

Intelligent Workflow Approvals enables you to trigger an approval request for any object and send an email notification to the concerned stakeholders.

Using Intelligent Workflow Approvals, you can set an approval request on an object header, line item, or both. Once an approval request is triggered, an approver can approve or reject a request via email or via Salesforce by logging into their org and viewing all the available requests in the My Approval or Home Page.Apttus Quote-to-Cash enhances the visibility and agility of all business processes from initiating a prospective customer, to preparing a quote to managing contracts and renewals with its intelligent workflow. By implementing with your Salesforce1 data, you can improve enterprise-wide collaboration, streamline approvals, and significantly cut down sales cycles.

Apttus provides over a dozen intelligent workflow capabilities that can help you get much more out of standard and custom Salesforce1 objects. You can gain a greater control over your sales process, discounts and exceptions so you can get higher productivity and more wins.

Key Capabilities for Intelligent Workflow Approvals

- Workflow Preview: See past and future workflow steps and know where the approval steps are going.
- What-If Scenario Planning: Change parameters in your fields to modify where approvals go.
- Out of Office Assistant: Assign backups for approvals in your absence, define the time frames and then all the approvals will go to the backup with full audit trails.
- Multiple Conditions Approvals: Define a rule with multiple conditions, from any object and drive an approval to multiple people.
- Dynamic Rules Table: Set up your own rules, conditions, and exceptions in a table and the workflow will automatically reference it without having to set up individual workflows for each rule.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Installing Apttus Intelligent Workflow Approvals

Multiple packages must be installed to implement the complete Intelligent Workflow Approvals solution. Packages for Intelligent Workflow Approvals must be installed in the order indicated in the table in this section. You begin with the Apttus base packages and then install the integration packages that enable the various products to function together.

Caution

Apttus recommends downloading and installing Apttus packages in a Salesforce sandbox org **before** installing them in your production environment. For information on installing and upgrading in a sandbox, please contact Apttus Support before you install any packages.

Install the packages in the following order.

Order	Package	Install Center tab to access the package	Required?
1	Apttus Approvals Management	Advance Approval	Y
2	Apttus CPQ Approvals Management (Required if you are using CPQ)	Advance Approval	Y
3	Apttus Contract Management (Required if you are using CPQ and Agreement Approvals)	Contract Management	Y
4	Apttus Proposal Management (Required if you are using CPQ Approvals)	CPQ	Y

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Order	Package	Install Center tab to access the package	Required?
5	Apttus Configuration & Pricing (Required if you are using CPQ Approvals)	CPQ	Y
6	Apttus Quote/Proposal Configuration Integration (Required if you are using CPQ and Proposal management)	Integrations	Y
7	Apttus Contract-Configuration Integration (Required if you are using CLM)	Integrations	Y
8	Apttus Quote/Proposal Approvals Management (Required if you are using Proposal Management)	Advance Approval	Y
9	Apttus Custom Approvals Management (Required if you are using Apttus Objects or other Salesforce Standard/Custom Objects)	Advance Approval	Y

⚠ You must have Apttus-provided login credentials to the Apttus Community Portal to be able to download packages.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Logging in to Apttus Intelligent Workflow Approvals

Log in to your Salesforce.com org.

> **Note**
>
> Do not use the Back button on your browser.

Before you log in, make sure you meet the following criteria.

- All Apttus Intelligent Workflow Approvals packages are installed.
- You have administrative privileges.
- You have login credentials provided by Apttus.

To log into the application

1. Go to http://www.salesforce.com.
   Or
   If your organization is using a sandbox or test environment (for example, if you are doing user acceptance testing), go to http://test.salesforce.com instead.
2. In the toolbar at the top of the page, click **Login**. The login page opens.
3. Enter your **User Name** and **Password**, and click **Log in to Salesforce**.

You have successfully logged into the application.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Upgrading to Intelligent Workflow and Approvals

Upgrading to 7.2 Intelligent Workflow and Approvals

When you upgrade the IWA package from versions lower than 7.2.370, ensure that you do not use the ChangePendingProcess query parameter in the *Preview & Submit Approvals* button as described on Approvals and My Approval Pages. Use the *Enable Resubmit* check box instead as described in Mandatory Configuration.

When you upgrade the IWA package from versions lower than 7.2.350 to the latest version, ensure that you make the manual changes listed in this section. Ensure that you make the changes after you install the IWA 7.2 package. To use the 7.2 features and capabilities ensure that you execute all the upgrade steps.

Inflight Approvals - Group-level approval status for Sub-Process and Child Process approvals will be blank for the records in which approvals are already in progress at the time of upgrade. The status will be correctly displayed for the records that are submitted for approval after upgrade.

If you want to have consistency across all approval requests and want them to reflect the new enhanced approval status, run the following script and update the approval status.

To run this script, all users must be logged off, and all custom triggers related to the **child** context object and **Approval Request** must be switched off.

Execute the following batch job using the Salesforce Developer Console (*Submitter will be notified when the job completes*):-

```
Apttus_Approval.ApprovalStatusUpdateBatchJob updateJob = new Apttus_Approval.
ApprovalStatusUpdateBatchJob();

ID statusUpdateJobId = Database.executeBatch(updateJob, batch-size);
```

The above upgrade updates the Approval status database values as well.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Upgrading to Intelligent Workflow and Approvals 7.1

When you upgrade the IWA package from 6.5 to 7.1, ensure that you make the manual changes listed in this section. Ensure that you make the changes after you install the IWA 7.1 package. To use the 7.1 feature and capabilities, ensure that you execute all the upgrade steps.

If the assignee type is Related User in Approval Rule entry, it should refer to a User lookup field. Related user assignee is now enhanced to show the relevant User lookup fields in the picklist. The following are applicable for a related user assignee:

- Not supported: Text field for an assignee.
- Related User assignee type field value needs to be of type user lookup for the context object you create a rule for.
- If your current implementation does not include the user field as a look-up field, ensure that you define a user look up field for a related user. For more information about configuring related user look-up fields refer To configure user related fields.
- Change the existing approval rule and standard step entries to refer to the new user look up fields for assignee type Related User.

The table below highlights the picklist values you have to add to custom fields of certain custom objects.

> **Note**
>
> You must add these picklist values only if you have Apttus CPQ package installed. If your org does not use CPQ, these changes are not required.

Table 1. Adding picklist values to custom fields

Object	Field	Add to Picklist
ApprovalRule__c	BusinessObject__c	Apttus_Config2__LineItem__c Apttus_Config2__ProductConfiguration__c Apttus_Proposal__Proposal__c
ApprovalRule__c	RuleType__c	Condition

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Object	Field	Add to Picklist
FormulaField__c	BusinessObject__c	Apttus_Config2__LineItem__c Apttus_Config2__ProductConfiguration__c Apttus_Proposal__Proposal__c

The table below highlights the values you have to add to record types of custom objects:

Table 2. Adding values to be selected from a picklist of a record type

Custom Object	Record Type	Add to Selected Values in Picklist
ApprovalProcess__c	Approval Process	Context Type:Click Edit and add Single and Multiple to Selected Values.
ApprovalProcess__c	Step	Step Type: Click Edit and add Standard, Subprocess, and Child Process to the Selected values. Set the default value as Standard.

After upgrading IWA from 6.5 to 7.1, ensure that you provide appropriate step labels for the previous and existing approval processes defined. When the users click **Preview** or view the list of approval steps in 7.1, the appropriate step label names appear. For steps where the label value is null, the step name or the subsequent subprocess number is displayed.

To configure related user values

For the object that you want to define an Approval Rule for, ensure you create a field of type Look up relationship related to the User object. The steps below enable you to create a look up relationship for the Product Configuration object.

1. Navigate to **Setup > Create >Objects > Product Configuration**.
2. Click **New > (Datatype) Lookup Relationship > (Related To) User**.
3. Specify **Field Name** and click **Next**.
4. Select the profiles that can access the fields and click **Next**.
5. Select the **Page Layout** on which the field is visible and click **Save**.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

When you define an approval rule for **Product Configuration**, and within the rule entry you select the **Assignee Type** as Related User, the lookup field added to the object are available in the **Value** drop-down list.

Related User Assignee Backward Compatibility Support

This section lists the enhancements added to support backward compatibility for a Related User.

You can assign a Related User as an approval assignee at the following places:

- Approval Rule
- Standard Step
- Auto-Escalation for a standard step

Configure a Related User in the following ways:

- To view the Related Users in a drop-down list, the Related User field should be a lookup to the User field.
- To specify the Related Users in a text field, the Related User field should be a text or a formula field.
- If Related User is a text field which requires inputs, specify the user id of the user in the text field.

  For defining a Related User assignee, you have to specify the API name of the field at the context object.

System Behavior when you specify a Related User:

- If the Related User field is a User Lookup field, then the system retains the selection even when the user switches from look up to formula field. However, if the Related User field is not a User lookup field, then switching the option will remove the selection.

  This enables the backward compatibility with Related User behavior on Approval Rule assignee prior to 7.X release.

Recommended Configurations for Intelligent Workflow and Approvals 7.1

In addition to the upgrade steps, we recommend that you configure the following when you upgrade to 7.1 or a later release.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- Approvals page: Provides an enhanced page that can be used by requestors to preview approvals, submit approval requests, view approval status, and recall approvals.
- My Approvals page: Provides a page to enable approvers to view the required approvals, approve, reject assigned items or add ad hoc approvals.
- New email notification templates: New email notification templates enables an approver to approve or reject all assigned requests by responding to an email or by accessing the My Approvals page from the email notification.
- Approval Required Check - This is a required step to use the Approvals and My Approvals pages.
- Ensure that you enable Bypass Sharing in Custom Settings > Approval System Properties.

CPQ Cart Approvals Preview from Quote

This enables you to launch a detailed approvals preview page based on the current shopping cart (*Product Configuration*), from the Quote/Proposal record. It includes *Return*, *Submit*, and *Cancel* actions.

This functionality is the same as initiating approvals from within the shopping cart; however, instead of using the product configuration you are actively working on, the most recent product configuration from the *Configurations* related list on the Quote/Proposal record is shown in the preview.

Configuring the Preview Page

You can use the **Custom Approvals Preview** page for Custom Preview instead of standard approvals preview page. This enables you to add custom information along with the information available in the standard page. Custom information sections can be added either at the top of standard screen or bottom of standard screen.

Two files are required to customize Previewing approvals: *AptsCartApprovals.page*, and *AptsCartApprovalsController.cls*. The code provided for pages and classes should be copy or pasted into the new objects in Salesforce, from where you can customize it.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Note

Please read the content of the page and class. There are warnings in the controller class that must be followed to ensure this feature works as expected.

To configure the Preview page and Controller class

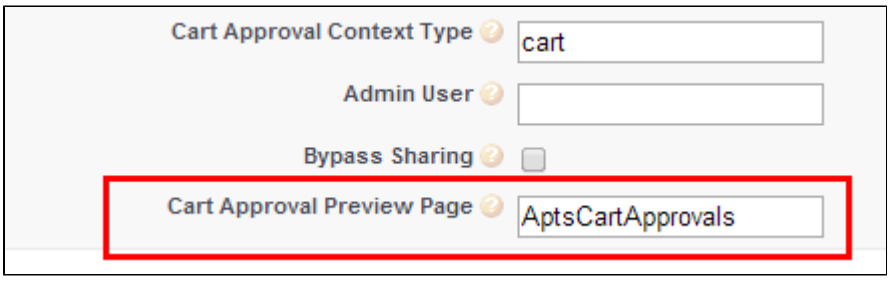
You must have created the utility classes. See To create the Utility classes.

1. From **Setup**, go to **Develop > Apex Classes**, click **New** and ensure the name of the new class is *AptsCartApprovalsController*. You can usefieldsetnameto include additional columns to display more information on the preview page, by default the *Sequence*, *Step Name*, and *Assigned To* fields are displayed.
2. Save the class and then go to **Pages** and click **New**.
3. Copy and paste the requisite code into the Visualforce Markup window:
4. Ensure the name is *AptsCartApprovals* and click **Save**.

The components required to display the preview page and enable an approval process to be submitted are ready.

You must ensure the button that will reference the *AptsCartApprovals* Visualforce page is displayed on the *Quote/Proposal* page. With a new installation this should happen automatically, but if you are upgrading you may need to add the button to the Page Layout.

After you have created a custom page, to use it, go to **Develop > Custom Settings > Approvals System Properties** and reference it using the *Cart Approval Preview Page* field.



Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Recommended Configurations for Intelligent Workflow and Approvals 7.1

In addition to the upgrade steps, we recommend that you configure the following when you upgrade to 7.1 or a later release.

- Approvals page: Provides an enhanced page that can be used by requestors to preview approvals, submit approval requests, view approval status, and recall approvals.
- My Approvals page: Provides a page to enable approvers to view the required approvals, approve, reject assigned items or add ad hoc approvals.
- New email notification templates: New email notification templates enable an approver to approve or reject all assigned requests by responding to an email or by accessing the My Approvals page from the email notification.
- Approval Required Check - This is a required step to use the Approvals and My Approvals pages.
- Ensure that you enable Bypass Sharing in **Custom Settings > Approval System Properties**.

Upgrading from Intelligent Workflow and Approvals 6.5 to 7.1

When you upgrade the IWA package from 6.5 to 7.1, ensure that you make the manual changes listed in this section. Ensure that you make the changes after you install the IWA 7.1 package. To use the 7.1 feature and capabilities ensure that you execute all the upgrade steps.

If the assignee type is Related User in Approval Rule entry, it should refer to a User lookup field. Related user assignee is now enhanced to show the relevant User lookup fields in the picklist. The following are applicable for a related user assignee:

- Not supported: Text field for an assignee.
- Related User assignee type field value needs to be of type user lookup for the context object you create a rule for.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- If your current implementation does not include the user field as a lookup field, ensure that you define a user lookup field for a related user. For more information about configuring related user look-up fields refer To configure user related fields.
- Change the existing approval rule and standard step entries to refer to the new user lookup fields for assignee type Related User.

The table below highlights the picklist values you have to add to custom fields of certain custom objects.

> **Note**
>
> You must add these picklist values only if you have Apttus CPQ package installed. If your org does not use CPQ, these changes are not required.

Table 1. Adding picklist values to custom fields

Object	Field	Add to Picklist
ApprovalRule__c	BusinessObject__c	Apttus_Config2__LineItem__cApttus_Config2__ProductC Apttus_Proposal__Proposal__c
ApprovalRule__c	RuleType__c	Condition
FormulaField__c	BusinessObject__c	Apttus_Config2__LineItem__cApttus_Config2__ProductC

The table below highlights the values you have to add to record types of custom objects:

Table 2. Adding values to be selected from a picklist of a record type

Custom Object	Record Type	Add to Selected Values in Picklist
ApprovalProcess__c	Approval Process	Context Type:Click Edit and add Single and Multiple to Selected Values.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Custom Object	Record Type	Add to Selected Values in Picklist
ApprovalProcess__c	Step	Step Type: Click Edit and add Standard, Subprocess, and Child Process to the Selected values. Set the default value as Standard.

After upgrading IWA from 6.5 to 7.1, ensure that you provide appropriate step labels for the previous and existing approval processes defined. When the users click **Preview** or view the list of approval steps in 7.1, the appropriate step label names appear. For steps where the label value is null, the step name or the subsequent subprocess number is displayed.

Related User Assignee Backward Compatibility Support

This section lists the enhancements added to support backward compatibility for a Related User.

You can assign a Related User as an approval assignee at the following places:

- Approval Rule
- Standard Step
- Auto-Escalation for a standard step

Configure a Related User in the following ways:

- To view the Related Users in a drop-down list, the Related User field should be a lookup to the User field.
- To specify the Related Users in a text field, the Related User field should be a text or a formula field.
- If Related User is a text field which requires inputs, specify the user id of the user in the text field.For defining a Related User assignee, you have to specify the API name of the field at the context object.

System Behavior when you specify a Related User:

- If the Related User field is a User Lookup field, then the system retains the selection even when the user switches from look up to formula field. However, if the Related User field is not a User lookup field, then switching the option will remove the selection.This enables the backward compatibility with Related User behavior on Approval Rule assignee prior to 7.X release.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

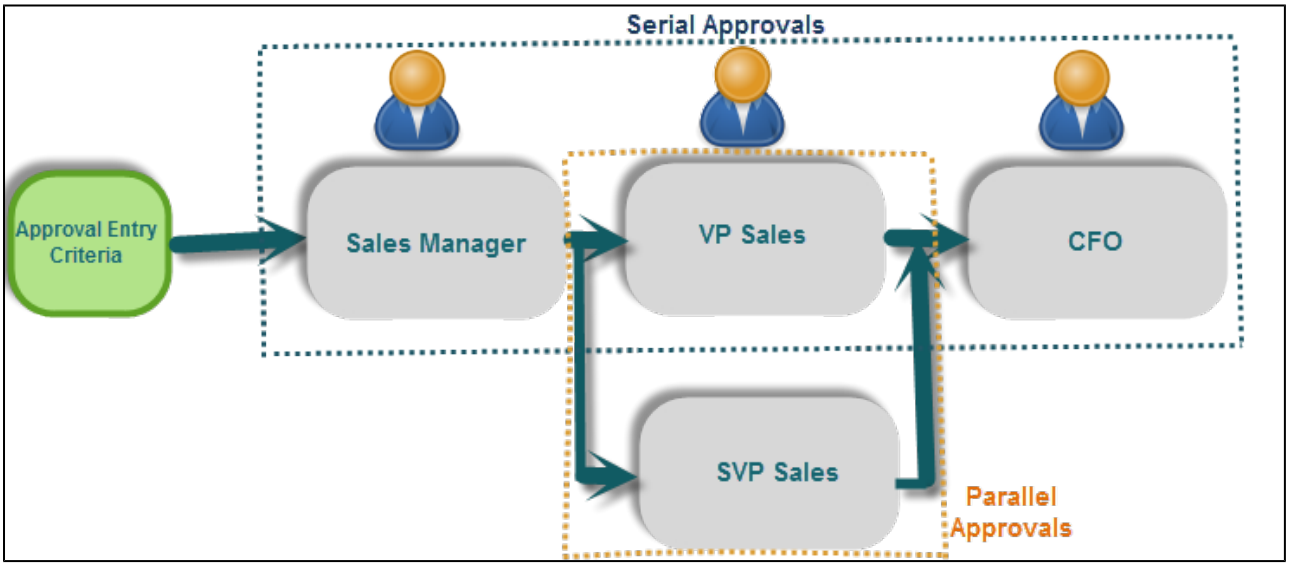
Quote/Proposal Package

To be able to associate *Quote/Proposals* or *Proposal Line Items* with Intelligent Workflow and Approvals, you must install the Apttus Quote/Proposal-Approvals Management package.The Intelligent Workflow and Approvals package you install to get Intelligent Workflow and Approvals feature functionality, works with *Opportunities*, *Agreements*, and *Agreement Term Exceptions*. The Quote/Proposal package provides all the required components, such as email templates and custom links, to use *Quote/Proposals* and *Proposal Line Items*.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

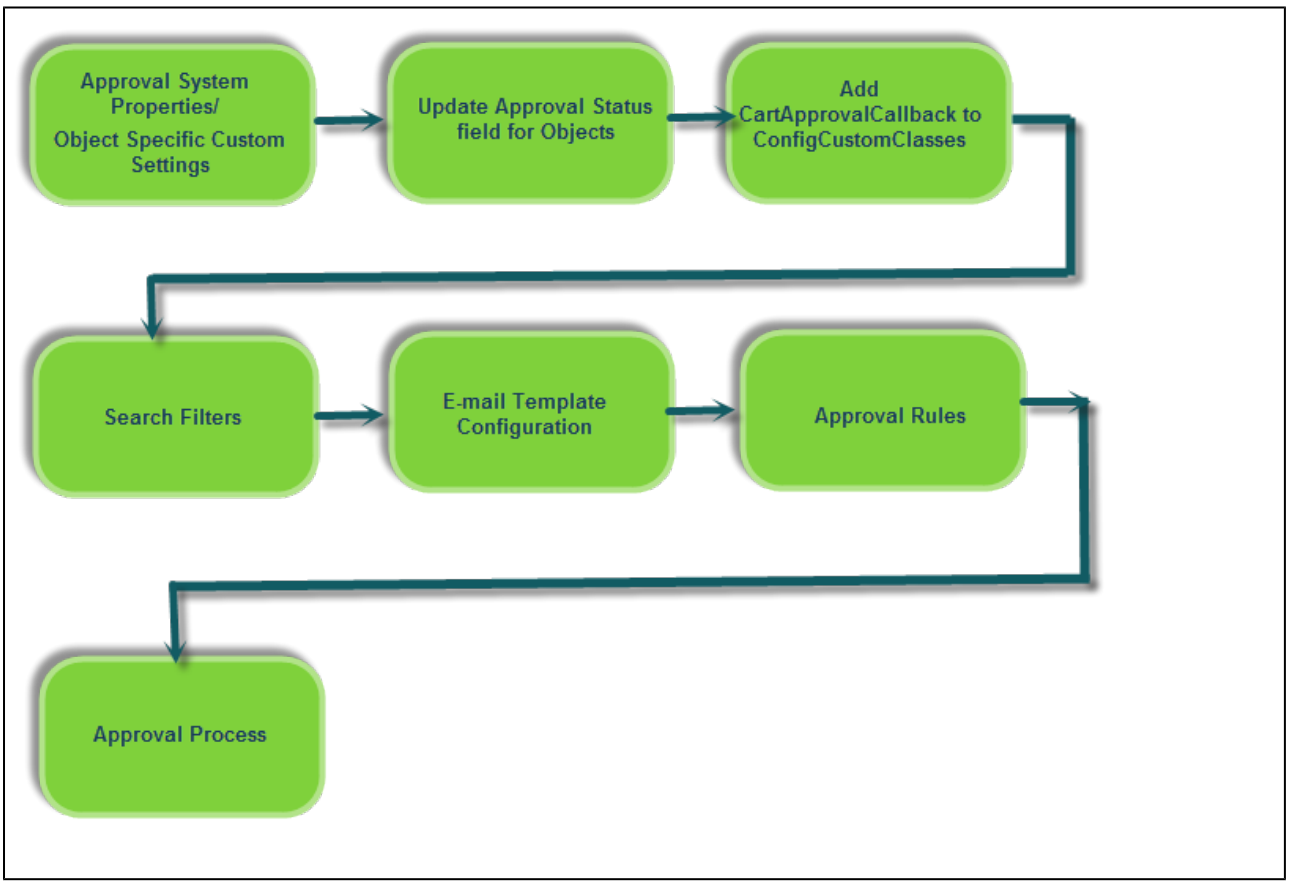
Approval Functional End User Workflow

Intelligent Workflow and Approvals enables you to create Approval Criteria, such as Discounts, based on which Approvals are triggered. You can use Apttus Approvals in scenarios where you want to trigger an approval before a quote or agreement is finalized. You can also trigger approvals for custom objects based on certain criteria. Approvers can also dynamically add an approver based on their discretion.



Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

CPQ Workflow



- Approving a Request
  Based on the Approval Process configuration, if an approval request is initiated and you are the assigned approver for the request, you receive an approval notification or an email.
- Submitting a Request with Attachments
  Enables you to submit a document along with your approval request.
- Approvals and My Approvals Page
  Enables the requester to preview all the approval requests along with their statuses and the approver to take ownership of the approval items, approve or reject an approval request.
- Continue Pending Approvals on Reject
  This feature enables you to continue approval processes, even if an approver rejects the approval request. Previously if a specific approval request resulted in a rejection, the progress of the entire process would halt.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- Auto Reapprovals
  Auto reapproval enables you to return to a specific step in the approval process, after restarting the approval, allowing you to avoid having to make approvers reapprove requests they had already completed.
- Consolidated Approvals
  Consolidated approvals have been enhanced to handle situations where the same approver is included in multiple dependent steps. The dependencies of the steps are respected and the approver is assigned approval requests sequentially.
- Delegate Approver for an approver
  Allows you to assign a delegate user to the current approver. The delegate user can approve requests on behalf of the assigned approver. All approval requests and email notifications are routed to the current approver and the delegate approver.
- Adding an Ad Hoc Approver
  Allows an approver to add a new approval step in an active approval process.
- Reassigning an Approval Request
  Allows an approver to reassign an approval step in an active approval process in the Assigned state.

Approving a Request

Based on the Approval Process configuration, if an approval request is initiated and you are the assigned approver for the request, you receive an approval notification or an email.

You can choose to approve the request using your Salesforce org credentials or from the mail itself.

Approving a request from Salesforce: Login to your Salesforce org and on the Home page, under my tasks you can choose to approve or reject a request. The Approve or Reject All option is enabled only when consolidated Approvals and Notifications is enabled in the Approval Process. Click Approve All/ Reject All to approve or reject all the requests assigned to you. You can also choose to approve a single request at a time.

Approving a request from your email: If an Approval request is initiated, and you are the assignee for the process, you receive an email regarding the approvals assigned to you. You can Approve or Reject a request from the email itself by:

- Use the Approve / Reject key words in the very first line of the body
- Add comment in the immediate second line

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- End comments with a blank line.

> Queue email address cannot be used for notifications. If Queue has **Send Email to Members** box un-checked - email of current user will be used for notifications (not queue email address). This is due to Salesforce limitations which we cannot bypass.

Submitting a Request with Attachments

You can submit an object for approval along with an attachment. The attachment should be available in the Notes and Attachments section. In the Approvals and My Approvals when you click Submit Approvals (with Attachments), a list of attachments appear. Select the attachment you want to submit with the approval request and proceed.

To submit a request with attachment, ensure that you have created custom email notification templates and specified the name of each of the templates in the Approval Process or Custom Configuration of the object. Ensure that you have specified custom templates for, Assignment, Cancellation, Escalation, NotifyOnly, and Reassignment. Even if one of the templates is not created and specified, the Submit with Attachments feature does not work.

While submitting an approval request with attachments, ensure you adhere to the file size limits defined by Salesforce. For more information about file size limits, refer File Size Limits in Salesforce.

A new Approvals Custom Config setting “Use Files Instead of Notes & Attachments" is introduced with the Spring 2018 release. When enabled, the approvals engine works with attachments from Salesforce Files attached or uploaded from the desktop for the context object instead of those from the old Notes & Attachments related list. You need to enable or disable this new custom setting independently for each object used for approvals. If a custom setting for a context object is not found, the system will default to working with files from the Notes & Attachments related list for the content object. Customers using Apttus Contract Management will need to enable this setting for the Apttus__APTS_Agreement__c, Apttus__Agreement_Clause__c or whatever agreement related objects they are using approvals with. CPQ customers will need to enable this setting for Apttus_Config2__ProductConfiguration__c or quote proposal objects.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Submit with Attachments on SF1

When you click Submit on the Object Record, you can view all the line items that require approval and choose to either **Submit** or **Submit with Attachments**.

Approvals and My Approval Pages

The approvals can be previewed directly from the *Object* record.

Go to an Object record that has values configured for it and click **Approvals**.

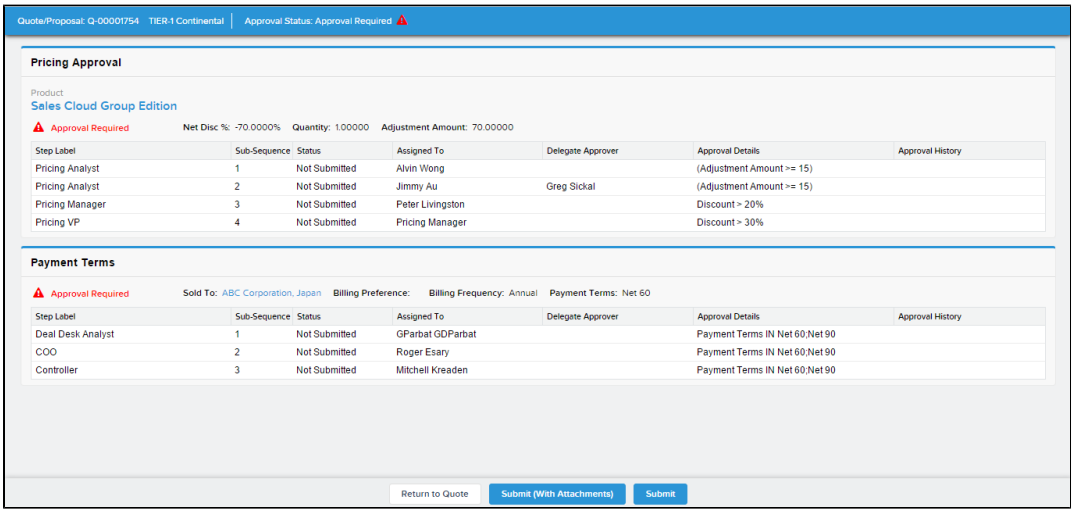
If there is an approval process having an entry criteria that matches the attributes of the object, the preview page will display the approval steps and enable you to submit the approval.

The Preview page also includes Display Fields you have selected to be shown when you created your approval step.

Approvals Page

The Approvals page is primarily used by the requester for the following tasks.

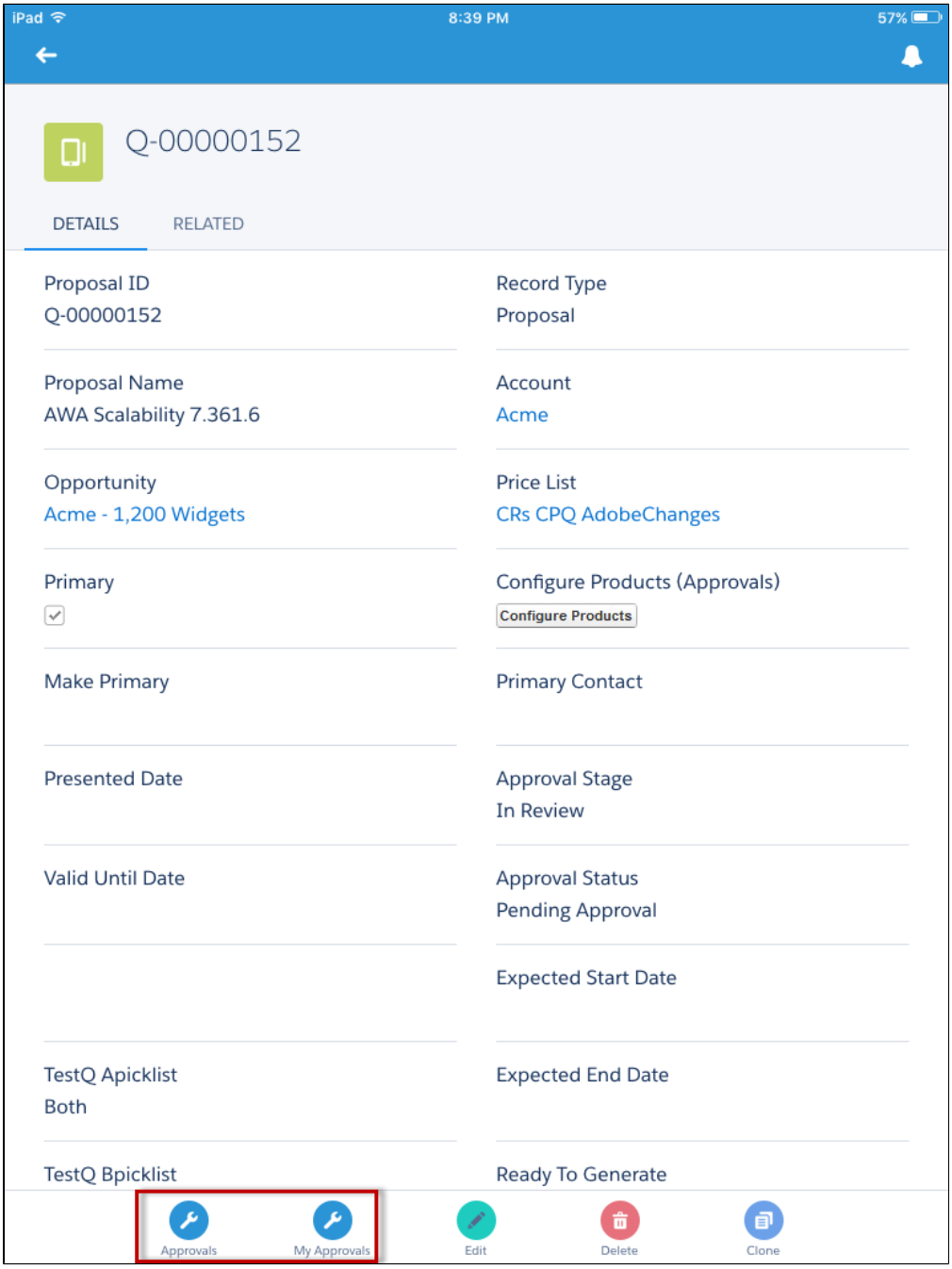
- Preview a list of all approvals that will be required before they are submitted for approval.
- View a list of all approvals including those that have already been submitted and approved or rejected, or are in another status such as Assigned, On Hold, or Not Submitted.
- Allow the submitter to recall all approvals for the current context object.



Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Approvals Page on SF1

Click the gear icon, to view the Approvals Page.

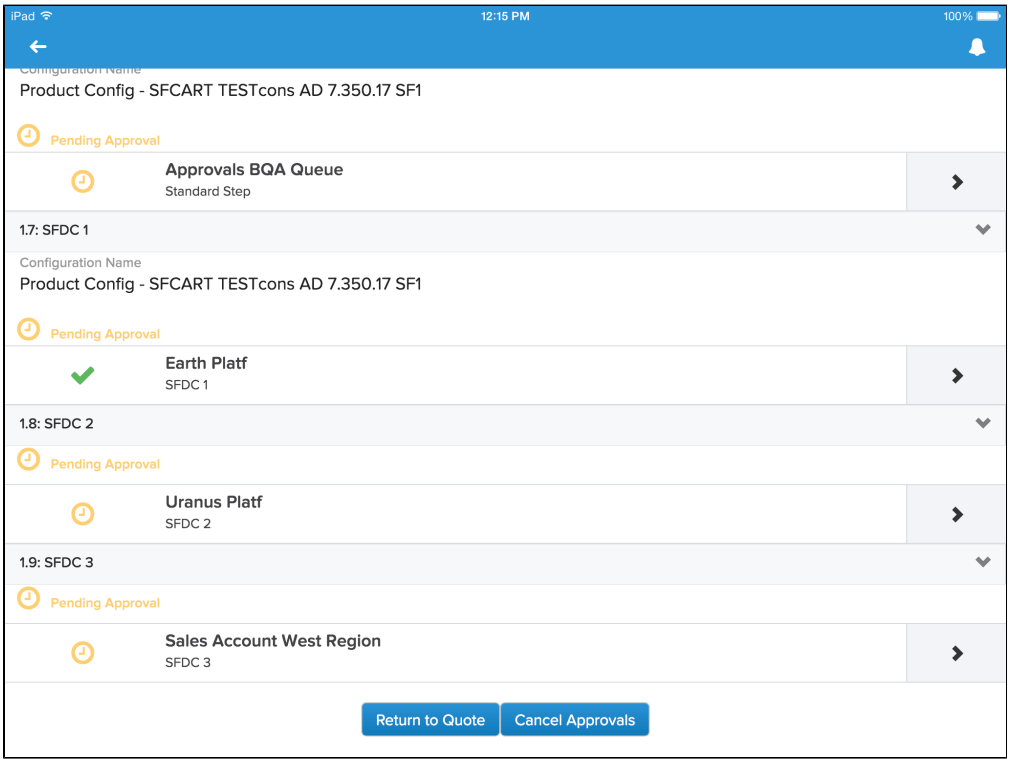


The Approvals page is primarily used by the requester for the following tasks.

- Preview a list of all approvals that will be required before they are submitted for approval.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- View a list of all approvals including those that have already been submitted and approved or rejected, or are in another status such as Assigned, On Hold, or Not Submitted.
- Return to Quote and Cancel Approvals.

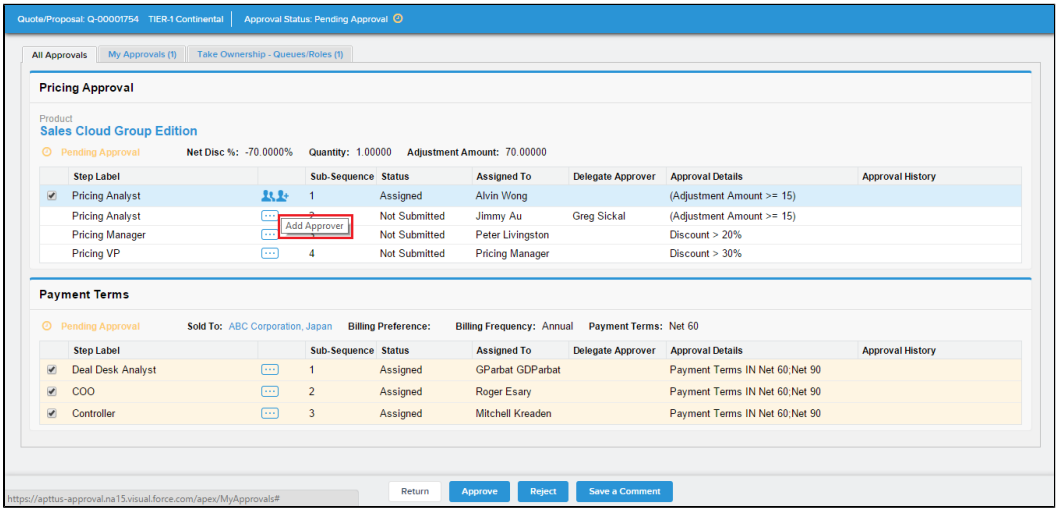


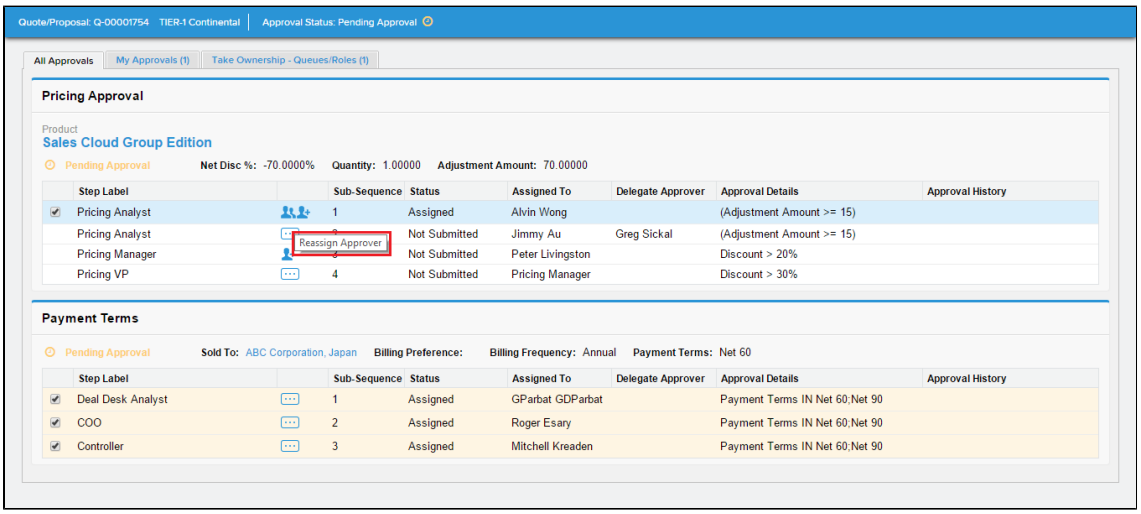
My Approvals Page

The My Approvals page is primarily used by the requester for the following tasks.

- View the list of items that need approval from the current logged in approver.
- To take ownership of the approval items that are assigned to queues or roles, if the current user is a member of the queue / role.
- To approve or reject one or more assigned approval items.
- To add an ad hoc approver to the list of approvers.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



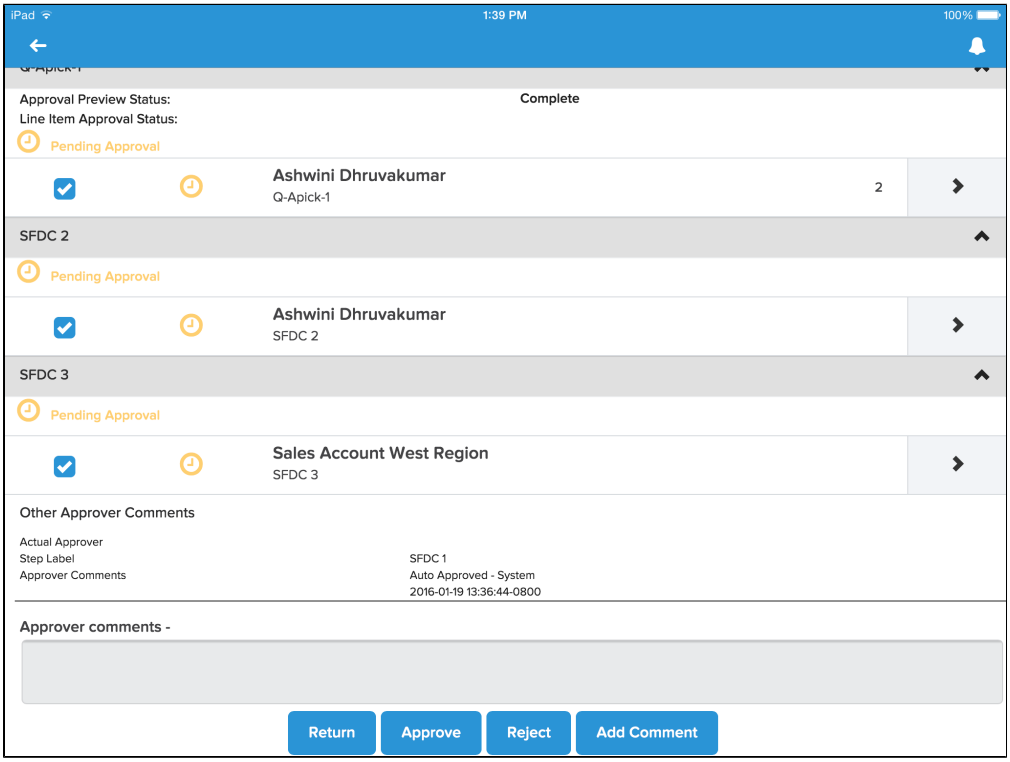


My Approvals Page for SF1

The My Approvals page is primarily used by the requester for the following tasks.

- View the list of items that need approval from the current logged in approver.
- To take ownership of the approval items that are assigned to queues or roles, if the current user is a member of the queue/role.
- To approve or reject one or more assigned approval items.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



Add Adhoc Approver, Reassign approval request, View Delegate Approver features are not available on SF1.

Continue Pending Approvals on Reject

This feature enables you to continue approval processes, even if an approver rejects the approval request. Previously if a specific approval request resulted in a rejection, the progress of the entire process would halt.

This option is selected at the specific approval process level.

Important

Before you configure Continue Pending Approvals on Reject, ensure that you understand the behaviour of Continue Approval Policy on a Reject, since both these settings are dependent over each other.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Continue Pending Approvals on Reject Scenario

In a situation where you have a typical three step approval process, where the third step is dependent on the previous two steps, rejecting an approval request doesn't negatively impact the remaining steps.

In that instance the approval process continues as if the initial approval request was approved.

Approval Step	**Approver**	**Status (With Continue Pending Approvals Setting Selected)**	**Status (Without Continue Pending Approvals Setting Selected)**
Sales Level 1	Deal Desk	Rejected	Rejected
Sales Level 2	Regional VP Sales	Assigned	Canceled
Executive Sign-off (Dependent on previous two steps)	SVP Sales	Not Submitted	Canceled
Approval Status record		Pending Approval	Rejected

To set Continue Pending Approvals on Reject

1. In an approval process, go to *Step 3: Specify Consolidation Settings*.
2. Select **Continue Pending Approvals on a Reject** and save the approval process.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

By default, this option is not selected.

The following lists the results on approval requests when selecting and not selecting the option.

Selected	• *Rejected* request status will be *Rejected* • Request that is dependent on *Rejected* request will remain in *Not Submitted* status • All other requests in *Assigned* status will continue to remain in that status • Requests in *Not Submitted* status will remain in that status • Overall object record approval status will continue to be in *Pending Approval*
Cleared	• *Rejected* request status will be *Rejected* • Rejection of any one approval request will cancel all other *Assigned* requests • Requests in *Not Submitted* status will remain in *Not Submitted* status • Overall object record approval status will be *Rejected*

You can return to the approval process later to change the option, which will subsequently impact new approval processes, but will not change the behavior of in-flight processes.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Auto Reapprovals

Auto reapproval enables you to return to a specific step in the approval process, after restarting the approval, allowing you to avoid having to make approvers reapprove requests they had already completed.

The auto reapprovals occur at the step level,when a resubmit of the approval process happens. This allows you to select where the approval process continues, at a granular level. When you have a *Standard* step type you configure the reapproval for the step; however, if you have a *Subprocess* or *Child Process* step type, the reapproval is configured in the referenced approval rule.

> For CPQ approvals, if the cart is approved, the cart status should be in Ready for Finalization status for auto reapprovals to work.

Auto Reapprovals Scenario

Using Intelligent Workflow and Approvals you can set auto-reapproval criteria, using which a request once approved by certain assignees are auto-approved based on the auto-reapproval criteria.

Use case 1:

Suppose your approval process comprises three steps that are dependent on each other.

- In step 1, the configuration is such that all records comprising a discount of a value between 30- 40 % should be approved by John.
- Once step1 is approved, in step 2, all records comprising a discount of 41-50 % should be sent to James.
- Once step 2 is approved, in step 3, all records above 50 % should be sent to the CFO.

Suppose you have provided a discount of 52 % which is approved by John and James, and then rejected by the CFO. You do not want to reduce the amount and restart the entire approval process from John. To do so set up and Auto-Reapproval criteria such that,

1. For any Discount where the Current value = A constant value of 50 it should be approved.
2. For any Discount where Current value <=Prior Value it should be approved.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

You can create an Advanced Condition such that if either 1 or 2 is satisfied, the request is auto-approved. Once you reduce the discount, step 1 and 2 is auto-approved, and the request is forwarded for approval only to the CFO.

Use case 2:

Enabling auto re-approvals for Proposal and Proposal Line Items

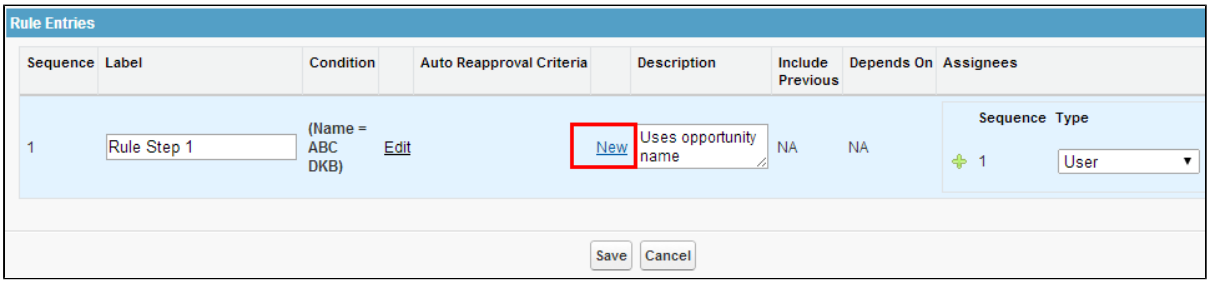
You can submit the approval requests for a Quote/Proposal and Proposal Line Items for re-approval. In a scenario where a Quote/Proposal is approved but the Approvals Manager decides to change the discount from 10 to 15% on a Proposal Line Item, you can resubmit the approval request for this for re-approval. The system honors the auto-reapproval criteria, using which a request once approved by certain assignees are auto-approved.

A new API called `updateApprovalData` is available that re-evaluates all the child record IDs (Proposal Line Item IDs in our case) for reapproval. For details, refer to *Apttus SOAP API reference guide*. Note that this API is available in the base Approvals package and can be used with the optional unmanaged custom package "Apttus Proposal Auto-Reapprovals" available on request with Apttus Release Management. This package contains the complete sample code that can be used along with the API in the base package to make auto-reapprovals work with Proposals and Proposal Line Items.

To configure reapprovals for approval rules

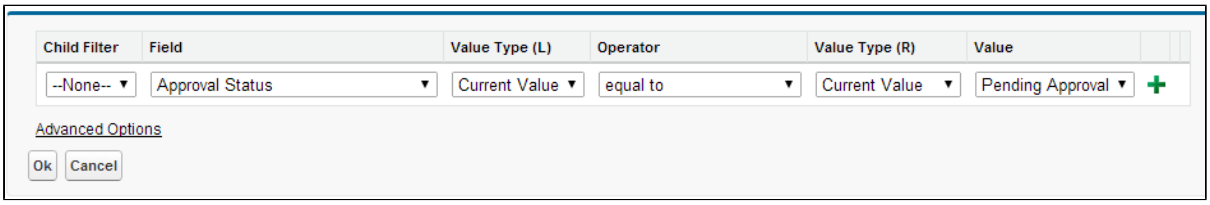
The approval rule must be of type *Condition*. You cannot have reapprovals for *Dimension* types.

1. Go to an approval rule and click **Manage Entries.**



Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

2. Click **New** below Auto Reapproval Criteria to display the criteria options.



3. Select the fields and operators to create your expression:

Option	Description
Child Filter	This field value will be *None*, unless there are child custom objects associated with the approval rule's *Business Object*. If there is a child filter available, selecting it will populate the *Field* list with fields from the child object. Child filters do not support auto reapproval. Whenever auto reapproval is required, you should use child processon line items or child objects.
Field	The fields available are related to the *Business Object*, or a *Child Filter* if one is selected. If you have defined Search Filter Approvals as Entry Criteria on your Line Item or Child object, all the corresponding fields of your Child object are populated here.
Value Type (L)	*Current Value* will use the current value of the field to determine if it should be auto reapproved. *Prior Value* uses the value of the field before the approval process was resubmitted to determine if it could be auto reapproved.
Operator	Common sense needs to be applied when selecting operators. For instancea field value for *Approval Stage* cannot be *greater than* another field. If you select *in* or *not in*, the *Value* list will become a multi-select list and you can choose multiple values, if applicable. For example if the field is *Approval Status*, you could select multiple values associated with it, such as *Not Submitted* and *Pending Approval*. Ensure that you set a sequence number for the entry criteria to view the values.
Value Type (R)	

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Option	Description
	Current Value and *Prior Value* are the same as Value Type (L). *Constant Value* means whatever you subsequently enter in the Value field is used for the expression, regardless of at what point during the approval process the field had that value.
Value	The value that is compared to Field/Value Type (L) to determine if the expression is true or false.

4. Click + to add another line to the expression and make it an *AND* relationship, where each line must be true.
5. Click **Advanced Options** if you want to have a combination of *OR* and *AND* relationships between each of the lines of the expression.
6. Click **OK** and the expression is added to the Auto Reapproval Criteria column.
7. Click **Save** to update the approval rule.

When you have an approval process that contains an approval step which references the approval rule, auto reapproval may occur, based on the configured settings.

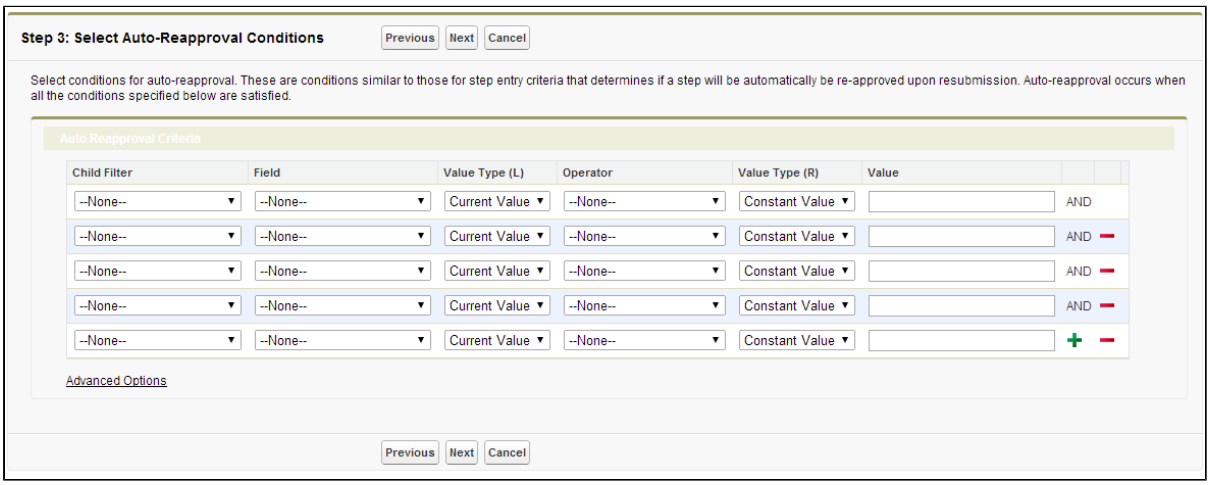
You can add more auto reapproval criteria for that approval rule entry or for any other entries for that rule.

To configure reapprovals for process steps

The approval process step type must be *Standard*.

1. Select an approval process and click **New Approval Step**.
2. Ensure you select **Standard** from the **Step Type** list and proceed to the Select Auto-Reapproval Conditions page.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



3. Select the fields and operators to create your expression:

Option	Description
Child Filter	This field value will be *None*, unless there are child custom objects associated with the approval rule's *Business Object*. If there is a child filter available, selecting it will populate the *Field* list with fields from the child object. You do not need to select a value for this. Child filters do not support auto reapproval. Whenever auto reapproval is required, you should use child processon line items or child objects.
Field	The fields available are related to the *Business Object*, or a *Child Filter* if one is selected. If you have defined Search Filter Approvals as Entry Criteria on your Line Item or Child object, all the corresponding fields of your Child object are populated here.
Value Type (L)	*Current Value* will use the current value of the field to determine if it should be auto reapproved. *Prior Value* uses the value of the field when it was last approved by the approver during a previous iteration of the approval process, which may not be the most recently changed value of the field.
Operator	Common sense needs to be applied when selecting operators. For instance, a field value for *Approval Stage* cannot be *greater than* another field.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Option	Description
	If you select *in* or *not in*, the *Value* list will become a multi-select list and you can choose multiple values, if applicable. For example, if the field is *Approval Status*, you could select multiple values associated with it, such as *Not Submitted* and *Pending Approval*. Ensure that you set a sequence number for the entry criteria to view the values.
Value Type (R)	*Current Value* and *Prior Value* are the same as Value Type (L). *Constant Value* means whatever you subsequently enter in the Value field is used for the expression, regardless of at what point during the approval process the field had that value.
Value	The value that is compared to Field/Value Type (L) to determine if the expression is true or false.

4. Click + to add another line to the expression and make it an *AND* relationship, where each line must be true.
5. Click **Advanced Options** if you want to have a combination of *OR* and *AND* relationships between each of the lines of the expression.
6. Click **Next** and proceed to finish configuring the approval step.

When you resubmit the approval process, and the auto reapproval criteria are met, the process will automatically reapprove the appropriate steps.

Consolidated Approvals

Consolidated approvals have been enhanced to handle situations where the same approver is included in multiple dependent steps. The dependencies of the steps are respected and the approver is assigned approval requests sequentially.

The consolidation feature is available for Approval Requests and Notifications both. This is useful when a single user is a part of multiple approval requests from a given approval process.

For example, Sam has the following responsibilities:

- Sam is a Senior Finance Manager

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- He is a part of Deal Desk queue
- He is a part of Legal Review Team queue
- He plays a role of Senior Legal Analyst

For a given Quote/Agreement, Sam has to perform the following:

- Approve the payment terms.
- As a Senior Finance Manager, oversee the discount provided.
- As a Senior Legal Analyst, approve renewal of a legal contract, being a part of the Legal queue.

In such cases, when there are multiple approval requests being assigned to a single user, Consolidated Approvals and Notifications is useful. When implemented, the approver does not receive multiple emails, but a single email consolidating all the approval requests for a particular type. The type can be **User**, **Queue**, **Role**, **Related User**, **Custom User**, and more.

For example, when the discount is applied over different line items which require approval, Sam will receive individual emails consolidating the following approval requests:

- 2 individual requests related to payment terms and billing frequency
- 2 individual notification steps related to payment terms
- 2 requests assigned to legal review team
- 2 requests assigned to the legal analyst role
- 2 notification steps assigned to the legal analyst role

Assignee Type	**Agreement/Quote header fields**	**Number of Requests**
Senior Finance Manager User	Billing Frequency = Net 30	1 Notification
Senior Finance Manager User	Payment Term = Quarterly	1 Notification
Legal Review Team Queue	Managed Services = Yes	1
Legal Review Team Queue	NDA Signed = False	1
Senior Legal Analyst Role	Account Status = Red	1
Senior Legal Analyst Role	Approved Reseller = No	1

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Senior Legal Analyst Role	Payment Term = Quarterly	1 Notification
Senior Legal Analyst Role	NDA Signed = False	1 Notification
Deal Desk Queue	Percentage discount > 20%	1
Deal Desk Queue	Total Amount > $500000	1

Sam can then go to each request or approve the entire Quote/Agreement.

Note:

1. System does not consolidate approval requests across multiple quotes, agreements or other custom objects.
2. System considers the **Assignee Type** (User, Role, Queue, and more) and the Request Type (Assignment and Notification) while consolidating the approval requests.

In the above example, in case if you do not check **Consolidated Approvals**, Sam will receive **10** emails for a given Quote/Agreement.

When **Consolidated Approvals** is checked, separate emails will be sent for each of the responsibility of Sam, because there are different approval steps configured for each such responsibility.

In total, Sam will receive **5** email notifications, one for each of his responsibility.

- 1 email, consolidating 2 **User** notification requests assigned to Sam, which are related to payment terms and billing frequency.
- 1 email, consolidating 2 Requests, which are assigned to Legal review Team **Queue**.
- 1 email, consolidating 2 Requests, which are assigned to the **Role**: Senior Legal Analyst.
- 1 email, consolidating 2 notifications steps, which are assigned to the **Role**: Senior Legal Analyst.
- 1 email, consolidating 2 requests assigned to the Deal Desk **Queue.**

The consolidated notification/email goes to the approver only when all the items, which require approval are ready for approval and have entered the approval process. Till the time the last approval request enters the approval process, the requests which have already entered the process are kept in the *On Hold* status.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

For scenarios with **Consolidated Approvals** and **Consolidated Notifications** checked at the process level,

All approval requests assigned to a user will be in an on-hold status and only the final approval request will be in an assigned status. An email is sent out to the user with all the available approval requests. Only one request will be in the Assigned status while all other will be in an On-Hold status. It depends on the user to approve/reject the approval requests by one of the following options:

- Approve/reject all the approval requests at one go from the email. The decision taken here is applied to all the requests, which means, when approved, all the approval requests will have the *Approved* status.
- Approve/reject one request which is in assigned status from MyApprovals page. The decision taken here is applied to all the requests, which means, when approved, all the approval requests will have the *Approved* status.

For information on where Consolidation is used for Approvals, refer Creating the Process Definition under an Approval Process.

Delegate Approver for an approver

You can assign a delegate user to the current approver. The delegate user can approve requests on behalf of the assigned approver. All approval requests and email notifications are routed to the current approver and the delegate approver.

The following features and limitations are applicable with the delegate user functionality:

- The delegated assignee receives all approval requests/email notifications assigned to the context approver.
- The delegated assignee can execute all the functionality that the context user can such as approve, reject, add comments, add adhoc approver, or take ownership of a queue.
- The delegated assignee cannot be a queue. If the Primary user is a part of a Queue, an email notification is directed to the delegate assignee and they can take ownership of the queue.
- If the Primary user is a custom user or is a related user then the all the email notifications and access should be assigned and sent to the delegate assignee.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- If the context user is a part of a Queue and receives queue email notifications, then the delegate assignee also receives those email notifications and can take ownership of the queue. (queue within a queue).
- **Consolidation**: Consolidation is based on the original approval process. If the delegate user is a part of the approval process, they receive a separate notification for the requests directly assigned to them as a primary user. Delegate approvers also receive a delegate email notification based on the consolidation rule of his primary user. For example, If consolidated notifications is turned on and If the Primary user has requests in the approval process, they will be consolidated together and available to the primary user (and the delegate approver) when all the requests are in an assigned status. If the delegate approver has his own separate requests in the process, they will be consolidated together and available to the delegate approver when all the requests are in an assigned status.
- **Delegate Setup**: Non-Time bound delegation.
- **Suppress notifications options**: Option to suppress email notifications to delegate users via a checkbox.
- **Re-assign**: After you re-assign a request, the new users delegate and the new users receive the approval request.

Setting up Backup or Delegate Approvers

Backup or Delegate approvers enable you to delegate approval request tasks and help ensure approval processes do not get delayed waiting for someone to make a decision. From the August 2016 release onwards you can add up to three delegate approvers for a single user.

You can also add a custom link to the user layout so you can assign a backup or delegate approver for a user from the page layout itself.

Workflow rules needed to be added to the system to ensure the feature works as expected and that the users you select to be backup or delegate approvers receive delegated approval requests.

Note

- If the backup approver workflow rule is already set up, do not set up separate workflow rules for a Delegate approver as the object used is same.
- If the backup approver workflow is not set up and if the customer wants to use the Delegate feature, then set up workflow rules similar to the effective workflow rule for a Backup approver.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- When choosing users to act as backup or delegate approvers, you can use the Backup /Delegate Approvers tab or the Set Backup/Delegate Approver button, if it has been added to the User page layout to designate a proxy.
- You can either assign a backup approver or a delegate approver at a time.
- The delegate approver receives only one email for which they have been set up as a delegate for. The delegate approver does not receive emails about any previous assignments made to the Primary user, however, the delegate approver does have access to approve/reject these records.
- From the May release onwards:

  The current backup/Delegate approver field Apttus_Approval_Backup_User_c has been deprecated.

  Any custom backup/delegate field/list should map to the new field *Apttus_Approval_DelegateUserIds_c.*

To create Set in Effect on Effective Date rule

Build > Create > Workflow & Approvals > Workflow Rules

1. Click **New Rule**.
2. Select the **Backup/Delegate Approver** object and click **Next.**
3. For Rule Name, enterSet In Effect on Effective Dateand for Evaluation Criteria select **Created, and any time it's edited to subsequently meet criteria**.
4. Do any one of the following:
   - If you have an existing workflow rule criteria, ensure that you modify the rule. If you do not have rule criteria, ensure that you create one.

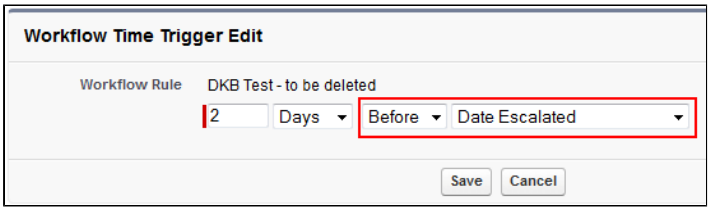
     ```
     (Backup/Delegate Approver: Effective Date NOT EQUAL to null
     ) AND (Backup/Delegate Approver: Is Active EQUALS True)
     AND (Backup/Delegate Approver: Is Delegate EQUALS False)
     ```

   - For a delegate approver specify the rule criteria as follows and click **Save & Next**:

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
(Backup/Delegate Approver: Effective Date NOT EQUAL to null
) AND (Backup/Delegate Approver: Is Active EQUALS True)
AND (Backup/Delegate Approver: Is Delegate EQUALS True)
```

5. Click **Add Time Trigger**, select the following and then click **Save.**



6. Click **Select Existing Action** in the Workflow Actions section.
7. From the Search drop-down list, select Field Update and in the Available Actions list, select Field Update: **Set Cancellation Date to Null, Field Update: Set Effective Date to Null, Field Update: Set In Effect Flag To True.**
8. Click to move them to the Selected Actions list and click **Save.**
9. From the Specify Workflow Actions page click **Done** and click **Activate** from the Workflow Rule Detail section.

The workflow rule is active and helps ensure backup and delegate approver functionality works as expected.

To create Cancel Backup/Delegate User on Expiration Date

Build > Create > Workflow & Approvals > Workflow Rules
We do not recommend that you create a cancellation workflow rule for a delegate user since delegate users must be perpetual.

1. Click **New Rule**.
2. Select **Backup/Delegate Approver** Object and click **Next.**
3. For Rule Name, enterCancel Backup on Expiration Date and for Evaluation Criteria select **Created, and any time it's edited to subsequently meet criteria**.
4. Do any one of the following:
    - For a backup approver specify the rule criteria as follows and click **Save & Next**:

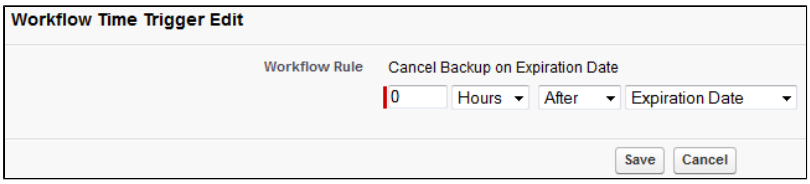
Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
(Backup/Delegate Approver: Expiration Date NOT EQUAL to null) AND (Backup/Delegate Approver: In Effect EQUALS True) AND (Backup/Delegate Approver: Is Delegate EQUALS False)
```

- For a delegate approver specify the rule criteria as follows and click **Save & Next**:

```
(Backup/Delegate Approver: Expiration Date NOT EQUAL to null) AND (Backup/Delegate Approver: In Effect EQUALS True) AND (Backup/Delegate Approver: Is Delegate EQUALS True)
```

5. Click **Add Time Trigger**, select the following and then click **Save:**



6. Click **Select Existing Actio**n, from the Workflow Action section.
7. From the Search drop-down list, select **Field Update** and in the Available Actions list, select Field Update: **Set Cancellation Date to NOW, Field Update: Set Is Active to False, Field Update: Set Effective Date to Null, Field Update: Set Expiration Date to Null, and Field Update: Set In Effect Flag to False.**
8. Click to move them to the Selected Actions list and click **Save.**
9. From the Specify Workflow Actions page click **Done** and click **Activate** from the Workflow Rule Detail section.

The workflow rule is active and helps ensure backup approver functionality works as expected.

Associating a Backup Approver or Delegate Approver to a User

There are two ways you would want to associate a backup or delegate approver to a user.

Backup approvers can be set via the Backup/Delegate Approver tab or from a User profile. Once past the initial entry point, the process of associating a backup or delegate approver to a user is the same.

Once you have set the backup or delegate approver for a user, you must always click *Deactivate* before you begin making changes and must click *Activate* again for the saved modifications to take effect.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

By default, all the records are displayed on the Backup and Delegate page. The following filters become very handy when there are several records activated or deactivated for different date ranges over a period of time.

- Active - All Active records
- Inactive - All Inactive records
- In Future - Date range in future, irrespective of the status (both active and Inactive records)

The filter enables an Approver or Administrator to quickly search and identify a specific record of Backup/Delegate entry. These filters consider the current system date and enforce filtering accordingly to decide which records are considered.

Behavior limitation: If you have a single user acting as the backup approver for multiple users and you have set it up to simultaneously re-assign approvals to those original users, the system may not be able to complete that action.

To add the backup and delegate approver custom link for a User

1. Click **Edit** for User Layout.
2. Create a new Section.
3. From the **Custom Links** list, drag and drop **Set Backup/Delegate Approver** to the **Custom Links** section of the page.
4. Click **Save.**

To add multiple delegate approvers for a User

Build > Customize > Backup/Delegate Approver > Page Layouts

1. Click **Edit Layout**.
2. From the **Visualforce Pages** list, drag and drop **Delegate Approver** to the new section of the page.
3. Click **Save.**

The Set Delegate approver VF page is now available in the Custom section.

You can now select a user you want to delegate approval requests for and complete the *Associate backup approver to a user* task.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Before you associate a backup or delegate approver, ensure that you remove the Backup/Delegate User field from the Backup Approver Layout.

To associate a backup approver

1. Select the **Backup/ Delegate Approvers** tab or click and select **Backup/Delegate Approvers**.
   - or - If the custom link has been added, you can also complete this task from **Administration Setup > Manage Users > Users**. Select the user you want to assign a backup approver to and go to the Custom Links section and click Set Backup Approver or Set Delegate Approver and proceed to *step 4*.
2. Click **New** to display the **Backup Approver Edit** page. By default, **Transfer in-flight** and **Is Active** is selected, **while In Effect** is cleared.
3. If you are setting a backup user, ensure that the Is Delegate check box is cleared.
4. Click the lookup icon for **Current User** to select the user you want to assign a backup approver to.
5. Click the lookup icon for **Backup User** to select the user you want to act as the backup approver.
6. Select **Transfer in-flight** if you want approval processes already underway to be transferred to the backup approver, otherwise clear the option and only new approval processes can get routed to the backup approver. When you select the Transfer in-flight checkbox for a backup approver, the approval request is available only to the backup user.
7. Enter the **Effective Date** and **Expiration Date**, for the period you want all approvals that are sent to the *Current User* to be automatically transferred to the *Backup Approver*.
   Cancellation Date does not impact and is only used for administrative purposes to flag when someone manually ended the effective period, before the expiration date was reached. It is recommended that you do not specify an Effective date and the Expiration date for a delegate approver.
8. Click **Save.**

The user's page is displayed and approval requests will now be delegated to the Backup Approver when the *Effective Date* is reached. The *Activate* action occurs automatically on that date. When the *Expiration Date* is reached, the *Deactivate* action occurs automatically.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

To Create Delegate Approvers

1. Select the **Backup/ Delegate Approvers** tab or click and select **Backup/Delegate Approvers**.
   - or - If the custom link has been added, you can also complete this task from **Administration Setup > Manage Users > Users**. Select the user you want to assign a delegate approver to and go to the Custom Links section and click Set Delegate Approver and proceed to *step 4*.
2. Click **New** to display the **Backup/Delegate Approver Edit** page. By default, **Transfer in-flight** and **Is Active** is selected, **while In Effect** is cleared.
3. To set a delegate user, select the **Is Delegate** checkbox. The **Suppress Delegate Notification** check box appears if you select the I**s Delegate** check box. Selecting this checkbox enables you to restrict notifications to the delegate user for every approval request assigned to the Primary approver.
4. Click the lookup icon for **Current User** to select the user you want to assign a backup approver to.
5. Click the lookup icon for **Delegate Approver 1, Delegate Approver 2, Delegate Approver 3** to select the user you want to act as the delegated approver. The approval request will be routed to the primary approver as well as all the delegate approvers. The delegate approvers can perform all the actions as the primary user
6. Select **Transfer in-flight** if you want approval processes already underway to be transferred to the Delegate approver, otherwise clear the option and only new approval processes can get routed to the approver. The Transfer in-flight checkbox is always selected for a delegate approver, the approval request is then available to both the Primary user and the delegate approver.
7. Enter the **Effective Date** and **Expiration Date**, for the period you want all approvals that are sent to the *Current User* to be automatically transferred to the *Backup Approver*. Cancellation Date does not impact and is only used for administrative purposes to flag when someone manually ended the effective period before the expiration date was reached. It is recommended that you do not specify an Effective date and the Expiration date for a delegate approver.
8. Click **Save.**
9. Click **Edit Layout** and remove the Backup/ Delegate user field.

When required, you can return to the User Detail page to edit or deactivate the backup or delegate

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

approver. If you want to edit the backup or delegate approver, you must deactivate the backup or delegate approver first, make your changes, and then activate it again. This is required because the Backup or Delegate Action (Activate/Deactivate) initiates workflows and logic required for the *Current User/Backup User* relationship.We recommend that you do not select the In-Active, In-Effect, Is Delegate, or Suppress notification checkboxes from the All Records View.

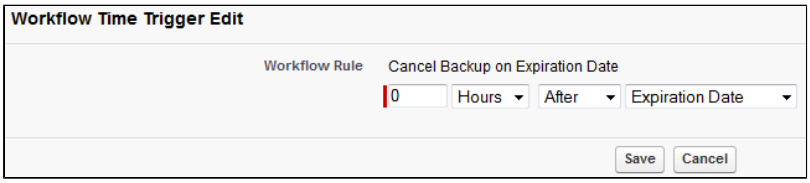
To create an email notification for a delegate user

Build > Create > Workflow & Approvals > Workflow Rules.

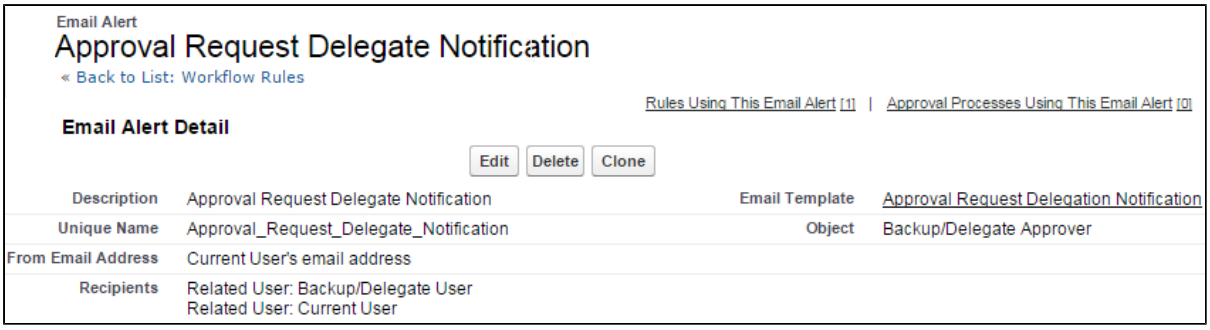
Create an E-mail template to be associated with the to E-mail notification.

1. Click **New Rule**.
2. Select **Backup/Delegate Approver** Object and click **Next.**
3. For Rule Name, enter Send Notification Delegate and for Evaluation Criteria select **Created, and any time it's edited to subsequently meet criteria**.
4. For a delegate approver specify the rule criteria as follows and click Save & Next:

   (Backup/Delegate Approver: In Effect EQUALS True) AND (Backup/Delegate Approver: Is Delegate EQUALS True).
5. Click **Add Time Trigger**, select the following and then click **Save:**



6. From the Workflow Action related list, click New **Email Alert**.
7. Create an e-mail Alert as follows:



Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

8. From the Specify Workflow Actions page click **Done** and click **Activate** from the Workflow Rule Detail section.

The workflow rule is active and helps ensure delegate approver notification works as expected.

Backup Approver Search Page Configuration

The Backup Approver Search page provided as part of the Apttus Intelligent Approvals package is a custom Visualforce page that needs to be correctly linked to selecting a backup user.Previously the New and Edit buttons displayed the standard Salesforce pages, which could have led to incorrect backup approvers being selected, as approval matrix levels are not considered. This enhancement directs you to the correct Backup Approver page from the User Detail record, as well as when you create new backup approvers or edit existing backup approvers from the Backup Approvals tab.

Previously when you clicked for backup users in the Backup Approver Details page, a lookup window would be displayed. Now, a new Backup User Search page is displayed.

To configure backup approver search pages

1. Select the **Backup Approvers** tab or click

and select **Backup /Delegate Approvers**.

> **Note**
>
> If the backup approvers custom link has been added, you can also complete this task from **Administration Setup > Manage Users > Users** and select the user you want to assign a backup approver to.

2. Click **New** to display the Backup Approver Edit page - or - Click **Edit** for an existing backup approver to display the same page.
3. Ensure there is someone in the **Current User** field and then click for the **Backup User**.

A new Backup User Search page is displayed from where you can search by name and then select a valid backup user. Previously, a Lookup pop-up window would be displayed.

To configure actions for Backup Approver Search page

Build > Create > Objects > Backup Approver

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

1. Go to **Standard Buttons and Links** and click **Edit** beside **New**.
2. Select **Visualforce Page** and select **BackupApprover [Apttus_Approval__BackupApprover]**.
3. Click **Save**.
4. Repeat Steps 1 to 3 for the **Edit** action.

The Backup User link now takes you to the custom Apttus Visualforce page (Backup User Search).

For existing records, ensure that you remove the Backup/Delegate User field from the Backup Approver Layout.

Setting up the Backup Administrator

The backup admin user is responsible for handling routing issues that may occur during the Intelligent Workflow and Approvals approval process, while admin profiles enable you to associate users — via their roles — with admin level access to Intelligent Workflow and Approvals.

Typically, Intelligent Workflow and approvals will progress as expected, but in instances where an appropriate user cannot be found to handle an approval request, having designated administrators ensures an approval process can still be completed. As these users may be responsible for a number of administrative tasks, you should ensure they have wide ranging access to the objects used in your Salesforce environment.

The backup admin user configured below is used globally. You can also designate a backup admin user for each approval process, which will be used instead of the global backup admin user.

Attention

You must ensure that the user you select as the backup admin user is always an active user. If you are going to deactivate that specific user, then be sure to select another active user to assume the backup admin user role.

To setup the Backup Admin user

Build > Develop > Custom Settings

1. Click **Manage** beside **Approvals System Properties**.
2. Click **Edit** beside **System Properties**.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

3. In the **Backup Admin User** field, enter the first and last name of the appropriate person and click **Save**.

> **Note**
>
> Only one user can be designated as the backup admin.

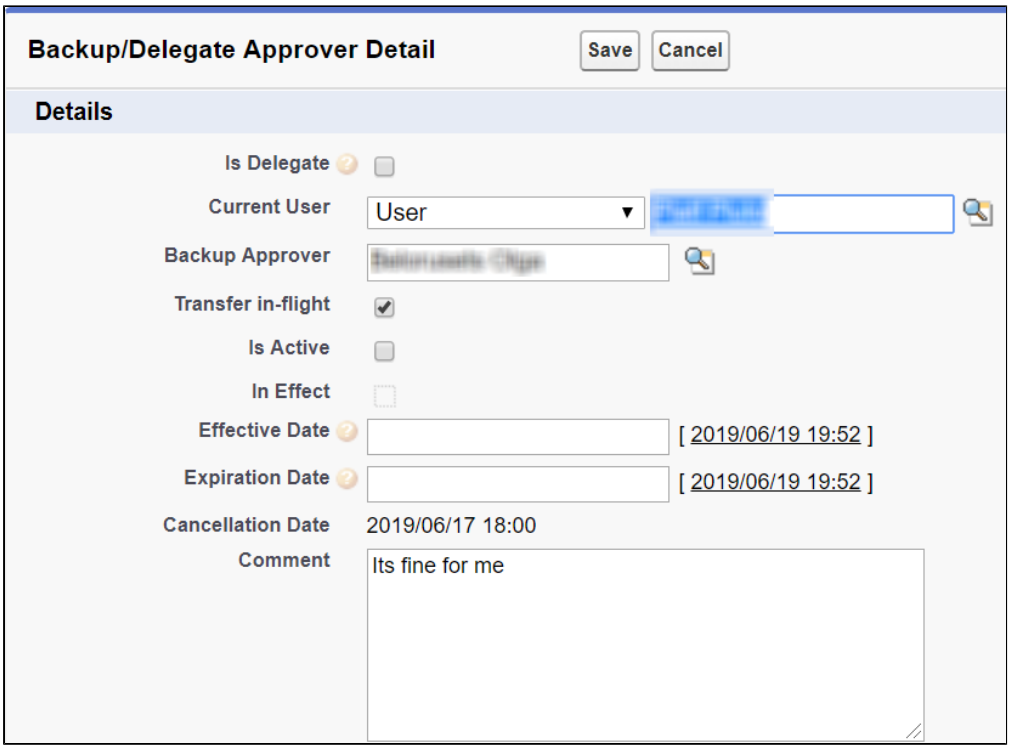
The selected person is now the backup admin user and if there are any tasks the system cannot route as expected, the backup admin user will be able to deal with them.

Setting Up a Backup or Delegate for Out-Of-Office

As an approver, you can easily set up your Out-Of-Office for all your approval requests when you are on leave or set up a backup or delegate when you are Out-Of-Office. You can select a time frame as well as assign someone to receive your notifications, approvals and general tasks.

To set up Out-Of-Office

1. Go to **My Profile** > **User Detail**, under Custom Links click **Set Backup/Delegate Approver**. The Backup/Delegate Approver page appears.

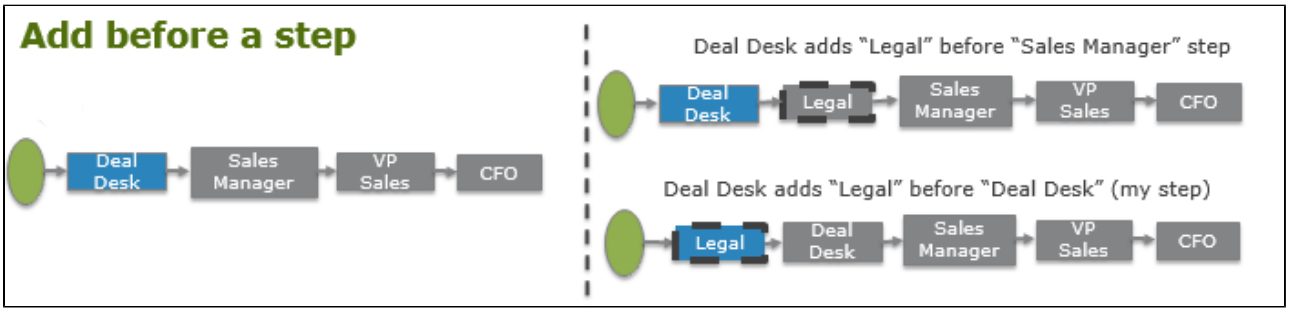


Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

2. In **Backup Approver**, type to search and select a user whom you want to set as the backup user.
3. Set the **Effective Date** and the **Expiration Date** when you will be away and you want the backup user to be active.
4. In **Comments**, you can enter a note or comment to specify the purpose of the record.
5. Click **Save**.
6. To activate the backup user, from **Backup/Delegate Action**, click *Activate*.

Adding an Ad Hoc Approver

This feature allows an approver to add a new approval step in an active approval process. For example, if, while approving a request, the Deal Desk concludes that a quote will require additional approvals from Legal and the CFO, creates those approval steps for a quote, decides the sequence for approval, and creates a new approval step.



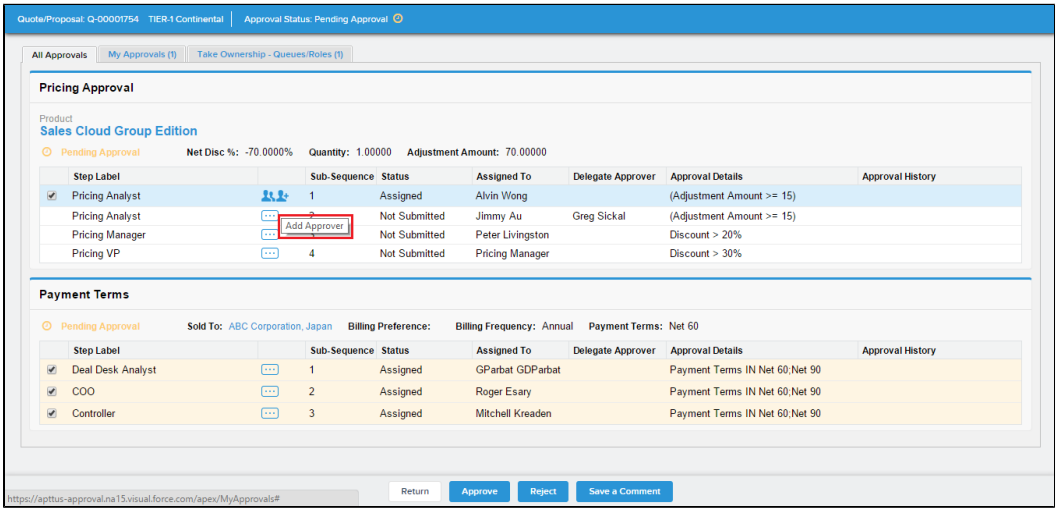
By adding ad hoc approvers, you can:

- Fast track approvals for risk scenarios that do not have predefined automated controls and approval policies for risk mitigation.
- Provide input to improve and optimize approval policies over time.

You can add ad-hoc approvers from the My Approvals screen. Approvers are allowed to add ad hoc approvers in the following points in the approval process.

- Before a selected approval step
- After a selected approval step
- Parallel to a selected approval step

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



The overall document must be in the Pending Approval status and the selected approval step must have one of the following approval statuses.

- Assigned
- Not Submitted

  Add Approver cannot be started from a Not Submitted step but can be started from an active step to a Not Submitted step. Approvers cannot add additional approvers before, after, or parallel to already Approved, Rejected, On Hold, or Cancelled steps.

This capability is available for headers and child object approval items. In addition, the capability is available for Apttus standard objects as well as any custom object.

Note

Ad hoc approval steps will be available only in the current iteration of the approval. If the document needs to be resubmitted for approval for any reason, the previously added ad hoc approver is not retained in the resubmitted approval. Users can choose to add an ad hoc approver again.

The behavior is the same even when the ad hoc approver rejects the approval request.

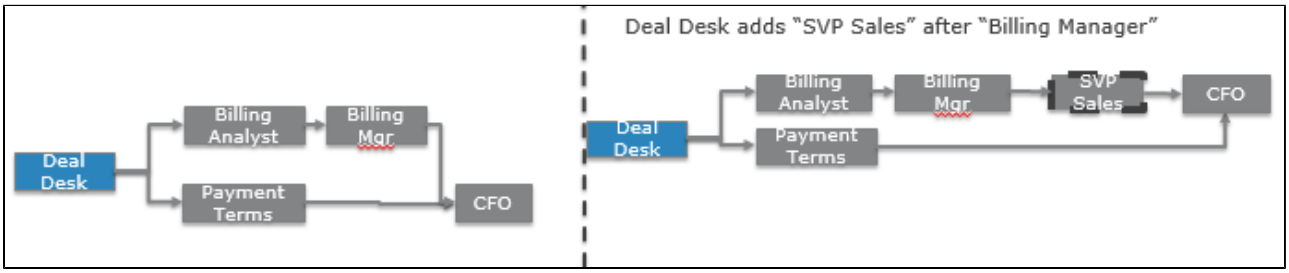
Adding an Ad Hoc Approver After an Assigned Approver

This section describes the scenario where you add an ad hoc approver after a currently assigned approver.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Your organization's approval workflow is designed such that, for any operational costs incurred, the first approval is assigned to the Deal desk, the second approval is routed to two assignees, the Billing Analyst and Payment Terms, in parallel. After the Billing Analyst approves the request, the next assignee is the Billing Manager. After the Billing Manager and Payment Terms approve the request, an approval request is forwarded to the CFO. From the My Approvals page, you can now add an ad hoc approver after a specific step in the process or after an existing approver.

Suppose the bills for an operation, sale, or deal exceed a certain value, the Billing Manager might want the SVP of Sales to approve the request. From the My Approvals page (where all the steps are listed), select the step where the Billing Manager is assigned a request. Click the Add Approver icon next to that step and add the SVP of Sales as an approver after the Billing Manager. The following diagram shows the scenario where you add an ad hoc approver after an assignee.



Dependencies for a new ad hoc step are as follows.

- **Depends on steps**: The new ad hoc approval is dependent on the selected step. For example, select the Billing Manager step, and add the SVP Sales as a step after the Billing Manager step. The SVP step is now dependent on the Billing Manager step.
- **Steps dependent on new step**: Steps that were dependent on the selected step are now dependent on the new ad hoc step. After you add the SVP Sales step, all the steps dependent on the Billing Manager step, such as the CFO step, are now dependent on the SVP step.

The revised dependencies for an existing selected step are as follows.

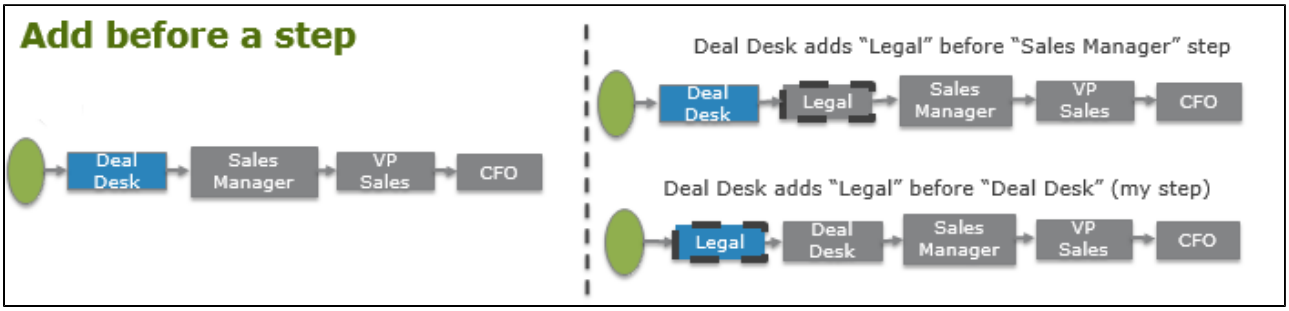
- **Depends on:** Does not change
- **Steps dependent on existing step**: New ad hoc step

Adding an Ad Hoc Approver Before an Assigned Approver

This section describes the scenario where you add an ad hoc approver before a currently assigned approver.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

While you are negotiating your agreement, the customer asks you to change a clause for an early termination of an agreement. In this case, you might require an approval from the Legal Team before the request is forwarded to the CFO. Based on your approval process configuration, the request will be forwarded to the CFO after the VP of Sales has approved the request. If the CFO has not yet approved or rejected the request, you can add an ad hoc approver before the CFO from the My Approvals page. The CFO step must be in the Assigned or Not Submitted state. Similarly, you can choose to add an ad hoc approver before the current assignee. In the following process workflow, the current assignee of the approval request is the Deal Desk. As a Deal Desk owner, you can choose to add Legal as an approver before you. In the My Approvals page, each step of the approval process is listed separately. To add an ad hoc approver before a selected step, select the step you want to add the approver before and click the Add Approver icon.



Select a step with a Not Submitted or Assigned status and add the step before the selected step. The dependencies for a new ad hoc step are as follows.

- **Depends on steps**: Existing dependencies for a selected step are transferred to the new ad hoc step, step. In other words, the new ad hoc step inherits the dependencies of the step it was added from. For example, if Legal is added as a new step before the Deal Desk step, the Legal step is now dependent on all of the steps the Deal Desk step was dependent on. All the step dependencies in the Deal Desk step are now transferred to the Legal step.
- **Steps dependent on new step**: The selected step is dependent on the new ad hoc step. For example, if you select the Deal Desk step and add a Legal step before the Deal Desk step, the Deal Desk step is now dependent on the Legal step.

The revised dependencies for existing selected step are as follows.

- **Depends on**: New ad hoc step
- **Steps dependent on existing step**: Does not change

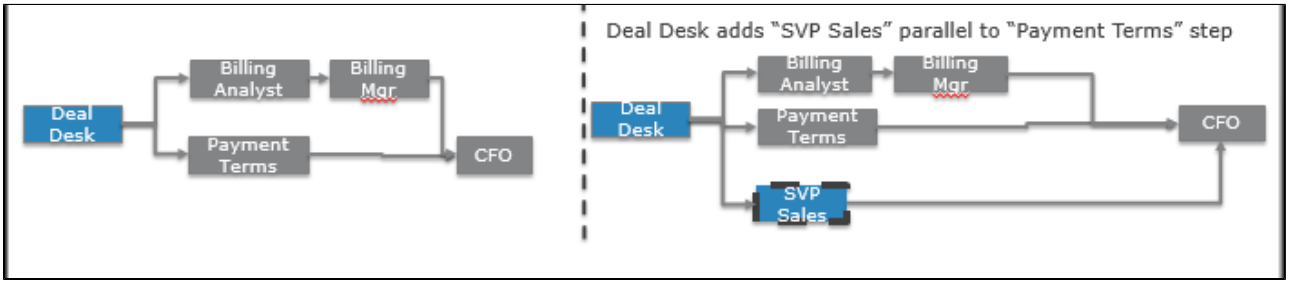
Note

Ensure that you are done with your configuration process before you add an ad hoc approver.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Adding an Ad Hoc Approver Parallel to an Assigned Approver

This section describes the scenario where you add an ad hoc approver parallel to a currently assigned approver.Your organization's approval workflow is designed such that for any operational costs incurred, the first approval step is assigned to the Deal Desk, and the second approval is routed to assignees, the Billing Analyst and Payment Terms, in parallel. After the Billing Analyst approves the request, the next assignee is the Billing Manager. After the Billing Manager and Payment Terms approve the request, an approval request is forwarded to the CFO. From the My Approvals page you can now add an ad hoc approver parallel to a specific step in the process or parallel to an existing approver. Suppose the bills for an operation, sale, or deal exceed a certain value, the Payment Terms team might want the SVP of Sales to approve the request. From the My Approvals page (where all the steps are listed), select the step where the Payment Terms is assigned a request. Select the add approver icon next to that step and add SVP of Sales as an approver parallel the Payment Terms step. The following diagram shows the scenarios where you add an ad hoc approver parallel to an assignee.



The new dependencies for new ad hoc step are as follows.

- **Depends on steps**: The new ad hoc approval step is dependent on the same steps the selected step is dependent on. For example, add the SVP Sales step parallel to the Payment Terms step. The SVP Sales step is dependent on all the steps the Payment terms step is dependent on. i.e. Deal Desk.
- **Steps dependent on new step**: Steps dependent on the selected step are dependent on the new ad hoc step as well as the existing step. For example, add the SVP Sales step parallel to the Payment Terms step. All the steps dependent on the Payment terms step is dependent on the SVP Sales step as well. In other words, the CFO Step is also dependent on the SVP Sales step.

The revised dependencies for an existing selected step.

- **Depends on**: Does not change

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- **Steps dependent on existing step**: Remain dependent on the existing step as well as the new ad hoc step.

> **Note**
>
> Ensure that you are done with your configuration process before you add an ad hoc approver.

Prerequisites for Adding an Ad Hoc Approver

Before you add an Ad Hoc approver, you must configure and create the following items for the primary or child objects for which you trigger an approval.

- My Approvals
- Approvals Pages
- Approval Required Check Trigger
- Search Filters (Approvals)
- Create approval email templates
- Set the Enable Ad Hoc Approver checkbox at Approval System Properties and Approvals Custom Config.

To add an ad hoc approver

One or more approval requests must be assigned to you before you can add an approver. The approval status of the object must be Approval Pending. The approval status of the step to which you want to assign an approver to must be Assigned or Not Submitted.

1. Navigate to the object to which you want to add an ad hoc approver.
2. Click **My Approvals**.
   If you are a member of a queue or a role, you can add an approver only after taking ownership of the queue/role assignment.
3. Select the step that you want to and an ad hoc approver before, after, or parallel to.
4. Click the **Add Approver** icon. The **Add Approver** dialog opens.
5. Select one the sequences from the drop-down list. Enter a Step Label for the step.
   - **Add approver before this approver**: Enables you to add an ad hoc approver before the selected step approver.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- **Add approver after this approver**: Enables you to add an ad hoc approver after the selected step approver.
- **Add approver parallel with this approver**: Enables you to add an approver parallel with the selected step approver.

6. Enter a **Step Label** for the step.
7. Select an Approver using the lookup icon. The approver can be of type User, Queue, Role, or Related User.
8. Add a comment. This comment is visible to the ad hoc approver in the email notification they receive and in the Approver comments.
9. Click **Save**.

The ad hoc approver receives the email notification and can approve or reject a request using the Salesforce org credentials or from within an email. If the ad hoc approver is added before an assigned step, then the originally assigned approver will get an additional notification once the request becomes available again for assignment.

Reassigning an Approval Request

This feature allows an approver to reassign an approval step in an active approval process in the Assigned state. For example, if, while approving a request, the Deal Desk concludes that a quote needs to be reassigned to Legal to fix terms and conditions, the deal desk assignee will reassign the request to Legal.

The following limitations and features are supported with the reassign functionality:

- Allow user to filter and search the assignees of a type from the displayed list,
- Custom assignee search screen for searching and filtering the approvals,
- No support for reassigning to queues, roles, or related users.

By reassigning approvers, you can:

- Fast track approvals for risk scenarios that do not have predefined automated controls and approval policies for risk mitigation.
- Provide input to improve and optimize approval policies over time.

You can reassign approvers from the My Approvals screen. The overall document must be in the Pending Approval status and the selected approval step must be in the Assigned or Reassigned state.

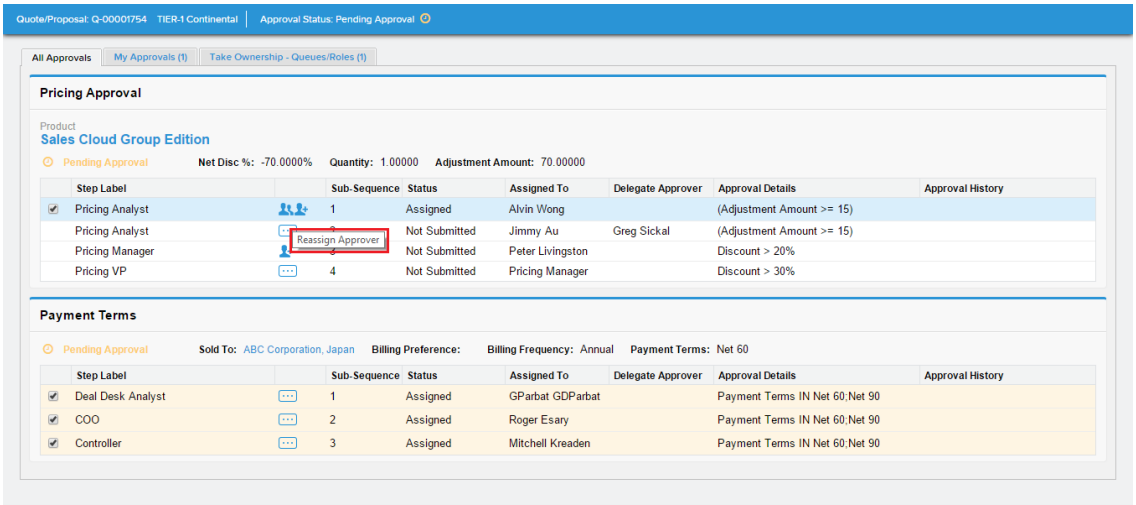
Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

This capability is available for headers and child object approval items. In addition, the capability is available for Apttus standard objects as well as any custom object.

Prerequisites for Re-assigning an Approver

Before you reassign an approver, you must configure and create the following items for the primary or child objects for which you trigger an approval.

- My Approvals
- Approvals Pages
- Approval Required Check Trigger
- Search Filters (Approvals)
- Create approval email templates



To reassign an approver

One or more approval requests must be assigned to you before you can add an approver. The approval status of the object must be Approval Pending. The approval status of the step to which you want to assign an approver to must be Assigned or Reassigned.

1. Navigate to the object to which you want to reassign an approver.
2. Click **My Approvals**. If you are a member of a queue or a role, you can add an approver only after taking ownership of the queue/role assignment.
3. Select the step that you want to reassign an approver to.
4. Click the **Reassign Approver** icon. The **ReAssign Approver** dialog opens.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

5. Select an Approver using the look-up icon.
6. Add a comment. This comment is visible to the reassigned approver in the email notification they receive and in the Approver comments.
7. Click **Save.**

The reassigned approver receives an email notification and can approve or reject a request using the Salesforce org credentials or from within an email.

Custom Query Callback for Reassigning and Adding Approver

Previously, the default behavior for reassigning and adding an approver queries from the My Approvals page was as follows:

- Reassigning Approver default behavior - Selects all users
- Add Approver default behavior - Selects all users, queues, and roles

From Summer 2018 release, as an Approvals admin, you can determine certain predefined subset of users, groups, queues or roles to be added as adhoc or additional users to the list of approvals for in-flight approval requests. Support has also been added for custom callback code to filter query for users, roles and queues for reassigning and adding an Approver on the My Approvals page.

In the Summer 2019 release, we have added the ability to reassign to queues and roles as well as users. When you select re-assignment to a Queue or a Role, a list of queues or roles is dynamically populated via a drop-down. The new default behavior available is:

- Reassigning Approver default behavior - Selects all users, queues, or roles
- Add Approver default behavior - Selects all users, queues, or roles

You can reassign an Approval Request to an User, Queue or Role. You can further customize the out-of-the-box behavior by overriding the Approval System Properties to filter list of users, queues, and roles from the reassign user page accessed by the Reassign link from the Approval Requests related list, and by overriding the DefaultQueryCallback class used to filter users, queues and roles from the Reassign and Add Approver icons on the My Approvals page.

If you want to change the default behavior from selecting all users, queues, and roles to only selecting a subset of them, you can create a custom apex callback class that contains custom code to query users, queues, and roles when reassigning users or adding adhoc approvers from the My Approvals page. Your code must implement the IQueryCallback and IQueryCallback2

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

interfaces and define the following six methods if you want to override the default behavior which is to select all available users, queues and roles. Note that since there are individual methods to select users, queues, or roles for reassigning or adding new approvers, you can display a different set of records for reassign approvers than adding them if you wanted to. Or your code can call a common method to return the same set of records for both.

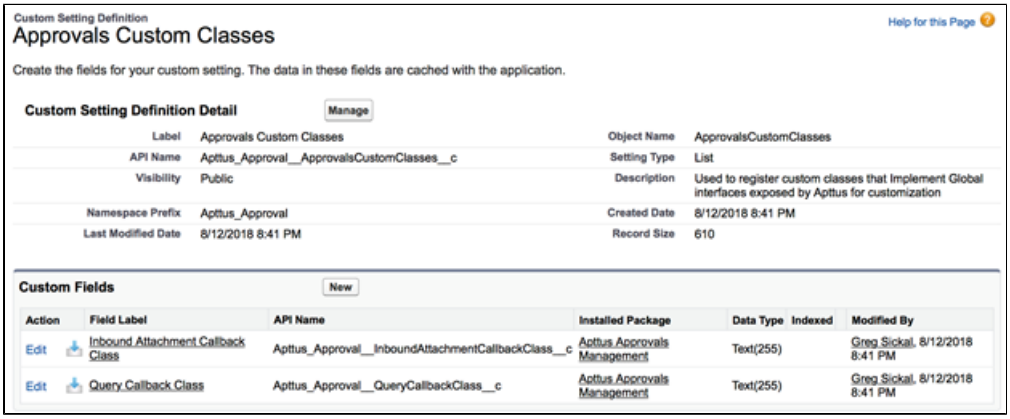
```
/**
     *    Apttus Approvals Management
     *    IQueryCallback
     *
     *    @2018-2019 Apttus Inc. All rights reserved.
     */
    global interface IQueryCallback {

        /**
         * Callback invoked to perform a filtered query when
reassigning user approvers
         * @param request the approval request context object
         * @param searchText the prefilter search text
         * @return list of sobjects returned from query
         */
        List<sObject> doReassignUserQuery(Approval_Request__c
request, String searchText);

        /**
         * Callback invoked to perform a filtered query when adding
user approvers
         * @param request the approval request context object
         * @param searchText the prefilter search text
         * @return list of sobjects returned from query
         */
        List<sObject> doAddUserQuery(Approval_Request__c request,
String searchText);

        /**
         * Callback invoked to perform a filtered query when adding
queue approvers
         * @param request the approval request context object
         * @param searchText the prefilter search text
         * @return list of sobjects returned from query
         */
        List<sObject> doAddQueueQuery(Approval_Request__c request,
String searchText);

        /**
```


Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
         * Callback invoked to perform a filtered query when adding
role approvers
         * @param request the approval request context object
         * @param searchText the prefilter search text
         * @return list of sobjects returned from query
         */
        List<sObject> doAddRoleQuery(Approval_Request__c request,
String searchText);

    }

    /**
     *    Apttus Approvals Management
     *    IQueryCallback2
     *
     *    @2018-2019 Apttus Inc. All rights reserved.
     */
    global interface IQueryCallback2 extends IQueryCallback {

        /**
         * Callback invoked to perform a filtered query when
reassigning queue approvers
         * @param request the approval request context object
         * @param searchText the prefilter search text
         * @return list of sobjects returned from query
         */
        List<sObject> doReassignQueueQuery(Approval_Request__c
request, String searchText);

        /**
         * Callback invoked to perform a filtered query when
reassigning role approvers
         * @param request the approval request context object
         * @param searchText the prefilter search text
         * @return list of sobjects returned from query
         */
        List<sObject> doReassignRoleQuery(Approval_Request__c
request, String searchText);

    }
```

Save the custom class name in the “Query Callback Class” custom field of the “Approvals Custom Classes” custom setting:

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



To override the default behavior

- From the Approval System Properties, in the **Reassign Filter Page** custom setting specify the name of the visual force page that lets users select from a filtered list of users, queues, and roles.

To specify the custom reassign user search, do the following:

1. Go to **Setup > Develop > Custom Settings** and click **Manage** for Approval System Properties.
2. In **Reassign Filter Page** specify the name of the visual force page.
3. Click **Save**.

To override the Default Query Callback class

1. Go to **Setup > Develop > Custom Settings** and click **Manage** for *Approvals Custom Classes*.
2. Click **Edit** for Custom Classes.

   ⚠ If there is no existing entry, you should create one. Click **New** and in **Name**, type Custom Classes.

3. In Query Callback Class, type the name of your callback class. For example, using the custom class in the Use Case below, enter “GSMyApprovalsQueryCallback” as the query callback class name:

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

4. Click **Save**.

Use Case

For example, here is an implementation of a custom callback that implements custom filters for reassigning and adding approver users, adding approver users, queues and roles. This is just a sample implementation. Your custom class can be simpler or much more complex. Each method takes two parameters: the approval request context object the user has selected to reassign or add approvers for and search text entered in the search box used to perform additional record filtering. Each of the methods in your callback class needs to return a list of Users, QueueSObjects, or UserRoles in each of the three methods.

> ⚠ You must define your class as global for the callback mechanism to work.

```
/**
 *  Apttus Approvals Management
 *  GSMyApprovalsQueryCallback
 *
 *  @2018-2019 Apttus Inc. All rights reserved.
 */
global with sharing class GSMyApprovalsQueryCallback
    implements Apttus_Approval.CustomClass.IQueryCallback,
               Apttus_Approval.CustomClass.IQueryCallback2 {

    // limit rows
    public static final Integer LIMIT_ROWS = 1000;

    /**
     * Callback invoked to perform a filtered query when reassigning
user approvers
     * @param request the approval request context object
     * @param searchText the prefilter search text
     * @return list of sobjects returned from query
```


Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
     */
    public List<sObject> doReassignUserQuery
(Apttus_Approval__Approval_Request__c request, String searchText) {
        try {
            String sq = '\'';
            String qryStr = 'SELECT Id, Name, Username, LastName,
FirstName, Email, UserRoleId, UserRole.Name, IsActive, Profile.Name '
;
            qryStr += ', (select Id, ';
            qryStr += 'Apttus_Approval__Approval_Level__c, ';
            qryStr += 'Apttus_Approval__Description__c';
            qryStr += ' from ' + 'Apttus_Approval__Approval_Matrices_
_r)';
            qryStr += ' FROM User ';
            qryStr += ' WHERE IsActive = true ';

            if (!nullOrEmpty(searchText)) {
                // build the search term
                String searchTerm = (searchText != null ? searchText
: '').trim();

                // append wildcards to the search term
                searchTerm = (!searchTerm.startsWith('%') ? '%' +
searchTerm : searchTerm);
                searchTerm = (!searchTerm.endsWith('%') ? searchTerm
+ '%' : searchTerm);

                qryStr += 'AND ';
                qryStr += 'Name LIKE ' + sq + String.
escapeSingleQuotes(searchTerm) + sq;
            }

            // EXAMPLE: filter out users with names not containing
'Borden' and system admin profiles
            qryStr += ' AND (NOT Name LIKE ' + sq + 'Borden%' + sq +
')';
            //qryStr += ' AND Profile.Name = ' + sq + 'System
Administrator' + sq;
            qryStr += ' ORDER BY Name';

            // limit rows
            qryStr += ' LIMIT ' + LIMIT_ROWS;

            // execute the query
            return Database.query(qryStr);

        } catch (Exception ex) {
```


Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
            system.debug(LoggingLevel.ERROR, ex.getMessage());
            return new List<sObject>();

        }

    }

    /**
     * Callback invoked to perform a filtered query when reassigning
queue approvers
     * @param request the approval request context object
     * @param searchText the prefilter search text
     * @return list of sobjects returned from query
     */
    public List<sObject> doReassignQueueQuery
(Apttus_Approval__Approval_Request__c request, String searchText) {
        try {
            String sq = '\'';
            String qryStr = 'SELECT Id, QueueId, Queue.Id, Queue.
Name, Queue.DeveloperName, Queue.Type, Queue.Email';
            qryStr += ' FROM QueueSobject ';
            qryStr += ' WHERE ';

            if (!nullOrEmpty(searchText)) {
                // build the search term
                String searchTerm = (searchText != null ? searchText
: '').trim();

                // append wildcards to the search term
                searchTerm = (!searchTerm.startsWith('%') ? '%' +
searchTerm : searchTerm);
                searchTerm = (!searchTerm.endsWith('%') ? searchTerm
+ '%' : searchTerm);

                qryStr += 'Queue.Name LIKE ' + sq + String.
escapeSingleQuotes(searchTerm) + sq;
                qryStr += ' AND SObjectType = ' + sq + 'Apttus_Approv
al__Approval_Request__c' + sq;
                qryStr += ' AND';
            }

            // EXAMPLE: filter out queues with names containing
'Approvals BQA'
            qryStr += ' Queue.Name LIKE ' + sq + 'Approvals BQA%' +
sq;
            qryStr += ' AND SObjectType = ' + sq + 'Apttus_Approval__
Approval_Request__c' + sq;
```


Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
            qryStr += ' ORDER BY Queue.Name';

            // limit rows
            qryStr += ' LIMIT ' + LIMIT_ROWS;

            // execute the query
            return Database.query(qryStr);

        } catch (Exception ex) {
            system.debug(LoggingLevel.ERROR, ex.getMessage());
            return new List<sObject>();

        }

    }

    /**
     * Callback invoked to perform a filtered query when reassigning
role approvers
     * @param request the approval request context object
     * @param searchText the prefilter search text
     * @return list of sobjects returned from query
     */
    public List<sObject> doReassignRoleQuery
(Apttus_Approval__Approval_Request__c request, String searchText) {
        try {
            String sq = '\'';
            String qryStr = 'SELECT Id, Name, DeveloperName,
RollupDescription';
            qryStr += ' FROM UserRole ';
            qryStr += ' WHERE ';

            if (!nullOrEmpty(searchText)) {
                // build the search term
                String searchTerm = (searchText != null ? searchText
: '').trim();

                // append wildcards to the search term
                searchTerm = (!searchTerm.startsWith('%') ? '%' +
searchTerm : searchTerm);
                searchTerm = (!searchTerm.endsWith('%') ? searchTerm
+ '%' : searchTerm);

                qryStr += 'UserRole.Name LIKE ' + sq + String.
escapeSingleQuotes(searchTerm) + sq;
                qryStr += ' AND';
            }
```


Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
            // EXAMPLE: filter out roles with names containing
Sales
            qryStr += ' UserRole.Name LIKE ' + sq + 'Sales%' +
sq;
            qryStr += ' ORDER BY UserRole.Name';

            // limit rows
            qryStr += ' LIMIT ' + LIMIT_ROWS;

            // execute the query
            return Database.query(qryStr);

        } catch (Exception ex) {
            system.debug(LoggingLevel.ERROR, ex.getMessage());
            return new List<sObject>();

        }

    }

    /**
     * Callback invoked to perform a filtered query when adding user
approvers
     * @param request the approval request context object
     * @param searchText the prefilter search text
     * @return list of sobjects returned from query
     */
    public List<sObject> doAddUserQuery
(Apttus_Approval__Approval_Request__c request, String searchText) {
        try {
            String sq = '\'';
            String qryStr = 'SELECT Id, Name, Username, LastName,
FirstName, Email, UserRoleId, UserRole.Name, IsActive, Profile.Name '
;
            qryStr += ', (select Id, ';
            qryStr += 'Apttus_Approval__Approval_Level__c, ';
            qryStr += 'Apttus_Approval__Description__c';
            qryStr += ' from ' + 'Apttus_Approval__Approval_Matrices_
_r)';
            qryStr += ' FROM User ';
            qryStr += ' WHERE IsActive = true ';

            if (!nullOrEmpty(searchText)) {
                // build the search term
                String searchTerm = (searchText != null ? searchText
: '').trim();
```


Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
                // append wildcards to the search term
                searchTerm = (!searchTerm.startsWith('%') ? '%' +
searchTerm : searchTerm);
                searchTerm = (!searchTerm.endsWith('%') ? searchTerm
+ '%' : searchTerm);

                qryStr += 'AND ';
                qryStr += 'Name LIKE ' + sq + String.
escapeSingleQuotes(searchTerm) + sq;
            }

            // EXAMPLE: filter out users with names not containing
'Borden' and system admin profiles
            qryStr += ' AND (NOT Name LIKE ' + sq + 'Borden%' + sq +
')';
            //qryStr += ' AND Profile.Name = ' + sq + 'System
Administrator' + sq;
            qryStr += ' ORDER BY Name';

            // limit rows
            qryStr += ' LIMIT ' + LIMIT_ROWS;

            // execute the query
            return Database.query(qryStr);

        } catch (Exception ex) {
            system.debug(LoggingLevel.ERROR, ex.getMessage());
            return new List<sObject>();

        }

    }

    /**
     * Callback invoked to perform a filtered query when adding
queue approvers
     * @param request the approval request context object
     * @param searchText the prefilter search text
     * @return list of sobjects returned from query
     */
    public List<sObject> doAddQueueQuery
(Apttus_Approval__Approval_Request__c request, String searchText) {
        try {
            String sq = '\'';
            String qryStr = 'SELECT Id, QueueId, Queue.Id, Queue.
Name, Queue.DeveloperName, Queue.Type, Queue.Email';
```


Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
            qryStr += ' FROM QueueSobject ';
            qryStr += ' WHERE ';

            if (!nullOrEmpty(searchText)) {
                // build the search term
                String searchTerm = (searchText != null ? searchText
: '').trim();

                // append wildcards to the search term
                searchTerm = (!searchTerm.startsWith('%') ? '%' +
searchTerm : searchTerm);
                searchTerm = (!searchTerm.endsWith('%') ? searchTerm
+ '%' : searchTerm);

                qryStr += 'Queue.Name LIKE ' + sq + String.
escapeSingleQuotes(searchTerm) + sq;
                qryStr += ' AND SObjectType = ' + sq + 'Apttus_Approv
al__Approval_Request__c' + sq;
                qryStr += ' AND';
            }

            // EXAMPLE: filter out queues with names containing 'BO'
            qryStr += ' Queue.Name LIKE ' + sq + 'BO%' + sq;
            qryStr += ' AND SObjectType = ' + sq + 'Apttus_Approval__
Approval_Request__c' + sq;
            qryStr += ' ORDER BY Queue.Name';

            // limit rows
            qryStr += ' LIMIT ' + LIMIT_ROWS;

            // execute the query
            return Database.query(qryStr);

        } catch (Exception ex) {
            system.debug(LoggingLevel.ERROR, ex.getMessage());
            return new List<sObject>();

        }

    }

    /**
     * Callback invoked to perform a filtered query when adding role
approvers
     * @param request the approval request context object
     * @param searchText the prefilter search text
     * @return list of sobjects returned from query
```


Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
     */
    public List<sObject> doAddRoleQuery
(Apttus_Approval__Approval_Request__c request, String searchText) {
        try {
            String sq = '\'';
            String qryStr = 'SELECT Id, Name, DeveloperName,
RollupDescription';
            qryStr += ' FROM UserRole ';
            qryStr += ' WHERE ';

            if (!nullOrEmpty(searchText)) {
                // build the search term
                String searchTerm = (searchText != null ? searchText
: '').trim();

                // append wildcards to the search term
                searchTerm = (!searchTerm.startsWith('%') ? '%' +
searchTerm : searchTerm);
                searchTerm = (!searchTerm.endsWith('%') ? searchTerm
+ '%' : searchTerm);

                qryStr += 'UserRole.Name LIKE ' + sq + String.
escapeSingleQuotes(searchTerm) + sq;
                qryStr += ' AND';
            }

            // EXAMPLE: filter out roles with names containing Role
            qryStr += ' UserRole.Name LIKE ' + sq + 'Role%' +
sq;
            qryStr += ' ORDER BY UserRole.Name';

            // limit rows
            qryStr += ' LIMIT ' + LIMIT_ROWS;

            // execute the query
            return Database.query(qryStr);

        } catch (Exception ex) {
            system.debug(LoggingLevel.ERROR, ex.getMessage());
            return new List<sObject>();

        }

    }

    /**
     * Checks if the given string value is null or empty.
```


Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
     * @param strValue the string to check
     * @return <code>true</code> if the string value is null or
empty, <code>false</code> otherwise
     */
    public static Boolean nullOrEmpty(String strValue) {
        // check if null or zero length string
        return (strValue == null || strValue.trim().length() == 0);

    }
```

Auto-escalating Approval Requests

When an approval request is not approved, rejected, or reassigned within the allotted time, it can automatically be reassigned to a new approver so the approval process can continue.

> From the March 2016 release onwards, Auto-Escalation is enabled for (Sub-Process) Approval Rules only. Do not setup Auto-Escalation on (Child Process) Approval Rules. For example, if an approval rule is setup on a child record object, such as Line Item or Agreement Line Item and this Approval rule is used as a child process, then auto-escalation is not executed for entries in that approval rule.

Once an approval request has been created, the system uses the value of *expected time to complete* (days and hours) to determine when the approval request should be auto-escalated. A background service runs that periodically checks on the status of approval requests and when one is flagged as exceeding that time, the auto-escalation is triggered.Auto-escalation is triggered at the approval step level. If you do not want to wait for the auto-escalation to occur, you can also manually escalate approval requests from the *Approvals* related list for the object that is under approval. Auto-escalations can have one of two paths — single-step or multi-step — depending on the auto-escalation assignee type.

Single-step	After an approval is auto-escalated to the next user, if that user does not decide on the approval in the designated time, the approval request is auto-escalated to the backup admin user. For example, if the auto-escalation Assignee Type is *Role*, and you have a Territory Manager role with three users assigned to it, the auto-escalation will be assigned to the first active user assigned to that role. If that user does not decide on

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

	the request within the allocated time frame, the request is sent to the backup admin user and that is the extent of the auto-escalation path.Single-step assignee types are *Backup Admin User*, *Queue*, *Related User*, *Role*, *Rule*, and *User*. When the assignee type is queue or Backup Admin user, there is no delegate user. **Note** If you select *Rule* as an **Assignee Type** , t he approval request is sent only to the first user that satisfies the filter criteria in the Approval Rul e . If you have multiple approvers in a sequence, only the first approver is selected and assigned.
Multi-step	The auto-escalated request can move amongst multiple users for that assignee type before being sent to the backup admin user.For example, if the auto-escalation assignee type is *User Delegated Approver*, the initial auto-escalation will send the approval request to that user's delegated approver, as configured in their user account. If the request is not decided on within the allocated time, the request would be auto-escalated to the delegated approver of that user who received the auto-escalated request. This would continue until that assignee type was exhausted, then it would be sent to the backup admin user.Multi-step assignee types are *User Approval Matrix Next Approver*, *User Delegated Approver*, and *User Manager*.

Configuring Auto-escalation

You need to configure the following for this feature.

Workflow Rules	Workflow rules that contain time triggers cannot be included in a managed package, so you must configure them manually to provide the time-based framework for this feature.
Auto-escalation Reminders	Reminder emails can be sent to approvers to let them know if they do not approve, reject, or reassign an approval request, it will be automatically escalated.
Approvals System Property	**Enable Approval Request Auto-Escalation** is the flag for the system to use the auto-escalation functionality, based on the settings configuration.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

User Approver Settings	If you want to auto-escalate to User Delegated Approver or User Manager assignee types, you must configure these settings.
Email Templates	These templates are used to generate the email notifications that are sent to the auto-escalation approvers. The system comes with escalation templates for agreements, opportunities, and term exceptions. For other objects that use intelligent approvals you will need to create custom templates. **Attention** If you are going to use attachments with your emails, you MUST create custom email templates. Default templates do not support attachments.
Global Escalation Options	These options must be configured, so that if no escalation options are configured for the approval process step, the escalation process will fall back on these settings to determine when the escalation will begin and who will be involved.

By completing this configuration, you can use auto-escalations and they will work according to the configuration; however, you will be able to override some of the options later when creating approval processes.

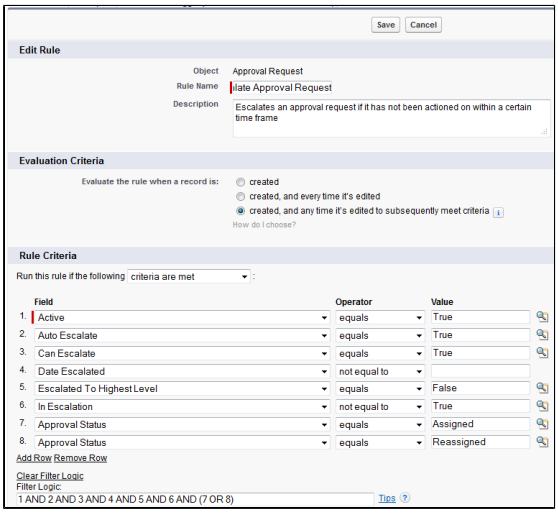
To configure Workflow Rules

1. Go to **Build > Create > Workflow & Approvals > Workflow Rules** and click **New Rule**.
2. Select **Approval Request** from the list and click **Next**.
3. Enter *Escalate Approval Request* for the mandatory **Rule Name** and for **Evaluation Criteria** select **created, and any time it's edited to subsequently meet criteria**.
4. Enter the following **Rule Criteria**:
    - Active equals True
    - Auto Escalate equals True
    - Can Escalate equals True
    - Date Escalated not equal to Null
    - Escalated to Highest Level equals False

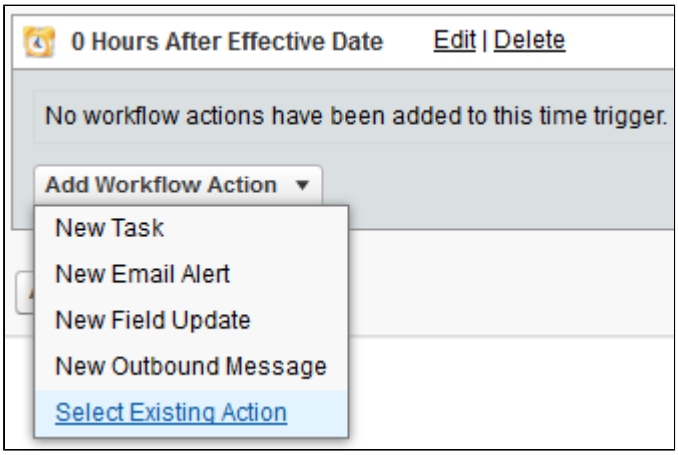
Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- In Escalation not equal to True
- Approval Status equals Assigned
- Approval Status equals Reassigned

5. Enter the following **Filter Logic**:1 AND 2 AND 3 AND 4 AND 5 AND 6 AND (7 OR 8).



6. Click **Save & Next** to display the Specify Workflow Actions page.
7. Click **Add Time Trigger** and set the values to 0 Minutes After Date Escalated and click **Save** .
8. In the **Time-Dependent Workflow Actions** section, select **Add Workflow Actions > Select Existing Actions**.



Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

9. From the Choose **Action Type** list, select **Field Update** and from the **Available Actions** list, select **Field Update: Set Can Escalate To False, Field Update: Set Date Escalated To Null, Field Update: Set in Escalation to True** and click **Add**. These actions are already included in the Intelligent Workflow and Approvals package and only need to be associated with the workflow rule here.
10. Click **Save** and return to the **Specify Workflow Actions** page.
11. Click **Done** on the Specify Workflow Actions page and you are returned to the main Workflow Rule page. Subsequently, activate the workflow rule.

The required workflow rule framework for auto-escalated approval requests is now ready.

You can add additional workflow triggers for informing someone their request will be auto-escalated, configure the Auto-escalate settings, and email templates.

To enable the Approval Systems Property

1. Go to **Build > Develop > Approvals System Properties** and click **Manage.**
2. Click **Edit** beside **System Properties**.
3. Select **Enable Approval Request Auto-Escalation** and click **Save**.

This enables the auto-escalation feature for the system.

Set up the required email templates and global escalation options.

To select Approver Settings

1. Go to **Administration Setup > Manage Users > Users** and select **Edit** for the appropriate user.
2. Scroll to the **Approver Settings** section and complete the following:

Option	Description
Delegated Approver	This can be any user, but you should ensure they have access to the same objects as the user they may receive delegated approval requests for.
Manager	The user's manager.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Option	Description
Receive Approval Request Emails	If you select Never, the user will not receive email notifications that they have had an auto-escalated approval request sent to them. They will receive notifications with any other option.

3. Click **Save**.

You can now select *User Delegated Approver* and *User Manager* as auto-escalation assignee types for this user.

Repeat this task for other users, as there is no batch action update available for these settings.

Email Templates for Auto-escalation

By default, the Apttus Approvals Management package contains Escalation templates for *Opportunities*, *Agreements*, and *Term Exceptions*.

These templates can be used as-is out of the box; however, you can also configure bespoke templates for your organization. See Setting up Email Templates and Alerts and the email Appendices for more details.

Auto-escalation Behavior

This section outlines the behavior for auto-escalation in Approval Rules.

Scenarios	Behavior
• Auto escalation is active	Approval request is escalated to the assignee "User" if the original assignee does not take an action within (**1 or X)** hours of generation of the approval request
• Expected **hours** to complete =1 hour, X hours	If the escalated user assignee does not take any action within the stipulated **(1 or X)** hours then the request should be escalated to the backup admin. Same behavior applies for all other types of assignee.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Scenarios	Behavior
• Auto escalation assignee is a "User" **X= any other variable # of hours*	
• Auto escalation is active • Expected **hours** to complete =1 • Auto escalation assignee is a "Delegate Approver"	Approval request is escalated to the assignee "**Apttus Delegate Approver**" if the original assignee does not take an action within (**1 or X)** hour of generation of the approval request If the escalated assignee does not take any action within the stipulated **(1 or X)** hours then the request is escalated to the backup admin. Approval request should remain with the escalated assignee for the remaining life cycle of the request.
• Auto escalation is active • Expected **hours** to complete =1 • Auto escalation assignee is	Approval request is escalated to the first assignee in the approval matrix if the original assignee does not take an action within the stipulated (**1 or X)** hour of generation of the approval request. • If the first assignee does not take any action within one hour, the request is escalated to next assignee in the approval matrix chain. • The escalation process continues till the last assignee in the approval matrix is assigned the request. • If the last assignee does not take any action then the approval request is reassigned to the backup admin.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Scenarios	Behavior
a "Approval Matrix"	The request traverses up the approval matrix at the interval defined in the auto escalation setup. For example, after every one hour the request is escalated to the next assignee if no action is taken on the approval request.
• Auto escalations is active • Expected **Days** to complete =1 • Auto escalation assignee is a "User" **X= any other variable # of Days*	Approval request is escalated to the assignee "User" if the original assignee does not take an action within (**1 or X) days** of generation of the approval request If the escalated assignee does not take any action within the stipulated **(1 or X)** hours then the request is escalated to the backup admin. Same behavior applies for all other type of assignees.
• Auto escalations is active • Expected **Days** to complete =1 • Auto escalation assignee is a "Delegate Approver"	Approval request is escalated to the assignee "**Apttus Delegate Approver**" if the original assignee does not take an action within (**1 or X) Days** of generation of the approval request. If the escalated assignee does not take any action **(1 or X)** hours then the request is escalated to the backup admin.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Scenarios	Behavior
• Auto escalations is active • Expected **Days** to complete =1 • Auto escalation assignee is a "Approval Matrix"	Approval request is escalated to the first assignee in the approval matrix if the original assignee does not take an action within (**1 or X) Days** of generation of the approval request. • If the first assignee does not take any action within one day, the request is escalated to next assignee in the approval matrix chain. • The escalation process should continue till the last assignee in the approval matrix is assigned the request. • If the last assignee does not take any action then the approval request should be reassigned to the backup admin. ⓘ The request traverses up the approval matrix at the interval defined in the auto escalation setup. For example, after every one day the request is escalated to the next assignee if no action is taken on the approval request.

Auto-Escalation Limitations

- There are limits on the number of time-based workflow rules per hour. The limits are as follows:
  - Enterprise Edition =500
  - Developer Edition =50
  - Unlimited Edition =1,000
- Auto-escalation cannot be defined for rules you want to use as a child process.
- For an assigned request if the expected completion time is greater than the current time then the request will be auto-escalated.
- If an assignee in a standard step is a rule, the assignees in the rule cannot have auto escalation values.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Best Practices

1. As a best practice, escalation time should be minimum for one day. Not less than that.
2. Whenever Escalation is set up for a specific user, role, or a queue the same format should be followed at each and every step.

For example, Configure a rule entry where Jim is an assignee and Mark is the escalation assignee and the escalation time setup up is 1 day. If Jim does not respond to a request in 1 day, it will be escalated to Mark.

Given this logic, if there is any other step (standard or subprocess step) that also has Jim as an assignee, the step should also have Mark as the escalation assignee and an escalation time of 1 day.

This is also a system limitation. For example, if John has auto-escalation in one step, no auto-escalation in another step, and enables consolidated approvals, escalation does not work. In this scenario, the escalation request goes on hold.

Consolidation and Auto-Escalation Behavior

If consolidation is enabled (Approvals or Notifications), consolidation will always take precedence over escalation. For example, unless all requests are available (a user has multiple requests, at least one request should be in the assigned status) the escalation timer will not start till then.

Reassign and Auto-Escalation Behavior

Consider an approval request which has Jim as a primary assignee and Mark as the auto-escalation assignee on it. The request is scheduled to escalate one day after assignment. After some time, the request is reassigned to Karl. This will not impact the escalation time. If Karl does not take any action, the request will escalate as expected (i.e. it will escalate 1 day since it was assigned to Jim.)

Ad hoc Approver and Auto-Escalation Behavior

If an ad hoc approver is added, the end user does not have an option to add escalation value to the ad hoc assignee.

Auto Approve/Auto Complete and Auto-Escalation Behavior

Escalation should never be set up on Auto Approved Steps.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Clone Quote with its existing configuration

You can now enable an approval flag to clone header and it's line item approval status and approval requests when the line item status is Approved, Rejected, and Cancelled. Now you can clone a quote with its line items, including proposal header information.

Whenever an Account Executive has to create multiple draft options of the same quote or needs to make a change (for example, extend the quote expiry date) to a finalized quote before sending it out to the customer, they may choose clone the quote with the line items with the approval status. Each cloned version of the quote has to go through its own approval life cycle before being finalized. In an event that a quote has gone through multiple rounds of approvals before cloning. After the quote is cloned, all "Approved" approval requests get cloned to the new quote as well.

On the original quote, line items which were approved in previous iteration of the approval process flow normally have associated "Approved" approval requests in the approval request history table. When a quote is cloned, these requests will get cloned to the new quote(cart's) approval request history table **NOT** to the approval request table.

To enable the above enhancement, go to Proposal System Properties and enable **Clone with Approval Status**.

The new cloned quote will retain all the information of the parent quote, including:

- Proposal header details
- Configuration line items (if parent quote is not finalized)
- Proposal line items (if parent quote is finalized)
- Attributes of line items

The following information is not retained from the parent quote:

- Start date and End date of the Quote Header
- Activity history
- Notes and Attachments

The updated behavior when you clone a Quote/Proposal is as follows:

- If a Quote is cloned in an approved status, the line items will retain the approved status and are not considered for approval required check, unless they are specifically modified. All approved requests related to these line items are cloned as well.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- If a Quote header is updated, all approvals related to the quote header will be retriggered. All approval requests related to the quote header will be retained. Now if the quote is modified, it may need to go through approvals again, depending on pre-defined approval rules

When you clone a quote with its line items, a new quote is generated with a unique quote number whose **Status** will be *Draft* and **Configuration** status is *Saved*. The table below highlights the behavior in the older and the current version.

Behavior in New version	Behavior in Old version
If the Line item is **Approved**, the approval status is retained in the cloned quote.	All the values were blanked out and the value in the **Approval Status** was not carried forward to the cloned quote after cloning.

The tables below outline the behavior of the Quote before and after Clone when "Clone With Approvals" flag is TRUE.

Before Clone						
Number	**Quote (Approval) Stage**	**Quote Approval Status**	**Cart Approval Status**	**Cart Status**	**Line Item -1**	**Line Item -2**
1	Draft	Not Submitted	Not Submitted	New	Blank	Blank
3	In Review	Pending Approval	Pending Approval	Pending Approval	Pending Approval	Pending Approval
4	Approval required	Approval required	Approval required	Approval required	Approval required	Approval required
5	Denied	Rejected	Rejected	Approval required	Rejected	Rejected
6	Approved	Approved	Approved		Approved	Approved

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Before Clone						
				Ready For Finalization /Finalized		
7	Approval required	Cancelled	Cancelled	Approval required	Cancelled	Cancelled

After Clone						
Number	**Quote (Approval) Stage**	**Quote Approval Status**	**Cart Approval Status**	**Cart Status**	**Line Item -1**	**Line Item -2**
1	**Draft**	Blank	**Configuration is not cloned**	Saved	Blank	Blank
3	Draft	Blank	Blank	Saved	Blank	Blank
4	Draft	Blank	Blank	Saved	Blank	Blank
5	Denied	Rejected	Rejected	Saved	Rejected	Rejected
6	Draft	Approved	Approved	Saved	Approved	Approved
7	Approval Required	Cancelled	Cancelled	Saved	Cancelled	Cancelled

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Approval Submission Comments

Approval submission comments enable you to add personalized comments when you submit an approval request. You can have a single comment at the process level or up to three comments at the step level.

Providing comments at the process level enables you to add general instructions to all of the approvers, while adding comments at the step level enables you to tailor a specific message for each individual approver. The comments can be text only, up to 4096 characters.

Process Level comments could be used when a quote requires approval from one group and the same justification holds true for all approvers. *Step Level* comments could be used when quote needs approval from Finance, Legal, and Pricing and you want to send a separate justification for each approver group.

These comments can be viewed on:

- Approval Request Record
- Approval Request History Record
- Approval Summary Page
- Approval Email Notifications

Configuring Approval Comments

You must have custom labels available for the comments and then you must enable submission comments for an approval process, at either the process or step level.

To create comment custom labels

1. Go to **Build > Create > Custom Labels** and click **New Custom Label**.
2. Enter values for the mandatory fields. *Name* is the text you must enter in the approval process when you are selecting the label to use with the submission comments. *Value* is the label that is displayed on the approval request itself, where the submission comments will be entered.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

New Custom Label

The label is now available for use with submission comments.

You can create more labels as required.With the labels available you can now create approval processes that use submission comments.If you have the **Translation Workbench** enabled in your org, you can also translate the label into multiple languages.

To configure approval comments for a process

You must have created labels.

1. Go to the **Approval Processes** tab.
2. Select an existing process or create a new one and proceed to the Step 6: Specify Submission Comment Settings page.
3. Click **Submission Comments Enabled** to display the submission comments options.
4. For **Submission Comments Type**, select **Process** and for **Submission Comment 1** Label, enter the value from the label's *Name* field you want to use. You must be sure you enter the correct value for the label, as there is no validation you have entered a valid label.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

5. Click **Save**.

Complete the remaining configuration for the approval process and ensure that it is active.

When the entry criteria for this approval process is met when someone submits a record for approval, they will be able to enter submission comments at the process level.

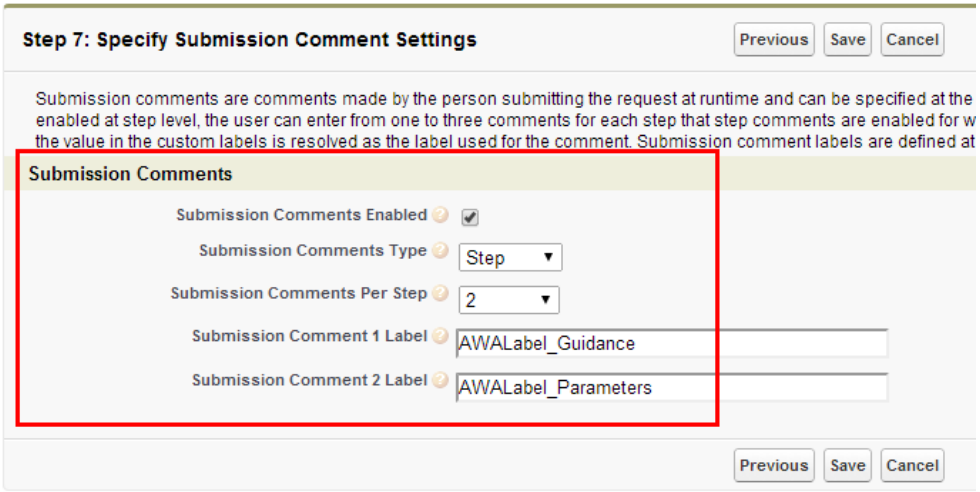
To configure approval comments for steps

You must have created labels.

1. Go to the **Approval Processes** tab.
2. Select an existing process or create a new one and proceed to the Step 7: Specify Submission Comment Settings page.
3. Click **Submission Comments Enabled** to display the submission comments options.
4. For **Submission Comments Type**, select Step and for Submission Comments Per Step, select **1, 2,** or **3.**

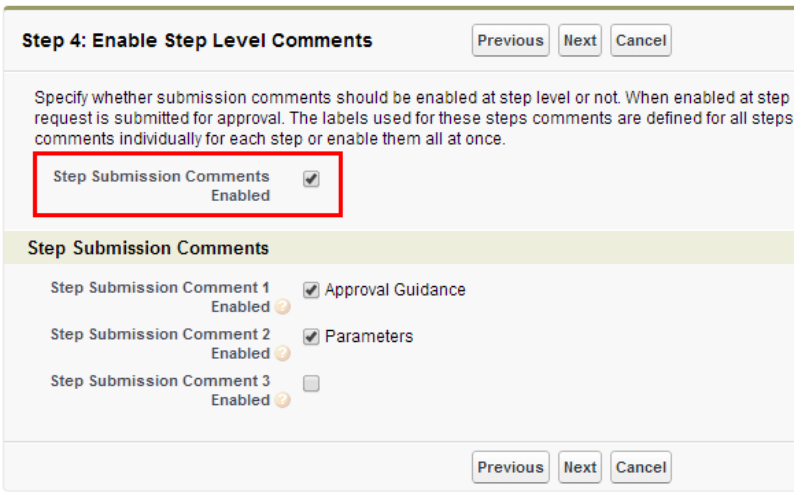
> **Note**
>
> If you define submission comments at the step level, ensure that you have defined them for all the steps in the process to avoid running into SOQL error.

5. For each **Submission Comment Label**, enter the value from the label's *Name* field you want to use. You must be sure you enter the correct value for the labels, as there is no validation you have entered a valid label.



Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

6. Click **Save**.
7. Go to the approval steps for the process and configure them as normal, and proceed to the Step 6: Enable Step Level Comments page.
8. Click **Step Submission Comments Enabled**, if you want to be able to enter submission comments for that specific step. Select which of the comments you want to use. If *Submission Comments Type* is *Process*, that overrides this setting and comments will only be available at the process level and not the step level.



9. Click **Save**.

Complete the remaining configuration for the approval process and ensure that it is active.

When the entry criteria for this approval process is met when someone submits a record for approval, they will be able to enter submission comments at the step level.

Submitting Comments

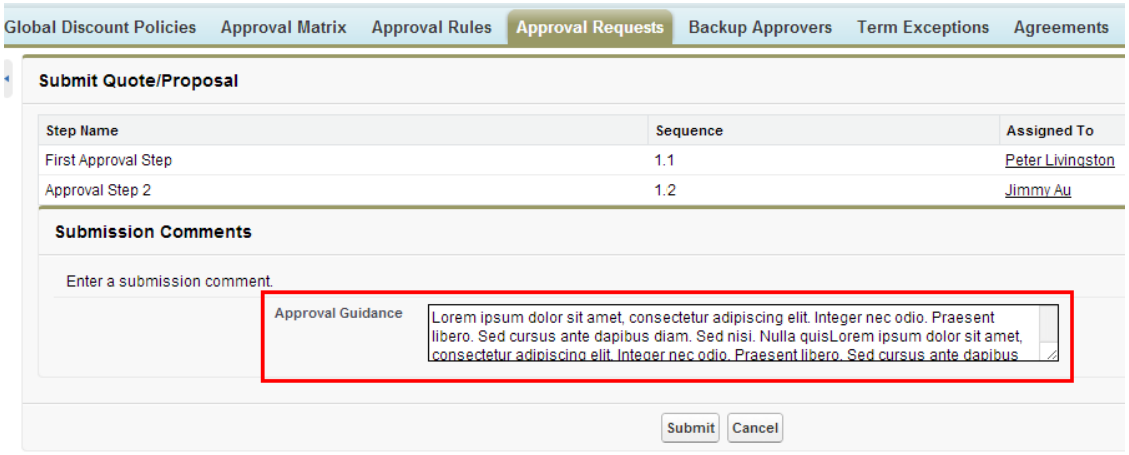
When an object record meets the entry criteria upon clicking Submit Approval, for an approval process using submission comments, the fields will be available to enter comments in.Either submission comments will be available as a single field for the entire process or 1 to 3 comment fields will be available for specific approval steps.

To submit comments

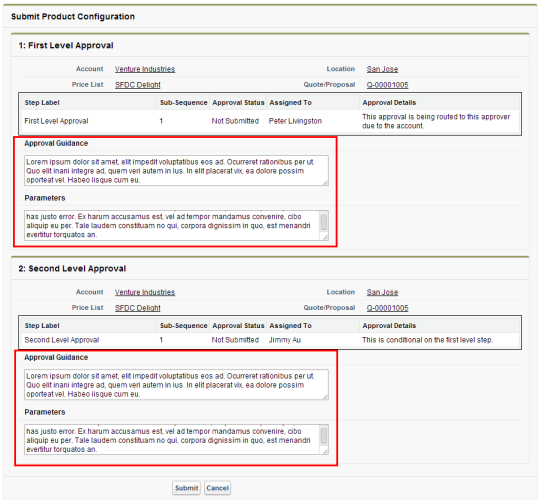
There must be an active approval process with submission comments enabled.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

1. From the object record (such as a Quote/Proposal record), click **Submit Approvals** from the **Approval Requests** related list.
2. From the Submit page enter comments:
    a. For submission comments at the approval process level there will be a single comment field.



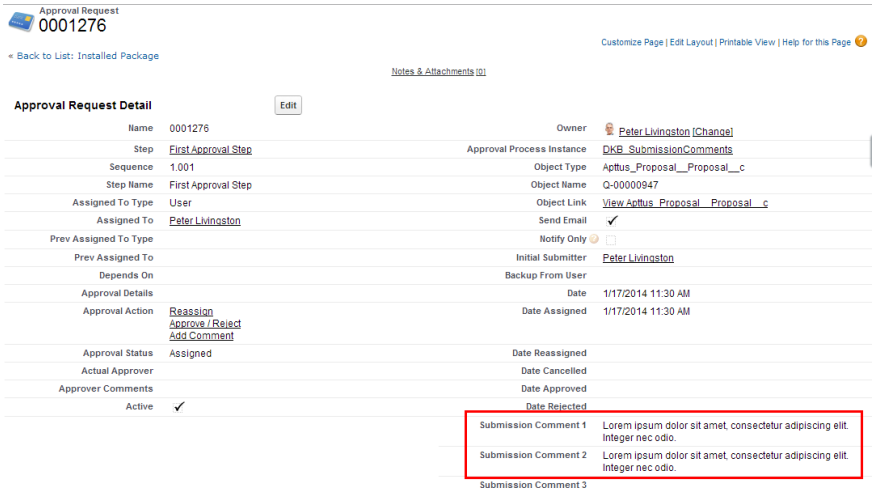
    b. For submission comments at the approval step level there will be between one and three comment fields. It will also depend on how the steps were configured, whether the fields will be available for some steps or all steps. In the example below the submission comments are available for each step.



3. Click **Submit** and the approval request process starts.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

The submission comments are captured on the Approval Request object and the Approval Summary Page.



If the approval process is cancelled and a new process is started, the submission comments will be included in the Approval Request History.

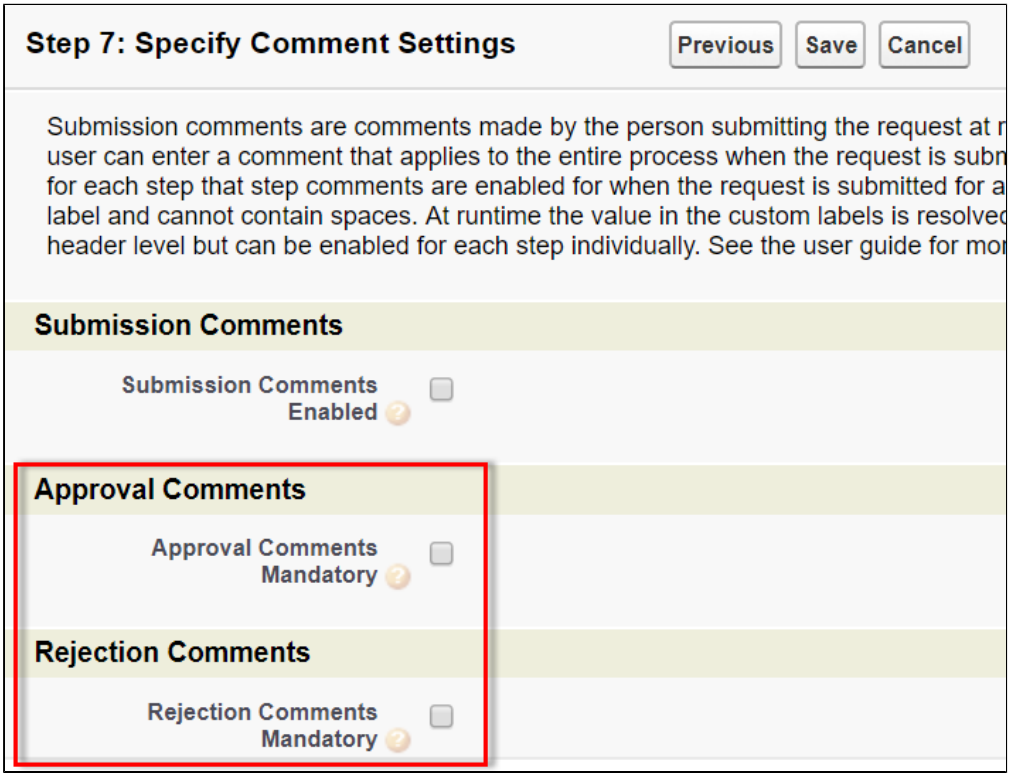
Making Comments Mandatory or Optional

You can make Comments mandatory at process and/or at Standard Step levels individually. One Comment (out of possible 3 comments enterable) is enforced at the time of Submission Action. One Comment (out of possible 3 comments enterable) is enforced at run time for Approval or Rejection. If any Standard step is skipped (governed by Rule or entry criteria) or auto-completed, then the Comments are not enforced.

To make comments mandatory or optional

1. Go to the **Approval Processes** tab.
2. Select an existing process or create a new one and proceed to the Step 7: Specify Comment Settings.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



3. For **Approval Comments**, select **Approval Comments Mandatory.**
4. For **Rejection Comments**, select **Rejection Comments Mandatory.**
5. Click **Save.**

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Configuring CPQ Approval Workflow

This section provides the workflow and the sequence of actions you have to define to enable CPQ Approvals.

To do...	How to define...
Install required packages	Install the latest approvals and dependent packages. Install the Quote or Proposal approvals package to sync the Approval Status and Approval Stage on the Quote header. However, if you are using CPQ approvals, you should not have any approval process defined on Quote/Proposal object.
Approval Status Fields	Define *Approval Required* and *Pending Approval* pick list values.
Custom Settings	Create a record in Approval Custom Config for the primary object **ProductConfiguration__c** . Configure Cart Approval Callback class - **Apttus_CQApprov.CartApprovalCallback** in Config Custom Class for CPQ Approvals. If you want to use Header and line item approvals, set the approval context type to Multiple. Specify the label name for Line Item in the Child Object Context Type 2 field. For header only approvals, set the context type to Single.
Approvals System Properties	Create a record in Approval System Properties and enter the requisite details
Config System Properties	Navigate to Config System Properties, and select the **Skip Review** check box.
	Navigate to **Create > Objects > Quote > Configure Products(Field) >** copy the formula field and create a new formula field. Add the **useAdvancedApproval=true** parameter to the copied formula . For example, IF (LEN(Apttus_QPConfig__PriceListId__c) > 0 , HYPERLINK("/apex

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

To do...	How to define...
Add Intelligent Approval Field for a Quote	/Apttus_QPConfig__ProposalConfiguration?id=" &Id&"& **useAdvancedApproval=true**&useDealOptimizer=true", IMAGE("/resource /Apttus_QPConfig__Button_Configure", "Configure Products"),"_self"), NULL)
Approval Required Check	Create a search filter criteria for Approval Required Check for the header and line item objects (Apttus_Proposal__Proposal__c, Apttus_Config2__LineItem__c, Apttus_Config2__ProductConfiguration__c). These search filters are used for setting the approval status to Approval Required on the cart and cart line item object respectively. Approval Required Check trigger is default for CPQ Approvals.
Formula Fields (Approvals)	To use reference parameters from related objects, create Formula Fields (Approvals).
Approvals and My Approval Pages	Drag and drop the Approvals and My Approvals button to the page layout to execute approval actions from the Quote header page rather than from the shopping cart.
Email Notification Templates	Define Email Notification templates using sample templates from the *Apttus Approvals Management* package.
Setting up Approval Rules	Create Approval Rules for each Sub Process and Child Process if you have multiple approvers for a process. Configure Approval Rule criteria. Select **Approval Rule Type** as *Condition* to use Auto Re-approval conditions. For each step in sub-process or child process, create approval rule entry, step label, Approval Condition, Auto Re-approval Condition, and Assignee, and step dependency.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

To do...	How to define...
Approval Process Configuration	Create Approval Process. Configure process properties. Configure Initial and Final Submission Actions. To use Auto Re-approvals, set the cart status to **Ready for Finalization** in the final submission actions rather than Finalized to ensure that a new cart is not created every time.
Approval Process Step Configuration	Configure approval process step, step dependencies, display fields, comments labels. For each Standard Step also define Approval Condition, Auto Re-approval Condition, and Assignee. For each Sub Process or Child Process Steps and map them to corresponding approval rules. For Standard Steps that have approval conditions based on child objects (e.g. line items) define Search Filter (Approvals) of type Child Filter and use them in the step definition.

Configuring a Custom Approval Action for Non-Salesforce or Apttus profiles	If you create a custom object to replace the default Approval Action, you must be sure to code the object correctly to handle$User.id
Setting up the Backup Administrator	The backup admin user is responsible for handling routing issues that may occur during the Intelligent approval process, while admin profiles enable you to associate users — via their roles — with admin level access to Intelligent Workflow and Approvals.
Setting up Backup or Delegate Approvers	Backup approvers are required to 'catch' approval requests whose assignees cannot be identified and ensure approval processes progress as expected.
Setting up Email Templates and Alerts	While Apttus provides default email templates for approval requests, if you want the emails to have attachments or have your own specific content, you must customize the templates.
Email Approval System Properties Settings	To enable approval requests to be decided via email, an email service and Approval System Properties settings for emails must be configured.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Setting up Custom Expressions	To help in creating advanced expressions for routing your approvals, you need to set up custom expressions.

Mandatory Configuration

This section outlines the mandatory settings to setup Approvals for your objects.

Approval System Properties

Approval System Properties

This section provides a brief description of all the Approval System Properties. Navigate to **Custom Settings > (Manage) Approval System Properties > (Edit) System Properties.**

Table 1.

Setting	Description
Name	System Properties. The default name for the system property settings.
Backup Admin Profile	Specify the profile of backup administrators who can control the settings and approval profile.
Backup Admin User	Specify the full name or email address of the user who will serve as a backup administrator. ⚠ This is mandatory in the event you deactivate a user from the org. If there is no BackUp Admin User available, the system displays an error. This is also true where the email address being used is active but not the same address for a user in this org.
Enable Email Approval Response	Enables the approvers to approve or reject an approval request through e-mail. The approver can write APPROVE or REJECT in the first line of the email. The approval comments can be added from the second line onwards.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Setting	Description
UI Assignee Search Page Size	Specify the number of rows the search result shows when you search for user roles, rules, queues, or users.
UI Custom Assignee Object Types	Specify the API names of the objects you want to use when defining custom assignee expressions.
Enable Approval Request Auto Escalation	Selecting this checkbox enables the system to escalate approval requests to users or queues if an approval action is pending for a specific period of time. The users to whom the request is escalated to and the period after which a request is escalated is specified in the approval process.
Email Sender Display Name	Specify the origin of the email. If not specified, the value is the requester of the agreements and submitter for all other cases.
Cart Approval Context Type	Specify the context for which an approval process is applicable. The applicable values are cart-triggers an approval process for the entire cart, header-triggers an approval process for the header items of the cart only, and lineItem-triggers an approval process for the line items of the cart.
Admin User	Specify the name of the Admin User who is the default owner of all the activities created by the user.
Cart Approval Preview Page	Specify the name of the custom preview cart page that you want to use if you want to define and use a custom page to preview approvals.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Setting	Description
Enable Approval Check On Quote Update	Is run by default for CPQ Approvals. Approval required check is run, whenever the Quote is updated. This flag enables the system to evaluate the approval process and if the entry criteria is satisfied, changes the status to Approval Required.
Enable Ad hoc Approver	Enables you to add the Ad hoc approver feature for an org.
Enable Resubmit	Enables you to define the behavior of the Submit for Approvals button in the Approvals related list of your object. This system property replaces the CancelPendingProcess parameter on the Preview and Submit formula button on your object. When selected, and user clicks Submit for Approvals, current approval requests are cancelled and new approval requests are resubmitted. When deselected, and the and user clicks Submit for Approvals, the user cannot cancel and resubmit and ongoing approval request.
Enable Upload Attachment From Desktop	Enables you to browse and attach external documents from your local machine for **Submit with Attachments** action on Preview approvals page. This eliminates your effort to attach the required documents in Notes & Attachments related list of your object record before submitting the record for approval.

To set the Approval & Config System Properties

1. Go to **Setup > Build > Develop > Custom Settings** and click **Manage** for **Approvals System Properties**.
2. Click **Edit** beside **System Properties**.
3. For Cart Approval Context Type, enter one of the following:
    - **cart** - There will be one approval process for all the items in the cart.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- **header**- The approval process is triggered only for the header items of the cart.

4. Click **Save**.

Link

Configuring Global Settings

Configuring Global Settings

Approvals custom configuration settings provide the global default values for using Approvals with different objects.

The backup admin user, summary page, and email templates are designated here so that they do not need to be selected each time you create an approval process. You can choose to override them for specific processes, but this ensures approval requests will work correctly regardless.

To configure global settings

You must have created the required custom pages and templates.

1. Go to **Build > Develop > Custom Settings** and click **Approvals Custom Config**.
2. From the **Custom Setting Definition Detail** section, click **Manage** to display the current objects associated with Intelligent Approvals.
3. If it does not already exist, click **New** and enter API name of the Object in the **Name** field, which is the API name for the object to be used with approvals.
4. In the **Approval Status Field**, enter Approval_Status__c or whatever the API name is for the picklist created for the custom object.
5. The custom summary page and templates you created should be entered in the **Approval Summary Page** and various **Email Template** fields. If you do not enter values, the default system values will be used.
6. Specify the Approval Context Type as Single or Multiple. If you want an approval process to be triggered for Header and the Line items, enter Multiple. If you want to trigger an approval process for the header items only enter type as Single.
7. Specify the Child Object Types if child object types are associated in the approval process.
8. Click **Save**.

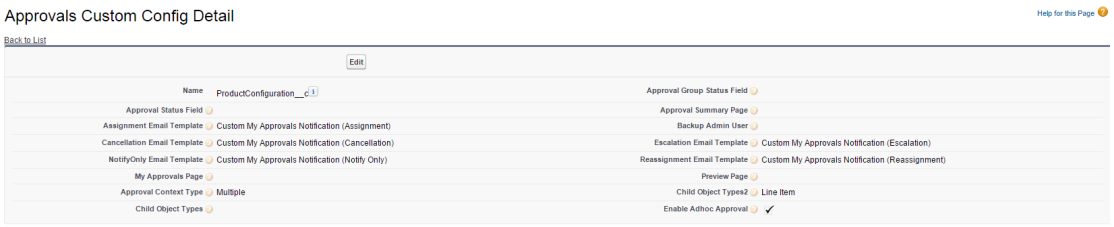
The page and templates will be used by default for the next approval process created for the context object.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

When creating an approval process you can override these templates if necessary.

- You must have created the required custom pages and templates.

1. Go to **Build > Develop > Custom Settings** and click **Approvals Custom Config**.
2. From the **Custom Setting Definition Detail** section, click **Manage** to display the current objects associated with Intelligent Approvals.
3. If it does not already exist, click **New** and enter ProductConfiguration__cin the **Name** field, which is the API name for the object to be used with approvals.
4. In the **Approval Status Field**, enter Approval_Status__cor whatever the API name is for the picklist created for the custom object.
5. The custom summary page and templates you created should be entered in the **Approval Summary Page** and various **Email Template** fields. If you do not enter values, the default system values will be used.



6. Specify the Approval Context Type as **Single** or **Multiple**. If you want to use Header and line item approvals, set the approval context type to **Multiple**. For header only approvals, set the context type to **Single**.
7. Specify the Child Object Type. The Child object type is associated with the approval process for a parent object.
8. You can enable ad hoc approvals for a custom object by selecting Enable Ad Hoc Approvals.
9. Click **Save**.

The page and templates will be used by default for the next approval process created for the custom context object.

When creating an approval process you can override these templates if necessary.

Setting up the Admin Profiles

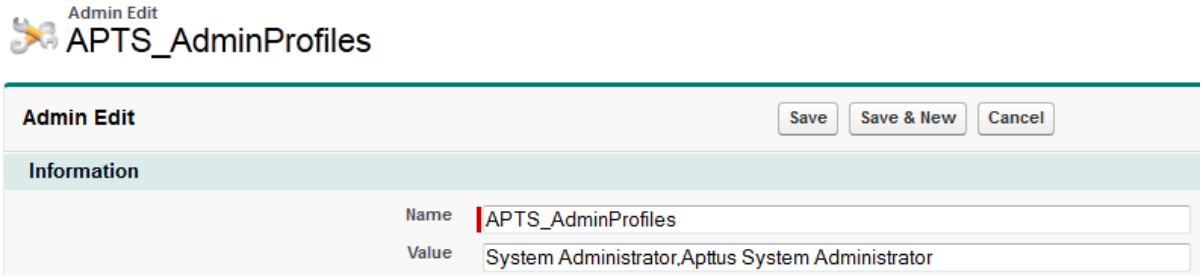
Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Setting up the Admin Profiles

Admin profiles enable you to associate users — via their roles — with admin level access to Intelligent Workflow and Approvals.

To set up Admin Profiles in Approvals,

1. Select the **Admin** tab.
   - or -
   Select ✚ (All tabs) and select **Admin**.
2. Click **Go** to display all of the admin settings.
3. If **APTS_AdminProfiles** is listed, click **Edit**, enter the required profile names, separated by a comma, in the **Value** field and click **Save**.
   - or -
   If the setting is not displayed, click **New Admin**.
4. Enter the name **APTS_AdminProfiles**, enter the required profile names, separated by a comma, in the **Value** field, and click **Save**.



Users associated with the profiles can now complete administrative tasks for Intelligent Workflow and Approvals.

Configuring Email Templates

Configuring Email Templates

Typically the easiest way to create your own custom template is to clone one of the email templates provided in the unmanaged Apttus samples package and then edit it. After that has been done you can then override the default email templates for all of your approval processes using APTS_ApprovalConfig or on an ad-hoc basis for specific approval requests.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

The Apttus Approvals Management (Customization Samples) package provides email template examples for currently supported objects, as well as for Salesforce Cases, which can subsequently be used as the basis for creating email templates for custom objects you've configured yourself. Also note that Opportunity Product is also used to provide templates for further customization.

You have to specify the email templates in the Approval Process and in the Approvals Custom Config custom setting.

As well as providing samples for templates and the summary page, the pages that are used to provide approval functionality on the custom object record page are also included.

Note

As this package is unmanaged, it cannot be upgraded. If you want to move to the newest version, you must uninstall the existing package and then install the new package. It is recommended you uninstall the samples package after you have created your custom templates and pages.
Queue email address cannot be used for notifications. If Queue has "Send Email to Members" box un-checked - email of current user will be used for notifications (not queue email address). This is due to Salesforce limitations which we cannot bypass.

Installing Customization Samples package

The Apttus Approvals Management (Customization Samples) package contains email templates, components, Visualforce pages and Apex controllers which can help you build you templates and approval summary pages for custom context objects.

Note

The samples contained in the package should not be used 'as is' and are only to be used in the development of your own bespoke templates and pages, and should not be installed in production.

Configuring Email Templates

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

For a process with header and child process steps, use the Apttus Approval Email Templates. Notification templates are used to create the notifications sent to approvers to alert them to pending approvals and to allow them to approve or decline a request without logging in to Salesforce.

The following approval email notification templates are available as a part of the standard Approvals Management package. These are generic email notification templates that can be used for approvals on any standard or custom objects without any change. However, these notification templates can be customized as needed. Clone these templates if you want to customize your own template.

To view the Quote Header name in the My Approvals page, you must change your existing process definitions or custom config settings to use the new templates provided with this release. If you have already customized an email template to use with CPQ Cart Approvals, you need to include the MyCartApprovalsEmail class inside your custom Visualforce template to correctly launch the My Approvals page that shows the quote id and name fields.

Sample	Component Type	Description
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Assignment)	Visualforce Email Template	This template is used to notify users they must decide on an approval request.
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Reassignment)	Visualforce Email Template	This template is used to notify users that an approval request task initially assigned to them has been reassigned to someone else.
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Escalation)	Visualforce Email Template	This template is used for auto-escalation. Configuration is required to activate this feature.
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Cancellation)	Visualforce Email Template	This template is used to notify users that an approval request has been cancelled.
		This template is used to notify users only.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Sample	Component Type	Description
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Notify Only)	Visualforce Email Template	

- The included page could not be found.
- The included page could not be found.
- Default email templates provide the ability to use Intelligent Approvals out of the box and begin testing approval process workflows quickly; however, if you want to have bespoke emails for your organization or you want to attach documents to approval request emails, you must use custom email templates. Email alerts are triggered by workflow rules and can make use of the same email templates.

  Typically the easiest way to create your own custom template is to clone one of the email templates provided in the unmanaged Apttus samples package and then edit it. You cannot clone the standard email templates included in the *Apttus Approvals Management* package.

  The *Apttus Approvals Management* package provides email template examples for Agreements, Opportunities, and Term Exception Approvals. *Apttus Quote/Proposal Approvals Management* provides examples for Quotes/Proposals and Quote Line Items.

  After that has been done, you can then override the default email templates for all of your approval processes using Approvals Custom Config Custom Settings, APTS_ApprovalConfig Admin Settings, or on an ad-hoc basis for specific approval processes.

  ### Note

  Which email template is used works as follows:

  - Email templates selected in an Approval Process override templates in Approvals Custom Config.
  - Templates in **Approvals Custom Config** override templates in APTS_AppprovalConfig.
  - Templates in **APTS_ApprovalConfig** override the system defaults.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

To customize email templates

You must have installed the *Apttus Approvals Management* and *Apttus Quote/Proposal Approvals Management* packages.

Go to **Administration Setup > Communication Templates > Email Templates.**

1. From the **Folder** list, select **Apttus Email Templates** and then select the email template you want to use as the basis for your customized template.
2. Click **Clone**, enter the required template details and click **Save**. **Template Unique Name** is the value that must be used when you override the default email templates.
3. Click **Edit Template** to display the Visualforce editor and make the required changes to the template. You should be familiar with Visualforce pages and apex code to complete this step.

   ### Attention

   When you edit the text and code in a template you should be sure that the *Approval Request ID* and *Approval User ID* fields are still included in the template. These are required for the approvals engine to route emails correctly and retain the ability to decide on an email by responding to it. When you customize an email template ensure that you retain the Context.recipientSO.Id email markup instead of using Context.requestSO. Apttus_Approval__Assigned_To_Id__c. Not retaining the original markup causes an email notification issue where some of the recipients do not receive an email notification.

   Ensure that you set the Target Object Id in the template. For more information, refer to TargetObjectId.
4. Click **Save** to return to the main template view page.
5. In the **Standard Attachments** section, select **Attach File** and select a file you want attached to each request.
6. Click **Send Test** and **Verify Merge Fields** to display the Preview Template window.
7. Select a user and an approval request for an object that matches the object the template will be used for, select any email address and click **OK**. The email can be used to verify that all the fields have the expected values and that any attachments are included.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

8. To enable approval email response ensure that you follow the steps at Enable Email Approval Response.

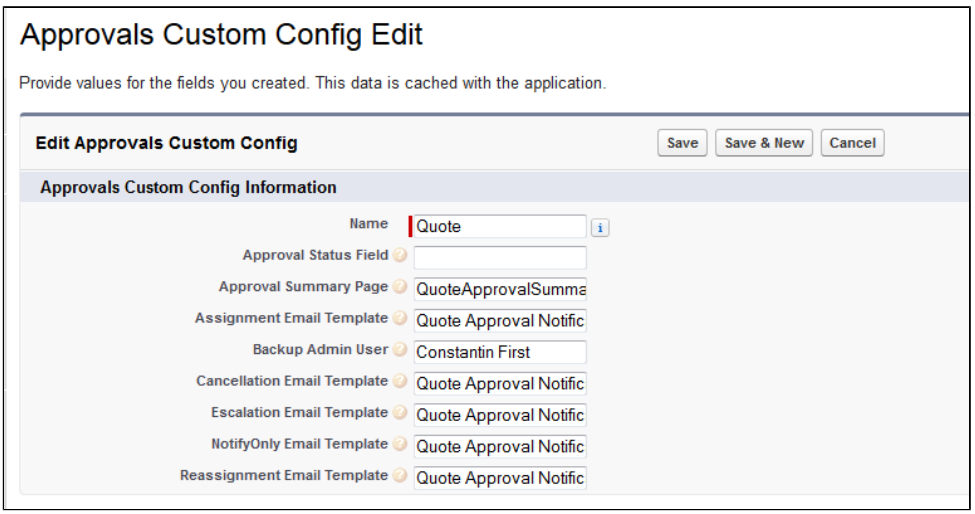
Templates that are **Available For Use** can now be used for any subsequent approval requests.

You can make the template a default template or to override the default templates on an ad-hoc basis, you can now use this template when you create an approval process.

To override default email templates with Custom settings

You must have customized templates you can reference.

1. Go to **Build > Develop > Custom Settings** and click **Approvals Custom Config.**
2. From the **Custom Setting Definition Detail** section, click **Manage** to display the current objects associated with Intelligent Approvals.
3. Click **Edit** beside the object that you want to edit email templates for.
4. Enter the **Name** of the customized email template in the appropriate field.



5. Click **Save** when complete.

The templates referenced in the template fields will be used as the global Intelligent Approval default email templates for that object. When the Process Definition Notification Templates value fields are left blank, while creating an approval process, these templates will be used.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

To override default email templates with Admin settings

You must have customized templates you can reference.

1. Select the **Admin** tab - or - select ✚ and select **Admin**.
2. Click **Go** to display all of the admin settings.
3. If **APTS_ApprovalConfig** is listed, select it, then click **Edit** and proceed to Step 5.
4. If it is not listed click **New Admin**, for **Name** enter APTS_ApprovalConfig and for **Value** enter XML.
5. In the **Code** field enter the references to the custom email templates for each of the objects you are using with Intelligent Approvals.
   See, Appendix B - Email Examples, if you need help with formatting of the XML code.

The templates referenced in the Code field will be used as the global Intelligent Approval default email templates. When the Process Definition **Notification Templates** value fields are left blank, these templates will be used.

To edit email alerts

Go to **Build > Create > Workflow & Approvals > Email Alerts**

1. Click **Edit** beside **Approval Request Comments Entered**. Since it is a part of the managed package, you cannot change the description or unique name.
2. Click and select the required email template.
3. Select the **Recipient Type** and the related recipients and click **Save**.

Subsequent email alerts that are sent when approval request comments are entered, will use the new email template.

Any other email alerts can be edited in the same manner.

Settings for Email Reply

Create email service: Go to **Setup > Develop > Email Services.**

Accept Email From should contain the domains which we plan to use: For Example: Accept Email From: apttus.com,yahoo.com, gmail.com

In the Email Addresses section, click **New Email Address** and **Accept Email** From: apttus.com,yahoo.com, gmail.com and click **Save**. New email address should be created in the format “approval_email_service@t8l0k46ikux0mfg3lk083tqdn2qetmjc7cosf2m5v92hp70s1.11-fk7eai.cs18.apex.sandbox.salesforce.com”.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Custom Label setting:

Edit the **Custom Label ApttusEMailServiceAddress**. Ensure that the value of the custom label matches that of the Email Address specified in Email Services.

In the **Local Translations / Overrides** section, click **New Local Translations / Overrides**.

Copy the string (Email Address) from Email Service- Email Addresses section and paste it in the Translation Text box.

Click **Save**.

Approvals System Properties:

Email Approval Service Address should contain same string from Email Service- Email Addresses page.

Email Templates:

Should contain the reply to as below:replyTo="{!$Label.
Apttus_Approval__ApttusEMailServiceAddress}"

> Whenever a reassigned or a delegate approver approves or rejects a request, the next approver does not recieve an email Notification. If the previous approver has a Yahoo email address, the email is not routed to the next approver. Follow the DMARC guidelines and the steps listed at Google Support and Yahoo Support to ensure email notifications are generated and sent.

- There are five new email templates used by Consolidated Approvals and to ensure that emails are sent to the correct address, you must configure a custom label used by the emails. Each email template references the same label, so you only need to configure the one custom label as it affects each template.

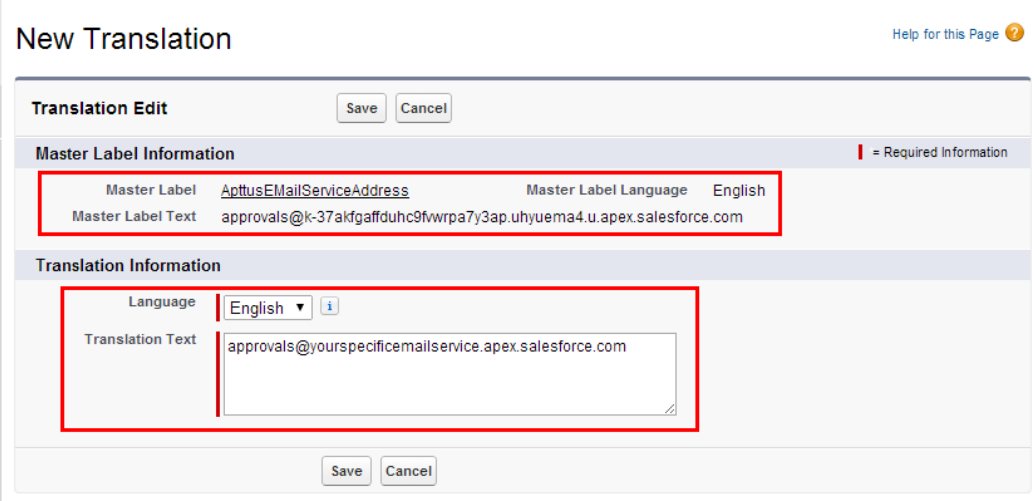
```
<messaging:emailTemplate subject="{!$Label.ApprovalRequestsFor} '{!relatedTo.Object_Name__c}'
                         recipientType="User"
                         relatedToType="Approval_Request__c"
                         replyTo="{!$Label.ApttusEMailServiceAddress}"
                         language="{!recipient.LanguageLocaleKey}">
```

You must have already configured your email service.

1. From **Setup**, go to **Develop > Email Services** and click the **Email Service Name** *ApprovalReplyService.*
2. Copy the system generated **Email Address**, which is required in the upcoming steps.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

3. From **Setup**, go to **Create > Custom Labels** and select **ApttusEmailServiceAddress**.
4. Click **New Local Translations / Overrides** to display the Translation Edit page.
5. The **Master Label Information** section displays the text that is used by default, which points to a dummy email service that you cannot use with your org.



6. In the **Translation Information section**, select **English** from the **Language** list and in the **Translation Text** field, paste in the email address copied in Step 2.
7. Click **Save**.

The label is now updated with the email address for your org.

When consolidated approval emails are next sent, they will be routed to the correct users.

Config Custom Classes

Config Custom Classes

1. Go to **Setup > Build > Develop > Custom Settings** and click **Manage** for **Config Custom Classes**.
2. Click **Edit** beside **Custom Classes**.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

3. For **Cart Approval Callback Class**, ensure the value isApttus_CQApprov. CartApprovalCallback. This is required to have the *Approval Required* icon and *Submit for Approval* button in the Shopping Cart.
4. For **Deal Optimizer Callback Class**, ensure the value isApttus_CPQOpti. DealMaximizerCallback. This is required to have the *Approval Required* icon and *Submit for Approval* button available when using Deal Maximizer.

Configuring Status Picklists

Configuring Status Picklists

For a shopping cart/product configuration to go through the approval process correctly, you need to have approval values available from the *Status* field.

To add values to the Status picklist

1. From **Setup**, go to **Create > Objects** and click **Product Configuration**.
2. From **Custom Fields & Relationships**, click **Status**.
3. From **Picklist Values**, click **New** and add *Approval Required* and *Pending Approval*.
4. Click **Save**.

These values will now be available from the Status picklist for a Product Configuration object record, which also means the status can appear in the Status field at the top left of the Shopping Cart.

Context Object Picklists

Context Object Picklists

1. Go to **Setup > Build > Create > Objects** and click **Approval Process**.
2. From **Custom Fields & Relationships** click **Object Label**.
3. From **Picklist Values**, click **New**, addProduct Configurationand click Save.
4. From **Custom Fields & Relationships** click **Object Type**.
5. From **Picklist Values**, click **New**, addApttus_Config2_ProductConfiguration__cand click **Save.**

Intelligent Approval Flag

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Intelligent Approval Flag

If you define an approval process for a specific object and want the process to be initiated on click of a button, navigate to **Create > Objects > <<Object Name>>Quote > <<Field Name>>Configure Products(Field) > Edit** the formula field and add **useAdvancedApproval=true**. For example, IF (LEN(Apttus_QPConfig__PriceListId__c) > 0 , HYPERLINK("/apex/Apttus_QPConfig__ProposalConfiguration?id=" &Id&"& **useAdvancedApproval=true**&useDealOptimizer=true", IMAGE("/resource /Apttus_QPConfig__Button_Configure", "Configure Products"),"_self"), NULL).

Search Filter (Approvals)

Creating Search Filters (Approvals)

The two Filter Type options (Child Filter and Entry Criteria) serve two different purposes.

Entry Criteria	This is required for approvals to be intiated from the Shopping Cart. To improve performance, the system will check if there are any Entry Criteria search filters that match the attributes in the Shopping Cart and set the approval status to Approval Required. You can have the entry criteria at the line item to set the approval status to Approval Required or Approval Triggered.
Child Filter	This is required to have a header level approval step entry criteria that makes use of the line item fields for the products in the Shopping Cart. After you create a child filter, you then need to create step entry criteria using child filters that mirrors the expression used in the child filter.

Configuring Search Filters

Search filters of type Entry Criteria are used to check whether the contents of a shopping cart require approval before it can be finalized.

If you want approvals to be triggered at the *Shopping Cart Header* level, then you need to configure search filters based on the *Product Configuration* context object. If you want approvals to be triggered at a specific Cart Line Item level, then you would configure search filters for the Line Item context object. Additionally if you want consolidated approvals for the whole Cart/Product Configuration, then you would create both.

Configuring Search Filters - this adds Product Configuration to the Search Filter object picklist so you can create search filters that use these objects for their entry criteria

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Creating Search Filters - the Search Filters are used to determine if the products in the Shopping Cart require approval.

To configure Search Filters (Approvals)

1. Go to **Setup > Build > Create > Objects** and select **Search Filter (Approvals)**.
2. From the **Custom Fields & Relationships** section, select **Business Object**.
3. From **Picklist Values**, click **New** and enter the API names for the cart and the line items: Apttus_Config2__ProductConfiguration__cfor Header level approvals andApttus_Config2__LineItem__cfor Line Item level approvals.
4. Click **Save**. The values are added to the **Picklist Values** list.
5. Click **Back to Search Filter (Approvals)** and from the **Custom Fields & Relationships** section, select **Filter Type**.
6. From **Picklist Values**, click **New** and enterChild FilterandEntry Criteria.
7. Click **Save**.

The values are added to the picklists, which are required to create search filters.

You can create *Search Filters (Approvals)* for controlling which carts are checked to see if they need approval.

To create Search Filters (Approvals)

1. Click ✚ and select **Search Filter (Approvals)**.
2. Click **New Search Filter (Approvals)** and select either:
   - **Product Configuration** - select this if you want the filter to be at the Product Configuration/Shopping Cart (Header) context object level.
   - **Line Item** - select this if you want the filter to be at the Line Item context object level, which are the individual line items within the cart.
3. Click **Next** to display the *Configure Filter* page.
4. From **Filter Type**, select one of the following:

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- **Child Filter** - This enables you to have step entry criteria within your approval process that references the child record fields of the main context object. Typically this enables you to use Line Item fields with your *Product Configuration* approval process. The *Line Item Child Filters* you create here, enable you to have them available for approval step entry criteria.
- **Entry Criteria** - is used to indicate that the search filter will be used for the *Approval Required* check, which checks to see whether the quote or quote line item values require the shopping cart to undergo approval. You are effectively having an additional level of entry criteria for approvals here, before the system searches for matching approval processes. You must have at least one of these for approvals to be available from the shopping cart.

5. Enter a required **Filter Name** and **Sequence**. The sequence is used to determine the order in which the search filters will check if approvals are required.
6. Enter the filter criteria, which is used to determine if the quote requires approval.
7. Click **Save**.

The Search Filter is now active and if it is a Filter Type of *Entry Criteria* it will be used by the system to determine if a Shopping Cart requires approval.

You must create an approval process that can be used with the Shopping Cart.

Approval Process for CPQ

Apttus Intelligent Workflow and Approvals offers the ability to setup approval processes that are currently not supported by Salesforce.com. It allows the customer to configure their various approval processes with greater flexibility and visibility, helping in overall compliance.

Approval steps assign approval requests to various users and define the chain of approval for a particular approval process. Each approval step specifies the attributes a record must have to advance to that approval step, the user who can approve requests for those records, and whether to allow backup assignees of the approver to approve the requests. Regardless of their complexity, when anyone in the process rejects an item, the entire process is considered rejected.

- Creating the Process Definition
  The process definition serves as the framework for your intelligent approval process, providing options for setting up key objects like Entry Criteria, Email Templates, and Approval Summary Pages.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- Checking the Approval Status of the Document
  Approval required check is performed to determine whether a document requires approval and if approval process needs to be executed.
- Creating Initial Submission Actions
  Initial actions update object record fields when the approval process begins for that record.
- Creating Final Actions
  Final actions enable you to update record fields in the object according to whether the intelligent approval process was completed successfully or it was rejected.
- Creating Approval Steps
  Approval steps provide the logic for routing object record approvals to the correct people based on specific criteria.
- Setting up Auto-escalation
  Enabling auto-escalation in an approval process occurs at the approval step level. While the email templates apply to the entire approval process, you can have different auto-escalation settings for each approval step or you can use the global escalation options.
- Creating Expressions
  Intelligent approval process expressions provide a method for qualifying whether an object record should be routed through specific approval steps.

Performance and Scalability

Area	Detail
Multiple Approval Processes	**When to use multiple approval process?** When you have Region Based Approval variations, Business Unit Based Approvals variations, Channel Based Approvals variations. **How do I configure multiple approval processes?** Define mutually exclusive process entry criteria so that only one process is selected for a given primary object instance. **Why do I configure multiple approval processes?** Having multiple approval processes reduces number of approval steps / criteria system needs to execute

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Area	Detail
Approval Rule Entry Criteria	Specify minimum approval conditions in Approval Rule entry criteria for Sub Process or Child Process steps to avoid evaluation of all approval rule entries every time.
Approval Required Check	Provides users visibility to whether approval is needed for header or line items without executing the entire approval process. Provides a mechanism to avoid approval process evaluation for a large number of scenarios.

Types of Approval Steps and when do I use them?

- **Standard** - This is the existing method for creating header level approval steps.
- **Sub Process** - This is used when you want to select approval rules that are associated with the header level context object of the approval process. The assignee types are derived from the Approval Rule. Create a Sub-Process when you have multiple approvers for a set of criteria instead of defining multiple Standard steps for each criteria.
- **Child Process** - This is used when you want to select approval rules that are associated to child objects of the approval process header level context object such as you want to define an approval process for Proposal and Proposal Line Items. The assignee types are derived from the Approval Rule. Use a child process instead of a Subprocess and Standard step type when you want to populate the Approval request with the child object line items to be approved, such as proposal line items.

It is recommended that you use conditional criteria instead of Approval Dimensions and Approval Matrix while creating your approval rules and processes.

Create Process Definition

The process definition serves as the framework for your intelligent approval process, providing options for setting up key objects like entry criteria, email templates, and approval summary pages.

Entry criteria is used to define the conditions that must be met before an object record is routed through the intelligent approval process. For instance, you may want to specify that a certain approval process for agreements is only used when there is a discount given of greater than 10%.

While everyone may have a Salesforce dashboard set up to display outstanding tasks, having email templates associated with the approval process ensures that people are notified outside of Salesforce when they are required to approve an item, helping ensure the approval process does not stall.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Approval summary pages contain the information and action items that enable a record to be reviewed and approval actions to be taken. The default summary pages provide sufficient information for Agreements, Opportunities, Quote/Proposals, Proposal Line Items, and Term exceptions; however, the pages can be configured to provide whatever details are needed.

Consolidating Approvals and Notifying Users

Consolidation applies to scenarios when a user is responsible for multiple approval items for a single document. In this scenario, you can use the Consolidated Notification and Approvals options to avoid sending separate approval notifications to the approver for each approval item.

Consolidated Notification is the capability to send single approval email notifications to the approver for all the header or line item approvals, when all the approval items become available for approval. This enables approvers to review all their approval items for a document as a whole, rather than revisiting the same document multiple times. When all the items become available, the system changes the status of all the approval items to *Assigned* and then you are allowed to independently **Approve** or **Reject** the assigned approval items.

You can navigate to the **My Approvals** page (provides the list of all the approval items for the user for that document) in the application to take approval actions. From **My Approvals** page**,** you can selectively approve or reject assigned approval items.

The **Consolidate Notifications** check box when selected, enables the assignee to receive single consolidated assignment notification for all approval items. An approver then has flexibility to approve or reject all or subset of the assigned requests.

Also from the May Patch release onwards, an assignee will also receive consolidated e-mail notifications for cancellation and notify only requests.

If an approver is defined for notify only steps, a consolidated notification email is sent once all the notify only steps are available.

If an approval is cancelled, and the user is an assignee for multiple steps, the user receives a consolidated cancellation notification.

Email Approvals: In case of email approvals for consolidated notifications, when you approve or reject an approval using email, all the items that require approval are Approved or Rejected simultaneously. Email approval does not enable you to approve or reject individual approval items. You can then either respond to the email approval notification to approve or reject all the items assigned to the user or can navigate to the "My Approvals" page (provide the list of all the approval items for the user for that document) in the application to take approval actions. Within the application, from "My Approvals" page, user can selectively approve or reject assigned approval

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

items. System will consolidate the approval requests as per the behavior specified above and send single notification for all the approval items that require approval from a given user when all the items become available, rather than sending separate notification for each approval item.

The **Consolidate Approvals** check box when selected, enables the assignee to receive single consolidated assignment notification for all approval items. An approver can then either Approve All or Reject All the requests that require their approval.

> From the May Patch release onwards, you can use the **Consolidate Approvals** feature only with the **Consolidate Notifications** and not independently. When you select **Consolidate Approvals,** accordingly, **Consolidated Notifications** is selected by default. However, **Consolidated Notifications** can be used by itself without **Consolidated Approvals**.

To create a process definition

1. Click the **Approval Processes** tab or click ⊞ and click **Approval Processes**.
2. Use **Manage Approval Processes** to select the required object and click **Create New Approval Process**. Currently *Opportunities*, *Agreements*, *Quote/Proposal*, *Proposal Line Item*, and *Agreement Term Exceptions* can be associated with Intelligent Approvals.
3. Enter a process name and description and click **Next**.
4. Select the Entry Criteria, which indicates in which circumstances the approval process should be initiated, and click **Next**. Any field can be used. You must ensure you select an appropriate operator for the field value, as there is no validation of operator-value combinations. If no criteria is selected, all records will require approval once the approval process has been activated. You can used Advanced Options if want the criteria to be linked by more than just *AND*.
5. Based on your requirements, do the following,:
    a. Select **Consolidate Approvals** if you want to bundle multiple approvals into a single approval action.
    b. Select **Consolidate Notifications** if you want to bundle multiple notifications into a single notification both via email and in Salesforce.
    c. Select **Continue Pending Approvals on a Reject** if you want to continue the approval process even when the approver rejects an approval request.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Consolidated Approvals only works when Consolidated Notifications is selected. Consolidated Notifications can work independently. See Consolidated Approvals, for more details.

6. Click **Next**.
7. Select the Notification Templates you want to use for the process or leave the fields empty to use the default templates and click **Next**:

Option	Description
Assignment Email Template	This is used for emails that are sent to someone who has been assigned a task, based on the approval workflow process. The default is *Apttus Agreement Approval Notification (Assignment)*.
Reassignment Email Template	When an existing task is reassigned to someone else, this is used for the email sent to that person.. The default is *Apttus Agreement Approval Notification (Reassignment)*.
Escalation Email Template	This is used when auto-escalation is enabled and an outstanding approval task has reached the point where it is auto-escalated. The default is *Apttus Agreement Approval Notification (Escalation)*.
Cancellation Email Template	This is used to notify people when an approval process has been cancelled. The default is *Apttus Agreement Approval Notification (Cancellation)*.
NotifyOnly Email Template	This is used when the Notify Only option is selected in one of the steps. The recipient of this email does not have any action items. The default is *Apttus Agreement Approval Notification (Notify Only)*.
Reminder Email Template	This is used when reminders are set up. The default is *Apttus Agreement Approval Notification (Reminder)*.

Note

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

> If approvals will be submitted with attachments, the email templates you use need to be custom templates.

8. To override the default, enter the **Approval Summary Page** name where the approver indicates whether they approve or reject the item and click **Next**. You can leave this field blank and the default pages will be used automatically. There is no auto-lookup available for this, you must enter the exact name of the page to change the setting. The default pages are *OpportunityApprovalSummary*, *AgreementApprovalSummary*, *QuoteApprovalSummary*, *QuoteLineItemApprovalSummary*, and *AgreementTermExApprovalSummary*.
9. Click to display a list of users who can act as the backup admin user for this specific process. If you do not select one, the global backup admin user will be used.
10. To add a customized comment that applies to the approval process or step when the request is submitted for approval , select **Submission Comments Enabled**.
11. To make Approval Comments and Rejection Comments mandatory, select **Approval Comments Mandatory** and **Rejection Comments Mandatory**.
12. Click **Save**.

The Intelligent approval process has been created and saved in Salesforce.

You can now proceed to creating approval steps, which are required to activate an approval process, by selecting **Yes, I'd like to create an approval step now**. You can select one of the **No...** options to go to work on other parts of the intelligent approvals configuration process.

Checking the Approval Status

Approval required check is performed to determine whether a document requires approval and if approval process needs to be executed.

CPQ Approvals: For CPQ Approvals, **Approval Required check** is a default system behavior and an approval process is not evaluated unless the Approval status is set to Approval Required by the approval required check. Preview, Submit for Approval / Request Approval actions are only enabled when approval status is set to Approval Required. For CPQ Approvals, entry criteria filters need to be defined on Product Configuration object at minimum. In addition, the entry criteria filters can also be defined on the Line Item object if approval is needed based on line item parameters.

Approval Required Check on Pricing: For CPQ Approvals, system auto executes Approval Required check on Reprice, if Apttus Intelligent Approvals is used.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Approval Required Check on Quote Update: For CPQ approvals, system can also execute Approval Required Check on Quote update if Quote Header parameters are used in Approval Required criteria. You can use Quote Header parameters in CPQ Approval Required check using **Formula Fields (Approvals)** in Entry Criteria Search Filters.

Approval Required check does not evaluate the approval process, but checks the entry criteria of the approval process. The purpose of the approval required check is to reduce the performance overhead of performing detailed process evaluation to determine whether approval is required.

Approval criteria or conditions are defined using Search Filters (Approvals) of type Entry Criteria.

Approval Required Check is primarily used with CPQ approvals, but can also be used with approval on other objects.

Use the following guidelines while defining entry criteria filters:

Entry Criteria Filters: Search Filters (Approvals) of type Entry Criteria are used in Approval Required Check.

Entry Criteria filters on the Primary object: These entry criteria filters are defined for the approval process context object. For example, if approval process is defined for Quote/Proposal then Entry Criteria filters need to be defined on Quote/Proposal object.

Entry Criteria filters on the Child Object: If the approval conditions are also based on the parameters from the child objects of the approval context object then entry criteria filters are also defined on the related child context object. For example, if an approval process is defined Quote /Proposal, but the approval conditions are also based on the proposal line item object then Entry Criteria filters needs to be defined on Quote/Proposal line items object also.

Entry Criteria using parameters related Parent Object: Entry criteria filters can also be defined on a given object using reference fields from the related parent object. For example if an approval process is defined on Quote/Proposal then Entry Criteria filters need to be defined on Quote /Proposal object. However, if approval conditions are also based on fields from Opportunity object (parent of Quote/Proposal) then you can define **Entry Criteria** fields using Formula Fields (Approvals). In the above example, you will define Formula Fields (Approvals) on Quote/Proposal object using fields from Opportunity object. Once these Formula Fields (Approvals) are defined, the fields appear in field selection list for defining Entry Criteria filters on the Quote/Proposal object.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Guidelines for Defining Entry Criteria Filters: You can define multiple Search Filters (Approvals) of type Entry Criteria on a given object. System will evaluate all these entry criteria filters.

Creating Initial Submission Actions

Initial actions update object record fields when the approval process begins for that record.

The only conditions considered before the initial actions occur is the entry criteria for the process definition, which starts the intelligent approval process. There is no additional logic involved. Therefore it is best to create initial submission actions for the fields that will always require updating when the approval process begins. This ensures that all fields are handled programatically and do not require someone to manually change them.

Note

As with all fields that can be updated as part of the intelligent approvals process, there is no validation that the values entered for the *Field Value* are correct while you are creating actions and approval steps. You must know what the field type is and should thoroughly test your process before using it in a live environment.

To create initial submission actions

There must be an approval process.

1. Click **Add New** in the **Initial Submissions Actions** section.
2. Select **Field Update (Constant)** from the **Field Action Type** list and select the field name. Enter the **Field Value**, ensuring it is an appropriate value type for the field. - or - Select **Field Update (Value)** and select the user lookup field for the object record you want to update with the Current User ID. The current user is the person who is logged into Salesforce and makes a change to the object record that initiates the intelligent approval process.
3. Click **Save** to complete the task - or - Click **Save & New** to add another action.

The item is added to the **Initial Submission Actions** section.

Creating Final Actions

Final actions enable you to update record fields in the object according to whether the intelligent approval process was completed successfully or it was rejected.

As final actions can only be used to update fields, the order in which they are created is unimportant.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Note

There is a single reject policy embedded in the system. If there is at least one rejection during the approval process, the entire process is rejected.

To create final actions

1. Click **Add New** in either the **Final Approval Actions** or **Final Rejection Actions** section of the approval process. To use Auto Re-approvals, set the cart status to **Ready for Finalization** in the final submission actions rather than Finalized to ensure that a new cart is not created every time.
2. Select the **Field Name** for the field in the object record you want to update.
3. Enter a valid **Field Value** for the field and include a description. If the field is a pick list, the **Specify New Field Value** list is displayed, to select from.
4. Click **Save** to add the action and return to the main approval process page. - or - Click **Save & New** to add the action and create another action of the same type.

The items are added to the appropriate final actions section. The actions will update those object record fields upon the last approval or rejection action for that approval process.

Creating Approval Steps

Approval steps provide the logic for routing object record approvals to the correct people based on specific criteria.

A minimum of one approval step is required to activate an intelligent approval process; however, a process can contain many steps. When you create steps it is important to understand the approval workflow you want to have. Along with the step criteria, step dependencies should be used when organizing your approval workflow. Any steps that are not dependent on another step will be executed in parallel.

Approval Step Enhancements

Approval steps have been enhanced to offer three different step types to the user, as well as new description fields, and the ability to select which context object fields should be displayed when an approval request or preview is sent.

	There are three step types you can choose from when creating an approval step:

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Approval Step Types	• **Standard** - This is the existing method for creating approval steps. • **Sub Process** - This is used when you want to select approval rules that are associated with the context object of the approval process, which also replace the assignee types that are used with a Standard step. • **Child Process** - This is used when you want to select approval rules that are associated to child objects of the approval process context object, which also replace the assignee types that are used with a Standard step. It enables the *Context Object* and *Approval Rule* list.
Description Fields	There are description text fields available for adding information about a step, as well as for conditions of the step entry criteria. These fields enable you to provide useful information to the approvers about these items.
Display Fields	The fields enables you to select the header level fields of the context object you want to show to users when previewing an approval or when an approval request has been sent and the approver is reviewing the request information. Any Related Fields you create for the context object is available as display fields.

To create approval steps

There must be an approval process.

1. From the Approval Process page, click **New Approval Step** in the **Approval Steps** section.
   - or -
   At the end of creating a process definition, select **Yes, I'd like to create an approval step now** and click **Go**.
2. Enter a **Step Name, Step Label** and **Description** for the step.
3. Specify the appropriate **Step Type** and click **Next**.
4. Select the **Entry Criteria** for the step and click **Next**. See Creating Expressions for details on setting the criteria.
5. Specify the conditions for setting up Auto-Reapproval. When these conditions are satisfied, the current step will be automatically re-approved.
6. Select **Step Dependencies**, if necessary, by highlighting steps in **Unselected Items** and click to add them to the **Selected Items**. Reorder the steps as required and click **Next**. Step dependency is based on their order in **Selected Items**.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

7. Select **Step Auto Complete** if you want this step to automatically be approved when it is assigned to the approver. For auto complete to work as expected, ensure that the step you set Set Auto Complete for is independent from another step. You can set up any or all standard steps in an Approval Process for auto-completion. Entry Criteria is still enforced for the selection of the step, but will be marked as auto-completed if flagged. Approval Comments are not enforced even if the comments are flagged as mandatory. Fact that the Step is auto-completed is captured in the audit trail.
8. Select the process approvers, by selecting from **Assigned Approver > Assignee Type.**

Option	Description
Approval Matrix	Use this to dynamically assign an approval request to a user who has the given approval level in the approval matrix for the user submitting the request. For example, approver authority may change based on the discount being offered on a sales contract. So different levels of approvers can be assigned based on approval authority for a given item.
Custom Queue	This points to a field which contains a queue name in any custom object with a filter to narrow it down to a single row. This can be specified in two ways: • Select the custom field in the custom object you want to use for the custom filter expression and manually enter a constant value it will be compared to. • Select the custom field in the custom object, but select Bind Value, which enables you to select a field in the associated business object to compare to.
Custom Role	This is a field which contains a role name in any custom object with a filter to narrow down to a single row. The behavior is the same as Custom Queue.
Custom User	This is a user lookup reference field in any custom object with a filter to narrow down to a single row. The behavior is the same as Custom Queue.
Queue	Use this to dynamically assign an approval request to a queue. If email notifications are set for the queue, notifications will be sent to all members of the queue, otherwise, a single notification will be sent to the queue email.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Option	Description
Related User	This is a user lookup reference field in the associated business object (i.e. Agreement or Opportunity).
Role	A role can be based on your company's hierarchy and can have one or more users assigned to it.
Rule	Use this assignee type when you want to dynamically assign an approval request based on an approval rule. If you select this option , t he approval request is sent only to the first user that satisfies the filter criteria in the Approval Rul e . If you have multiple approvers in a sequence, only the first approver is selected and assigned.
User	Use this assignee type when you want to dynamically assign an approval request to a user.

9. Select **Send Email** to notify the assignee by email that they must approve or reject the object record and select **Notify Only** to only inform the assignee by email that the approval process has reached this step, without any actions to take.
10. Select **Skip Unresolved Assignee** to optionally skip an unresolved approver from the list of sequential approvers.
11. Choose **Step Auto Escalate** if you want to escalate the current step if no action is taken on the approval request within a specified period. Enter the number of days in **Step Expected Days To Complete and** the number of hours in **Step Expected Hours To Complete** by which you want to escalate the approval request.
12. Select a mandatory **Assignee Type** where you can escalate the approval request to a User, Role or any of the assignee type mentioned in Step 8. Click **Next**.
13. Create Reminders for approval requests that send a reminder notification to the assignee at the specified duration unit and intervals. For example, you can remind the assignee to take action on the request 7 days after it was assigned, and then again a week later. To activate reminders, select **Step Reminders Active**.
14. If you have enabled submission comments at the process level, at each step, you must enable submission comments.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

15. Select the Header and Display Fields which will appear at each approval step, by highlighting steps in **Unselected Items** and click to add them to the **Selected Items**. Reorder the steps as required and click **Next**. Step dependency is based on their order in **Selected Items**. For example, the selected Display fields appear on the Approvals page if you have configured Approvals for CPQ.
16. Click **Save**.

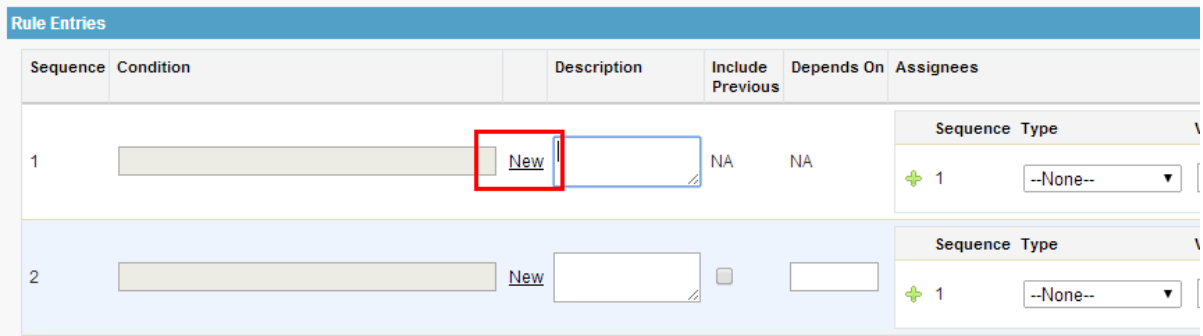
The step is added to the **Approval Steps** section for the Intelligent Approval Process. You can now **Activate** the approval process.

To create an Approval Rule to use with a Sub-process or Child processes

Condition must be added to the *Rule Type* picklist.

Go to **Setup > Create > Objects > Approval Rule**, scroll to **Custom Fields & Relationships** and click **Rule Type**. From **Picklist Values** section, click **New**. Enter Condition and click **Save**.

1. Go to **Approval Rules** and click **New**.
2. Select the Business Object and click **Next**. To use the approval rule with a sub-process it must match the context object of the approval process. To use it with a child process, it must match the child object associated with the approval process.
3. Enter a **Rule Name, Sequence,** and from **Rule Type**, select **Condition**.
4. Click **Save** and then click **Manage Entries** from the *Approval Rule Detail* page.
5. From Rule Entries, click **New**.



6. Enter the condition you want to use to route an approval request to the assignee and click **OK**.
7. Now you can fill out the rest of the rule entry as normal, including descriptions for both the condition and the assignee.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

8. When selecting assignees, the **Type** you select impacts what you need to enter for the **Value**:
    - *User*, *Role*, *Queue* - Enter the *Label* for the specific object record you are referring to.
    - *Related User* - For custom fields enter the *API Name*, such asQuoteOwner___c. This needs to be the *User Lookup* field on the *Line Item* or *Product Configuration* object record. If it is a standard field, addIdto the field name and use that. For instance, with the Line Item field *CreatedBy*, you would enterCreatedById.
    - *Custom User*, *Custom Queue*, *Custom Role* - This can be a formula, using a format as follows:Custom Object (Custom Object Field 01 = "Value" AND Custom Object Field 02 = "Value") User. For more details, see Custom Assignee Example.
9. Add additional conditions and assignees as desired and click **Save**.

> **Note**
>
> The *Assignee Type* is *Subprocess* regardless of whether you created a Subprocess or Child process type.

When the approval rule is *Active* it can be used with an approval process and depending on the context object of the approval process, the approval rule will be available when you select a *Step Type* of *sub-process* or *child process*.

You can create additional approval rules as needed.

Using Date Criteria in Approval Rule Entry

If you use date based criteria in an approval rule entry, you must YYYY-MM-DD 00:00:00 format for the date. For example, you want to trigger an approval rule on Proposal Line Item with Create Date greater or equal to April 5, 2018.

Use the following and do not delete anything:2018-04-05 00:00:00

This is useful when you want to set an approval rule or entry to take effect on or after a certain date. If you do not use the right format, the system displays an error when you try to submit for approval OR the system will simply ignore the criteria and trigger the rule regardless of the date.

Setting up Auto-Escalation

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

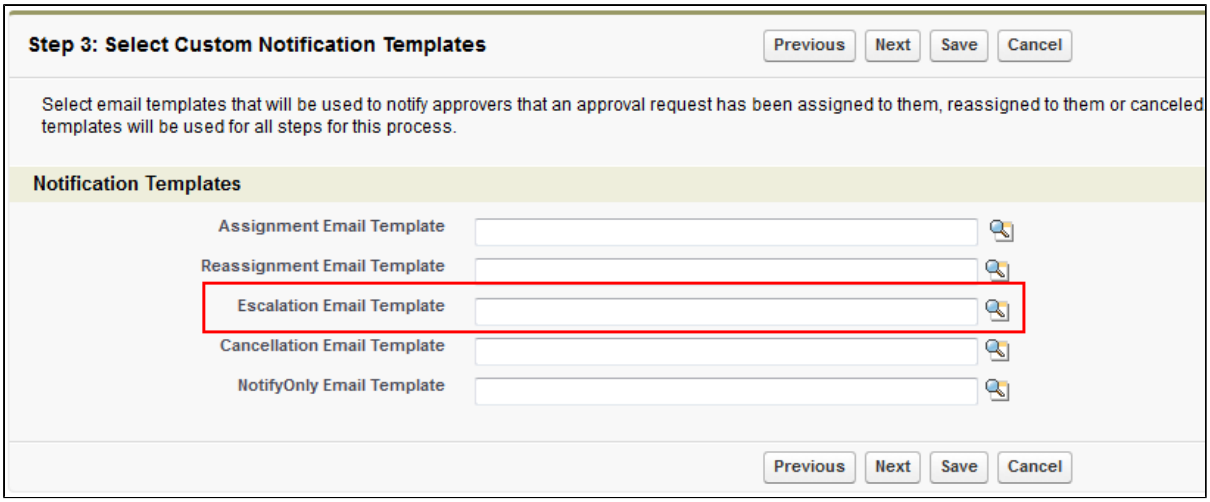
Enabling auto-escalation in an approval process occurs at the approval step level. While the email templates apply to the entire approval process, you can have different auto-escalation settings for each approval step or you can use the global escalation options.

Once an approval process has started, you can choose to manually escalate an approval request from the *Approval Request* related list for the object record currently under approval.

To configure auto-escalation for an approval process

You must have completed the configuration tasks to enable auto-escalation functionality.

1. Create a new approval process or edit an existing one.
2. When you come to the Notification Templates page, you can leave the **Escalation Email Template** field empty and it will use the default template or you can override it with a custom template.



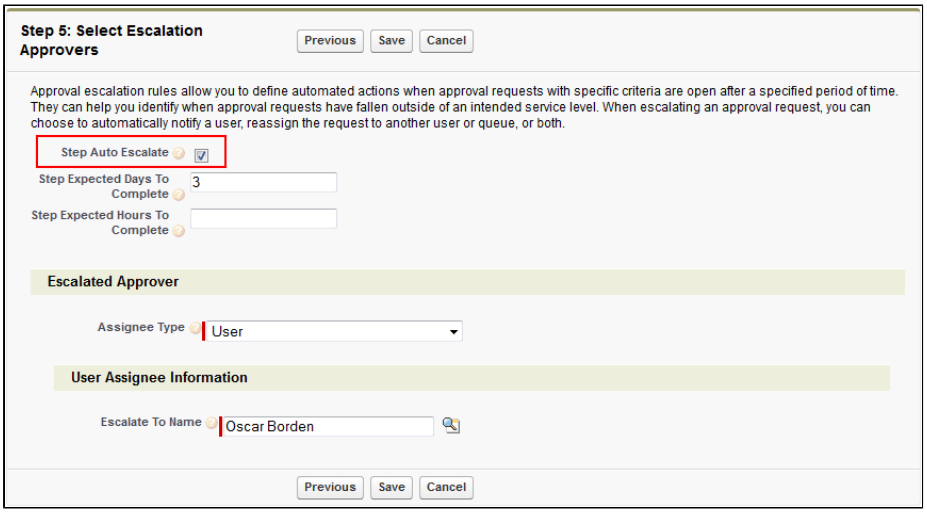
3. Finish creating the approval process and then create or edit an approval step for it.
4. When you come to the Select Escalation Actions page you must select **Step Auto Escalate**. Configure the settings as follows:

Option	Description
Expected *nn* To Complete	These values are used to trigger the auto-escalation. Once an approval request has been created, the system uses the value of expected time to complete to determine when the request should be auto-escalated.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Option	Description
Assignee Type	While you could include any assignee type, the following behavior should be noted. If you select *Related User*, the assignee name can only be a single word otherwise it cannot be reassigned correctly. Also be aware of the differences between selecting a single-step and multi-step assignee type.
Assignee Name	This value is dependent on the assignee type.

> **Note**
>
> This page is displayed regardless of whether the auto-escalation feature is enabled.



5. Save the approval process step to complete the procedure.

When approval requests for that specific approval step exceed the **To Complete** values, they will be auto-escalated per the escalation settings.

To manually escalate an approval request

The configuration tasks must have been completed.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

1. Go to an object record that you have submitted for approval. Only the user who initially submitted the approval, or system administrators, can manually escalate a request.
2. From the **Approvals** related list, select **Escalate**.

The request is immediately escalated, according to the auto-escalation settings.

Creating Expressions

Intelligent approval process expressions provide a method for qualifying whether an object record should be routed through specific approval steps.

To connect individual expressions together using *OR*, as well as *AND*, you must use Advanced Options. For details, see Creating Advanced Options.

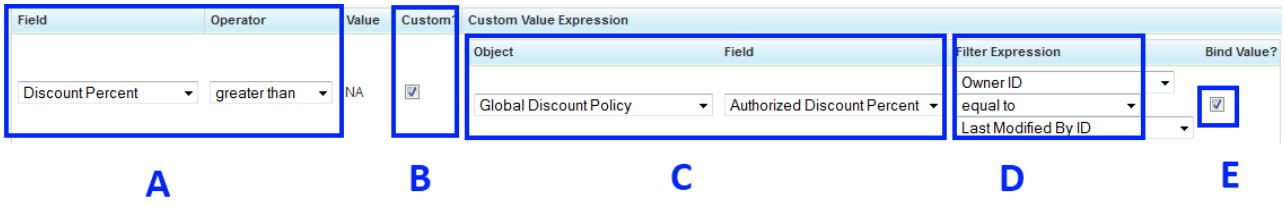
There are three types of expressions: standard, advanced and bound.

Expression	Description
Standard	This uses a field from the object record in the approval process, along with an operator, to compare to a single value to see if the process should enter a certain approval step. The value can be a constant value, whether entered manually or selected from a picklist, depending on the field type.
Advanced	This builds upon the simple expression, by enabling the value to come from a custom value expression. The custom value is derived from building another equation using a custom field in a custom table.
Bound	The same as advanced, except that the filter expression can use a field from the business object record in the approval process.

Your criteria can contain a simple field, operator, and value, or the value can be composed of a "custom" expression evaluated at runtime which includes resolving a value from a custom table, a custom field in that table, and an optional filter expression to narrow the rows down in that table. Custom filter expressions can also use bind variables that substitute the value of a field from the context object at runtime.

Bound Expression

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



A	The field comes from the business object associated with the approval process. Along with the operator, this forms the typical first two thirds of an equation.
B	Selecting **Custom** enables the **Custom Value Expression** section for creating advanced and bound expressions. It also sets **Value** to a read-only *N/A*.
C	The **Object** is a custom Salesforce object containing the available fields. The value selected for **Field** is what is compared to the field in part *A*. At its most basic form it is those two fields and the operator that form the expression. The expression will be evaluated for each row in the custom object.
D	The **Filter Expression** can be used to limit the number of rows in the custom object which are used as part of the overall expression. Any of the fields in the custom object can be used to create a filter expression, independent of the overall expression being evaluated.
E	Selecting **Bind Value?** creates a bound expression and makes the second field used in the Filter Expression come from the same business object as the field in part *A*. The **Bind Value** check box identifies the following: • A specific field on the custom object and compares it to a field on the context object. • A unique record on the custom object that needs to be used in the step entry criteria.

Attention

When building your expressions — both the Custom Value and Filter Expression — you must ensure the data types for the values in the fields being compared match. If they do not match, an error will occur when you preview the process or submit a request.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

To create standard expressions

Must be in *Step 2: Specify Step Entry Criteria* when creating or editing an Approval Process Step.

1. From the **Field** list, select the required object record field you want to compare.
2. Select the **Operator** and enter a valid **Value**.
3. Click ✚ or ━ to add and remove additional field expressions. By default, each line is linked with *AND*, click **Advanced Options** to use *AND*, *OR*, and parenthesis. See Creating Advanced Options for details.
4. Click **Save** once all the expressions have been added.

To create advanced and bound expressions

Must be in *Step 2: Specify Step Entry Criteria* when creating or editing an Approval Process Step.

1. From the **Field** list, select the required object record field you want to compare and select the **Operator**.
2. Select **Custom** to display the **Custom Value Expression** options.
3. Select the required options:

Option	Description
Object	This is the custom Salesforce object that is a table containing fields that are used for the expression. **Note** These must have been added via Approvals System Properties. See Setting up Custom Assignee Value Expression Objects for details.
Field	This is the field in the custom object which will be compared against the field and operator selected in step 1.
Filter Expression	These two fields and operator act as an independent expression within the larger overall expression.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

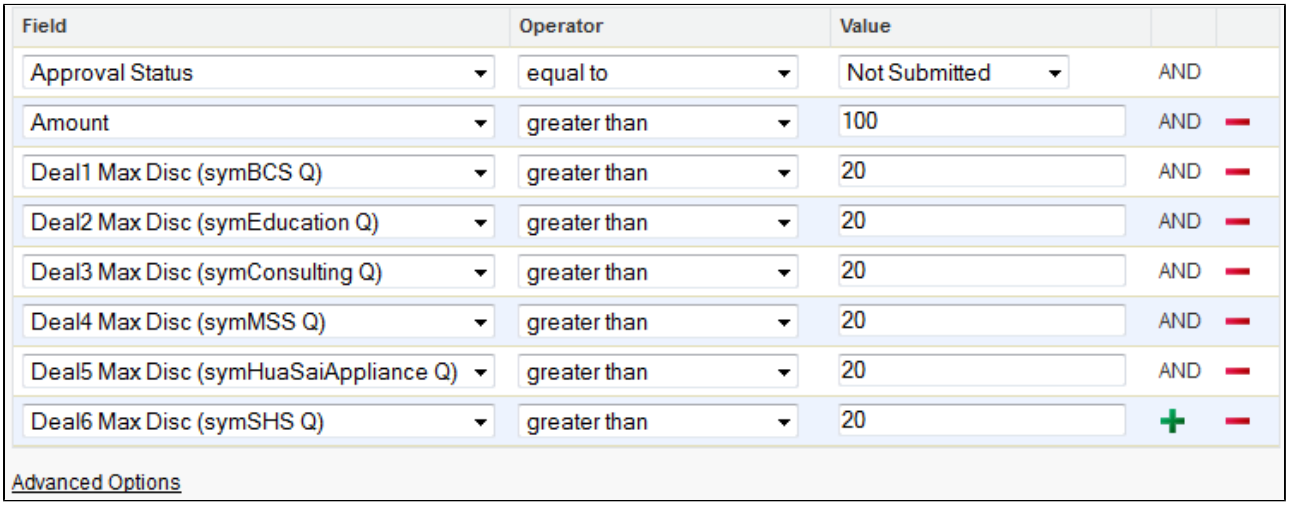
Option	Description
Bind Value	This enables the third **Filter Expression** picklist to be populated with values from the same object record that is being used in the main Field picklist.

4. Click ✚ to add another line.
   - Or -
   Click **Next** or **Save** to leave the page.

Creating Advanced Options

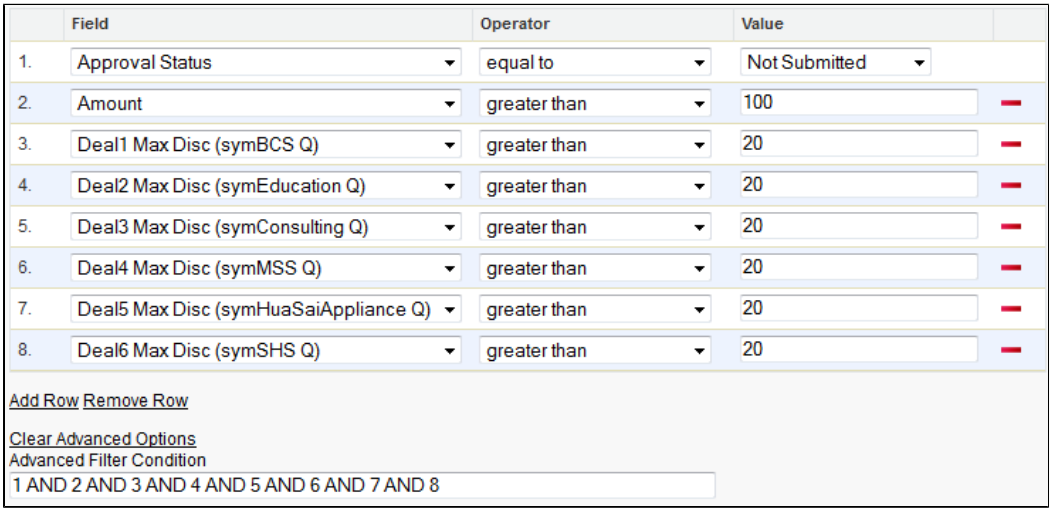
By default, when you create expressions each of them is associated by *AND*. This means the criteria for each expression must be met before the approval process will be routed according to the entry criteria, approval step criteria, or term exception approval conditions.

The **AND** column is read-only and cannot be changed. You must select **Advanced Options**.



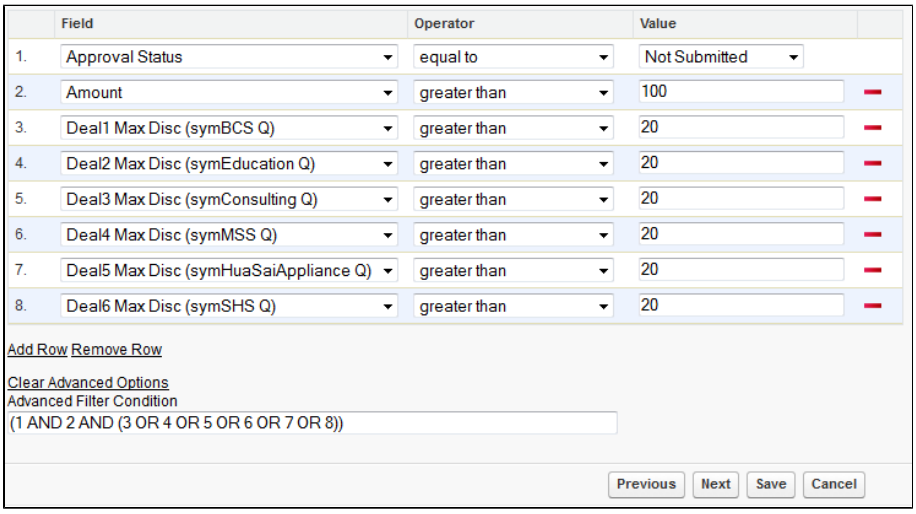
When you select **Advanced Options** the **AND** column is removed, a number is prepended to each expression, and the **Advanced Filter Condition** field is displayed. It displays each of the expressions – identified by their number – joined by the default *AND*.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



In the **Advanced Filter Condition** field you can use any combination of *AND*, *OR*, parenthesis, and numbers representing the expressions. These are the only values that can be used. Using other values may cause unexpected behavior.

As it is a free text field, there is no validation on the characters you can enter in the field. You can use up to 255 characters in the field.



To set advanced options

You must be in one of the following custom object sections:

- **Approval Process > Entry Criteria**
- **Approval Process > Approval Steps > Step Entry Criteria**

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

1. After you have created the required expressions, select **Advanced Options**. The **Advanced Filter Condition** field is displayed with the expressions listed in sequence, linked by *AND*.
2. In the **Advanced Filter Condition** field, create the equation using only the numbers representing the expressions, *AND*, *OR*, and parenthesis.

Option	Description
Valid example	((1 OR 2) AND 4) OR 3
Invalid example	((1 > 2) & (three or 4)) AND 5

3. Click **Next** or **Save** depending on which custom object you are in.

The expressions are linked and evaluated according to the formula in the **Advanced Filter Condition** field. There is no auto-validation on the formula. You should test the resulting criteria before using it in a live environment.To remove the advanced options and return to expressions that are all linked by *AND*, click **Clear Advanced Options**.

Initiating an Approval Request

If the object for which you have defined the approval process fulfils the search entry criteria and the step entry defined in the approval process, an approval request is initiated. All line items that require an approval, show up with an approval required label. To view the object and line items that require an approval you can use the Approval button on the object, to view a list of approvals required along with the approvers.

Setting up Approval Rules

Approval rules and dimensions enable you to package approval routing criteria together and use them for handling the *Assigned Approvers* step in the Approval Steps of your Intelligent Approval Process.

Typically if you choose to assign approval responsibilities to a specific user or role, there is no further logic or criteria that can be put into that assignment. The only real criteria available for the approval step is the *Step Entry Criteria*. By associating rules at the assignee step, via approval rules, you can dynamically assign approvers based on the same object records information used for the entry criteria.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- Dimensions
  Dimensions enable you to map fields from a variety of business objects including, but not limited to, Opportunity, Quote/Proposal, and Agreement Term Exception.
- Approval Rules
  Approval rules are used to associate Salesforce business objects, approval rule dimensions, and entry criteria for deciding which assignees are required during the Intelligent approval workflow.

Dimensions

Dimensions enable you to map fields from a variety of business objects including, but not limited to, Opportunity, Quote/Proposal, and Agreement Term Exception.

Once a dimension has been created, you can create an approval rule and associate it with the dimension.

To create approval rule dimensions

1. Click the **Approval Rule Dimensions** tab or click + and then select **Approval Rule Dimensions**.
2. Click **New** and then enter the dimension information:

Option	Description
Dimension Name	Enter a meaningful name, which will make it easy to identify and select in the intelligent approval process.
Business Object	This should match the object in the Intelligent approval process, that you plan to use the approval rule with. The objects you can select from are dependent on the packages you have installed.
Dimension Type	Field is a field associated with the business object. Formula is a type which can be extended through the associated business object.
Field	

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Option	Description
	The fields associated with the business object are available if the Dimension Type is Field. If the Dimension Type is Formula, then enter a formula with a reference field syntax (nnn__r.area__c), such as *Approval_Submitter__r.Area__c*.
Description	Description for the approval rule dimension.

3. Click **Save** to go to the Approval Rule Dimensions details page - or - Click **Save & New** to add another dimension.

The dimension is added to the list on the Approval Rule Dimensions page.

You can now create approval rules and associate them with the dimension. Either from the dimension details page or from the Approval Rules tab.

Approval Rules

Approval rules are used to associate Salesforce business objects, approval rule dimensions, and entry criteria for deciding which assignees are required during the Intelligent approval workflow.

To create approval rules

Dimensions must exist, so that the approval rule can be associated with one.

1. From the Approval Rule Dimension page, click **New Approval Rule** in one of the **Approval Rules (Dimension)** sections. - or - Click ✚ and then select **Approval Rules** and click **New**.
2. Select the **Business Object** that is the same as the one associated with the Intelligent approval process this rule will be used with and click **Next**.
3. In the **Configure Rule** section, enter the minimum required settings for the rule:

Option	Description
Business Object	This is the value selected in Step 2 and cannot be edited here.
Rule Name	Mandatory name for the rule.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Sequence	Mandatory number indicating in which sequence the rule will be evaluated.
Rule Type	Select **Dimension** or **Condition** for this mandatory setting.
Description	Description of the rule.
Dimensions	Select the dimensions you want the rule to be used with. The available dimensions are based on the business object selected in Step 2. There can be a maximum of six dimensions.
Dimension Types	Select **Discrete** or **Range**. Discrete must be a specific value, such as a number or a value for a category. The value *Rejected* in the category *Approval Status* would be discrete. Range is continuous data, where a value can be measured to multiple degrees. For example the number of units for a product could fall into a range of 1-99, 100-199, 200-499 and 500 or more.

> **Note**
>
> You should not use the Rule Criteria section, as this kind of logic is typically handled by Approval Step logic.

4. Select **Active** so the rule can be used with Intelligent approval processes.
5. Click **Save** to go to the Approval Rule details page - or - Click **Save & New** to add another rule.

The rule is added to the list on the Approval Rules page.

From the Approval Rules detail page, you should add assignees, using the **Manage Entries** option.

Approval Rule Assignees

The Manage Entries section of an Approval Rule designates assignees who will receive approval requests, based on the associated dimension and where they are called within an approval step.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

You can have a user, role, queue, custom version of those, related user, or auto approval as an assignee. Like configuring assignees in the approval step, you can indicate whether they should only be notified or sent an email informing them they must decide on the approval.

If you want to automatically progress an item, you can select Auto Approval as an assignee and associate the rule with a *Subprocess* in an Approval Step. In instances where approval routing is based on thresholds, an Auto Approval assignee can ensure the process is handled correctly.

In instances where approval routing is based on thresholds, an Auto Approval assignee can ensure the process is handled correctly. For instance, if approval routing is based on discount percentages and no approval is required for the 0-20% range, the approval step for that range could go to an Auto Approval assignee.

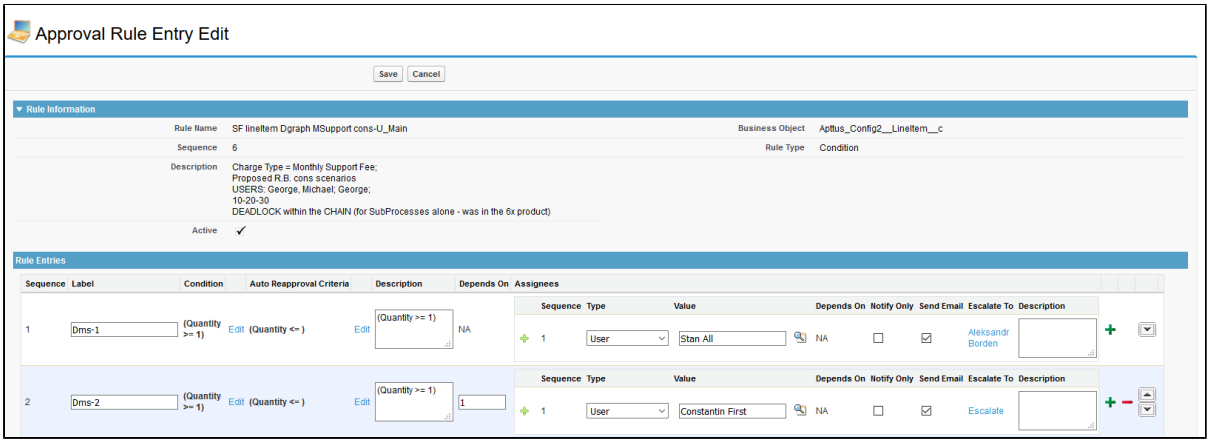
Note

You must ensure valid values are entered or the expected assignees may not get notified as expected. While you can enter someone's name, username, or email address, it is recommended that you either use the username (that they login to the system with) or the email address associated with their account. As these should be unique, you can best ensure you have selected the correct user.

To set the assignees

There must be an Approval Rule.

1. From the Approval Rule Detail page, click **Manage Entries**.
2. Select the criteria, based on the previously selected dimensions.



3. Enter the assignee details:

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Option	Description
Sequence	If you are going to use this rule with a *Subprocess* in an Approval Step, you can select to add another assignee, otherwise do not add more.
Type	Choose from **User, Role, Queue, Related User, Custom User, Custom Role, Custom Queue** or **Auto Approval**.
Value	You need to enter a valid Salesforce value for the assignee, based on the Type selection.
Label	Enter a label to associate with the Value.
Depends On	If you have multiple assignees for the rule entry, enter the number corresponding to the assignee who you want to make the current assignee dependent on.
Notify Only	An email is sent to the assignee, without any action items.
Send Email	An email is sent to the assignee, informing them they must make an approval decision.
Skip Unresolved Assignee	Select to optionally skip an unresolved approver from the list of sequential approvers.
Escalate To	If the assignee does not approve or reject a request within a stipulated frame of time, the request is escalated to the specific assignee.
Description	Description for the assignee.

4. Click ✚ to add another rule entry - or - Click **Save** to go to the Approval Rule Detail page.

The rule entries are now in use by the approval rule.

Now that the approval rule has assignees, you can create an Intelligent approval process and reference the approval rule and it will use values entered here to route the approval.

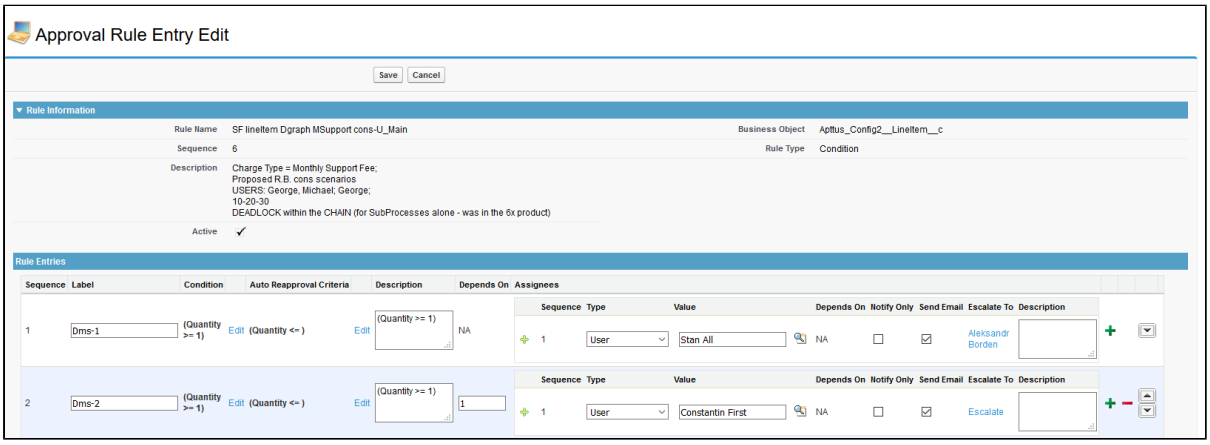
Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Setting up Auto-escalation for Rule Assignees

> **Important**
>
> Auto Escalation should be set-up on approval rules that will be used as sub-process (context header object) ONLY. Auto escalation should not be setup on child process (child records or line items).

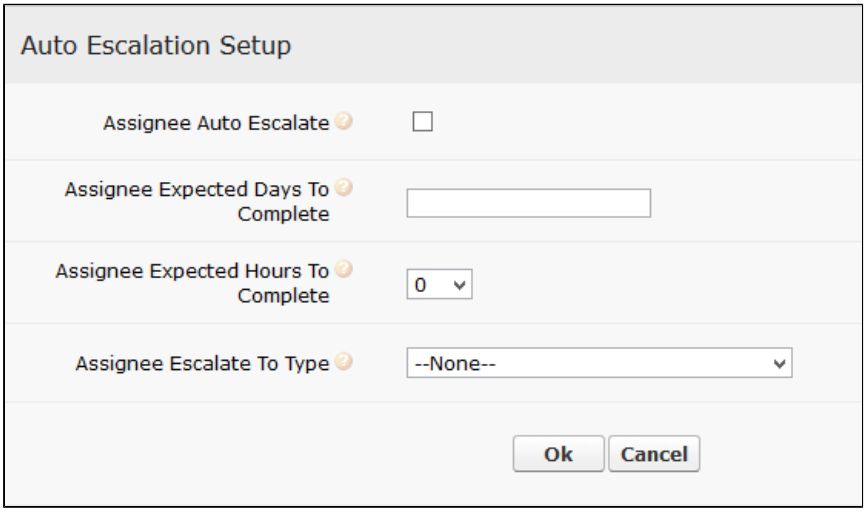
To setup auto-escalation for assignees, there must be an Approval Rule.

1. From the Approval Rule Detail page, click **Manage Entries**.
2. Select the criteria, based on the previously selected dimensions.



3. Enter the assignee details.
4. Click **Escalate To**. The Auto Escalation Setup dialog appears.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



5. Enter the escalation details:

Option	Description
Assignee Auto Escalate	Select this check box to enable auto escalation for the specific assignee. If the Assignee does not approve or reject the request within the specified days or hours, the request is escalated.
Assignee Expected Days/Hours To Complete	Specify the days or hours within which the assignee should approve or reject the request. If no action is taken on the request, it is escalated to the assignee specified in the Assignee Escalate To Type field.
Assignee Escalate To Type	Specify the assignee you want to escalate the request to. The Assignee type can be user, role, queue, backup admin, user manager, delegated user, related user, User Approval Matrix Next Approver

Approval Policies

Approval policies enable you to set the number of approved requests required for a process to be considered approved, based on unanimity, majority, or percentage. This is done by selecting a policy type for an approval rule and associating it with an approval process through a subprocess assignee.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

When there are multiple approvers for a sub-process, as the approvers complete their requests the system uses the policy to determine when the approval process is finished. When an approval process reaches the approval or rejection threshold, any remaining approval requests do not need to be completed.

For example, if you have a majority policy with five approvers and the first three approvers approve the approval request, there is no need for the remaining two approvers to answer the request. 3 out of 5 have approved it to reach a majority and the Approval Status for the object is set to Approved. Even if a single approver rejects the request, the approval status for the object is set as Rejected.

There are four policy types:

Unanimous	All approvers must approve their requests for it to be approved. This is the same as the default Intelligent Approvals behavior.
Majority	Majority of approvers must approve the request for it to be approved. To ensure this policy evaluates as expected, you should ensure you have an odd number of approvers. If you have an even number of approvers and you end up with the same number of approvals and rejections, the request is rejected.
Percent	The designated percentage must be met or exceeded for the request to be approved.
Quorum	The designated number must be met or exceeded for the request to be approved in the **Approval Count** field. For example, if you set up **Approval Count** as 2, and you have 4 approval requests, out of which 2 of your approval requests are approved, then the Approval Status is set to *Approved*. If any 2 of your approval requests are rejected, the system waits for the next 2 approvers to take the decision. If the remaining 2 approvers approve the request, the Approval Status is set to *Approved.* **Note** The above system behaviour is functional when you have selected the **Continue Policy Approval on a Reject** check box.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Note

You cannot use approval policies and consolidated approvals together. You can only use one or the other in an approval process.

From the May Patch 1 release onwards, once an assignee rejects an approval request, you can choose to proceed to send approval requests to the rest of the assignees in the policy despite a rejection. In the earlier releases, the policy status would be set to **Rejected** even if a single assignee in the rule rejected a request.

The Approval policy (supported for Sub Process or Child Process steps) supports a new feature to **Continue Policy Approval on a Reject** when a policy is enabled.

- When checked, this feature allows the user to approve their assigned approval requests, as long as the policy criteria can still be met, even though one or more approval requests within the Sub process or Child process are already rejected.
- When unchecked, all the approval requests with status other than Approved, within the Sub Process or Child Process will be cancelled, whenever any request is rejected. Policy approval for that approval Sub Process or Child Process will stop immediately.

The **Continue Approval Policy After Rejection** check box takes precedence over the **Continue Pending Approvals on a Reject** check box, which is set at the process level.

The table highlights the behavior for the **Continue Approval Policy After Rejection** check box**.**

Policy Type	Behavior
Unanimous	All the assignees must approve the request for the status to be approved. Even if a single approver rejects the request, the Approval Status is Rejected. Continue Approval Policy after Reject (selected): All the assignees are routed the approval request, the approval request cycle continues even after a rejection. Continue Approval Policy after Reject (de-selected): The approval request cycle stops after a rejection. The Policy status is set to Rejected.
Majority	Continue Approval Policy after Reject (selected): All the assignees are routed the approval request, the approval request cycle continues even after a rejection. If the majority of the approvers have approved the request, the status is Approved.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Policy Type	Behavior
	Continue Approval Policy after Reject (de-selected): The approval request cycle stops after a rejection. The Policy status is set to Rejected.
Quorum	Continue Approval Policy after Reject (selected): All the assignees are routed the approval request, the approval request cycle continues even after a rejection. If the specified quorum of the approvers have approved the request, the status is Approved. Continue Approval Policy after Reject (de-selected): The approval request cycle stops after a rejection. The Policy status is set to Rejected.
Percent	Continue Approval Policy after Reject (selected): All the assignees are routed the approval request, the approval request cycle continues even after a rejection. If the specified percentage of the approvers have approved the request, the status is Approved. The approval request cycle stops after a rejection. The Policy status is set to Rejected.

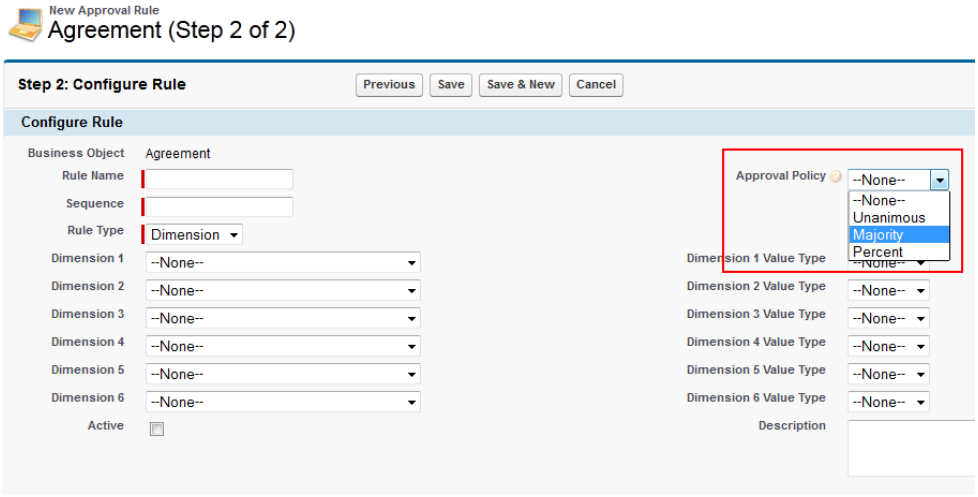
To create an approval policy

1. Go to the **Approval Rule Dimensions** tab and create a dimension.
2. Go to the **Approval Rules** tab and create a rule. Create a rule per usual, but from the **Approval Policy** list, select from **Unanimous**, **Majority**, **Quorum** or **Percent**.

   If you select *Percent*, an additional field is displayed for entering the percentage threshold for requests, to have the Approval Status reach Approved.
   If you select *Quorum*, 2 additional fields are displayed.

   Approval Count for entering the designated number of approval requests to set the Approval Status to Approved. **Continue Policy Approval on a Reject** check box enables you to let the approvers decide even when the designated number of approvers have approved or rejected an approval request.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



3. Go to the **Approval Process** tab and create a process. When you create an Approval Step, in *Step 4: Select Assigned Approvers*, from **Assignee Type** select **Subprocess** and from **Assignee Value**, select the approval rule created earlier.

The approval process is in place to make use of the policy the next time an approval request for an object meets the entry criteria is initiated.

If you select Percent, an additional field is displayed for entering the percentage threshold for requests, to have the Approval Status reach Approved.If you select Quorum, 2 additional fields are displayed. Approval Count for entering the designated number of approval requests to set the Approval Status to Approved. Continue Policy Approval on a Reject enables you to let the approvers decide even when the designated number of approvers have approved or rejected an approval request.

Optional Configuration

Intelligent Approvals provides a wizard-like set of pages that guide you through the process of creating approval processes and term exception approvals; however, if for some reason you do not want the benefits of this it can be disabled.

Changing this setting does not affect the object values, but the ability to be guided through the creation and editing process is lost when you change to the basic Salesforce.com page.

To change the default Intelligent Approvals Process UI

Build > Create > Objects > Approval Process

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

1. Go to **Standard Buttons and Links** and click **Edit** beside **Approval Processes** Tab. By default, *ApprovalProcessDefnList (Visualforce Page, Package: Apttus Approvals Management)* is selected.
2. Select **Override With Standard** Salesforce.com **Page** and click **Save**.
3. Go back to **Standard Buttons and Links** and click **Edit** beside **View**. By default, *ApprovalProcessDefn (Visualforce Page, Package: Apttus Approvals Management)* is selected.
4. Select **Override With Standard** Salesforce.com **Page** and click **Save**. Repeat step 3 and step 4 for **Edit** and **New**.

When someone next accesses the **Approval Processes** tab and creates a new item or views or edits an existing item, the pages look rubbish.

To return to the default Approval Processes UI, settings back to *ApprovalProcessDefnList (Visualforce Page, Package: Apttus Approvals Management)* and *ApprovalProcessDefn (Visualforce Page, Package: Apttus Approvals Management)*.

To change the default Term Exception Approvals UI

Build > Create > Objects > Term Exception Approval

1. Go to **Standard Buttons and Links** and click **Edit** beside **Edit**. By default, *TermExApproval (Visualforce Page, Package: Apttus Approvals Management)* is selected.
2. Select **Override With Standard** Salesforce.com **Page** and click **Save**.
3. Go back to S**tandard Buttons and Links** and click **Edit** beside **New**.
4. Select **Override With Standard** Salesforce.com **Page** and click **Save**.

When someone next accesses the Term Exception Approvals tab and clicks New, or Edit for an existing item, the pages look rubbish.

To return to the default Term Exception Approvals UI, change the Edit and New settings back to *TermExApproval (Visualforce Page, Package: Apttus Approvals Management)*.

By default, when searching for a step assignee type of *Queue*, *Role*, *Rule*, *Subprocess* or *User*, the results are displayed twenty per page.

The number can be changed; however, it is important to understand how changing the value can impact performance. If the number is too high, it can take additional time for the search page to load the results. When no value is designated, the default twenty is used.

 Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

To set the assignees search page

Build > Develop > Custom Settings

1. Click **Manage** beside **Approvals System Properties**.
2. Click **Edit** beside **System Properties**.
3. In the **UI Assignee Search Page Size** field, enter the maximum number of rows to display on each search page.
4. Click **Save**.

The next time someone is configuring an approval step and selects an Assignee Type of *Queue*, *Role*, *Rule*, *Subprocess* or *User*, the resulting search page will reflect this setting.

Advanced currency management (ACM) is optional Salesforce functionality that must be enabled directly by Salesforce, to allow you to manage dated exchange rates on opportunity records.

When ACM is enabled in your org and being used on opportunities, you cannot use any *Opportunity* object fields that are of a *Data Type* of *Currency* in your intelligent approval emails or on the approval summary page. This includes the standard *Amount* field and any custom fields using the currency type.

If you want to have currency type field information in your emails, you cannot have the values within the content of the email. You would need to have links back to the opportunity record itself in the email and users would have to view the date within Salesforce.

Approvals are now supported for Partner Managed Quotes and Contracts using Salesforce Communities. Your channel partners can not only create quotes and contracts, but can also access all the approval functions that are available to your internal employees. For a community page setup, enable the following functions as community user:

- Preview Overall from Cart
- Return to Cart from Cart Preview Page
- Preview Overall from Quote Header
- Line Item Preview from Cart
- Submit for Approval from Cart Preview
- Return to Quote from Cart Submit for Approval confirmation page
- Submit for Approval from Quote Preview Page
- Return to Quote from Submit for Approval from Quote Header Preview page

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- Approvals History page from Quote Header for Submitted Quote
- My Approvals Page (When no approvals needed)
- My Approvals Page (When approvals needed)
- Approve from My Approvals Page
- Reject from My Approvals Page
- Take Queue Ownership from My Approvals Page
- Cancel Submitted Approval as community user

Do the following to provide community access for a community user:

1. Assign all the Approval packages to the Community User.
2. Create a permission set for the community users.
3. Assign Apex Pages/Classes access to the permission set for community users.
4. Manage User Assignments for the Community User.
5. Provide fields and object level permissions.
6. For Objects, set the Field Level accessibility by profile - Hidden/Visible/Editable
7. Navigate to Object > Page layouts > Page Layout assignment. Associate profiles to the layout.
8. Go to Permission set > Object Setting, provide Create, Read, Edit, and Delete permissions for the community user.
9. Navigate to Permission Set > Object Settings > Proposals > Provide permission to the Configure Products (Approvals) link or button .

   If any error is appears pertaining the Read permissions of account locations, navigate to Object Settings > Account Locations > and provide all 4 Create, Read, Edit, and Delete permissions.

10. Go to Setup > All Communities > Administration > Settings and make the tabs visible to your community user.

Errors you may face during IWA community setup :

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- After clicking the Configure Products (Approvals) button, Error: SObject row was retrieved via SOQL without querying the requested field: Apttus_Proposal_Proposalc. Apttus_QPConfigLocationId_c.
  Resolution : > You might have missed point 9.
- After clicking the Configure Products (Approvals) button, Error : Assigned to : Assigned To ID : Owner
  Resolution : > Go To Custom Settings -> Go To Config System Properties > Assign Admin User
- When you click Submit For Approvals, error : Backup Admin Not Assigned error appears, navigate to Setup-> Custom Settings -> Approvals Custom Config > Click ProductConfiguration__c > Backup Admin User and provide a Backup Admin user name.

To configure buttons and fields for approvals in communities

Ensure that you have set the requisite permissions for community users for apex classes, objects, and VF pages.

1. Navigate to the **Approval** object and create a custom field for approval actions with datatype as formula. The formula field for the custom field remains the same as that of the Approval Action field except for the hyperlink.
2. Add the site prefix specific to the community setting, to the hyperlink. For example, HYPERLINK("/developer/Apttus_Approval__ApprovalRequestEscalate?id="&Id,"Escalate","_top"), here developer is the site prefix for the community org.
3. Ensure that you add the custom fields to the appropriate page layout of the pages the community user has access to.

After you add the button to the community page layout, the button is visible to the community user having access to the page.

For each community page which has a specific hyperlink, configure separate custom buttons and fields for the community and associate the site prefix in the hyperlink of the particular custom button or field.

By default, if an approval rule step cannot find an assignee to send an approval to, it will get routed to the backup approver. The *APTS_EnableRuleCriteriaForStep* admin property setting can override the default behavior, and skip the step, instead of sending it to the backup approver.

If this property is set to *True*, when a rule has no assignees the step is skipped. This has the same effect as a step filter that evaluates to false.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

To set the admin property setting

1. Select the **Admin** tab - or - select and select **Admin**.
2. Click **Go** to display all of the admin settings.
3. If **APTS_EnableRuleCriteriaForStep** is listed, click **Edit**, enter **True** or **False** in the **Value** field, and click **Save**. - or - if the setting is not displayed, click **New Admin**.
4. Enter the name **APTS_EnableRuleCriteriaForStep**, enter **True** or **False** in the **Value** field, and click **Save**.

Subsequent approval processes that are routed to a step where an assignee cannot be found will be impacted by this setting.

To have values available in the Object picklist, when creating a Custom Value Expression for determining assignees, those custom objects must be added to Approval System Properties. For more details on where these objects are used in Intelligent Approvals, see Creating Expressions.

Note

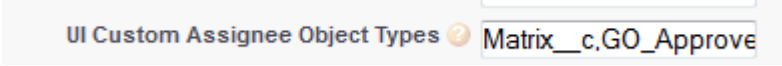
The custom Salesforce objects are configured as normal.

To set up Custom Value Expression Objects

The custom objects you want to add must have been created already.

Build > Develop > Custom Settings

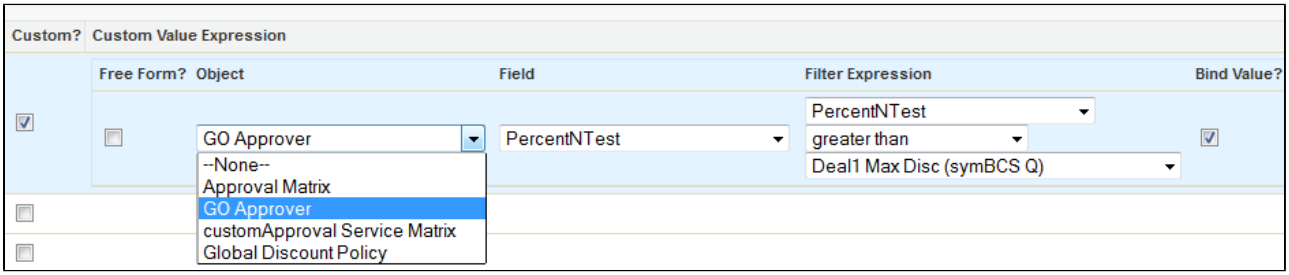
1. Click **Manage** for **Approvals System Properties**.
2. Click **Edit** for **System Properties**.
3. In the **UI Custom Assignee Objects Types** field, enter API names for the custom objects you want to use, separated by commas. The format should be CustomObjectname1__c, CustomObjectname2___c, CustomObjectname3__c.



4. Click **Save** when complete.

The custom objects are now available for selection in the *Object* picklist in the *Custom Value Expression* section, when you are selecting approval request assignees.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

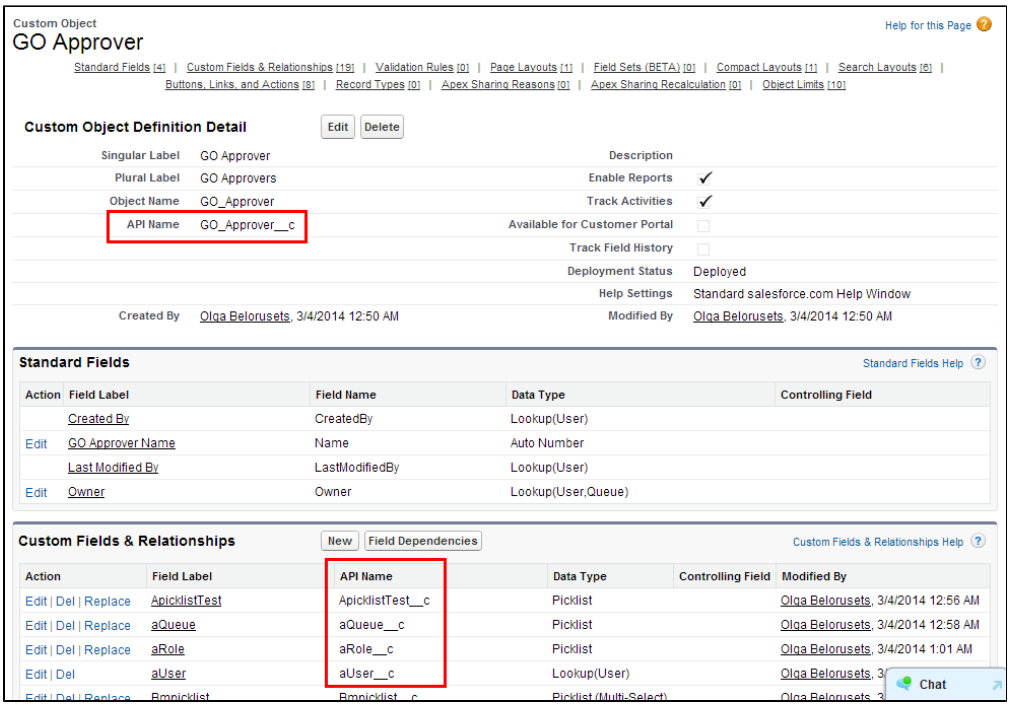


Custom Assignee Example

You can create custom objects to be used with custom assignee types in approval rules. This example will take a custom object called *GO Approver* and show how it is used to provide assignees when creating an approval rule.

Step 1: Create your custom object.

From **Setup**, go to **Create > Objects** and click **New Custom Object**. Create your custom object, adding the necessary fields to enable you to create a formula for selecting assignees. The API name for the custom object and its fields are what are used to create the custom formula in the approval rule.

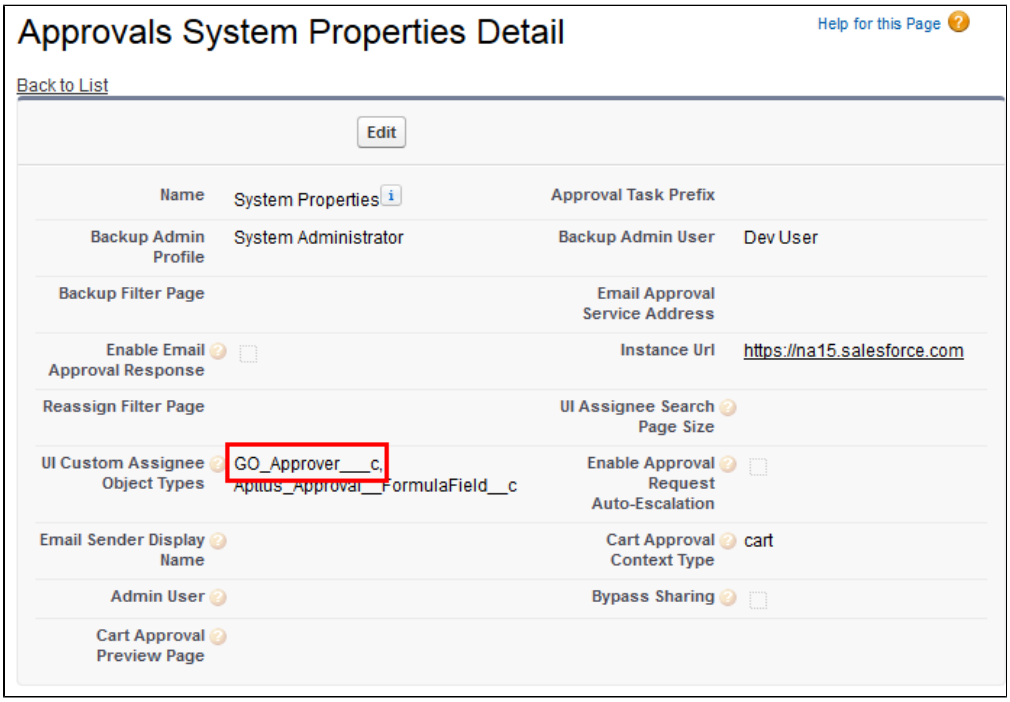


Step 2: Make the custom object available to Intelligent Approvals via a custom setting.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

From **Setup**, go to **Develop > Custom Settings** and click **Manage** for **Approval Systems Properties**. Click **Edit** and for **UI Custom Assignee Object Types** enter the name of the custom objects you want to use with custom assignees.

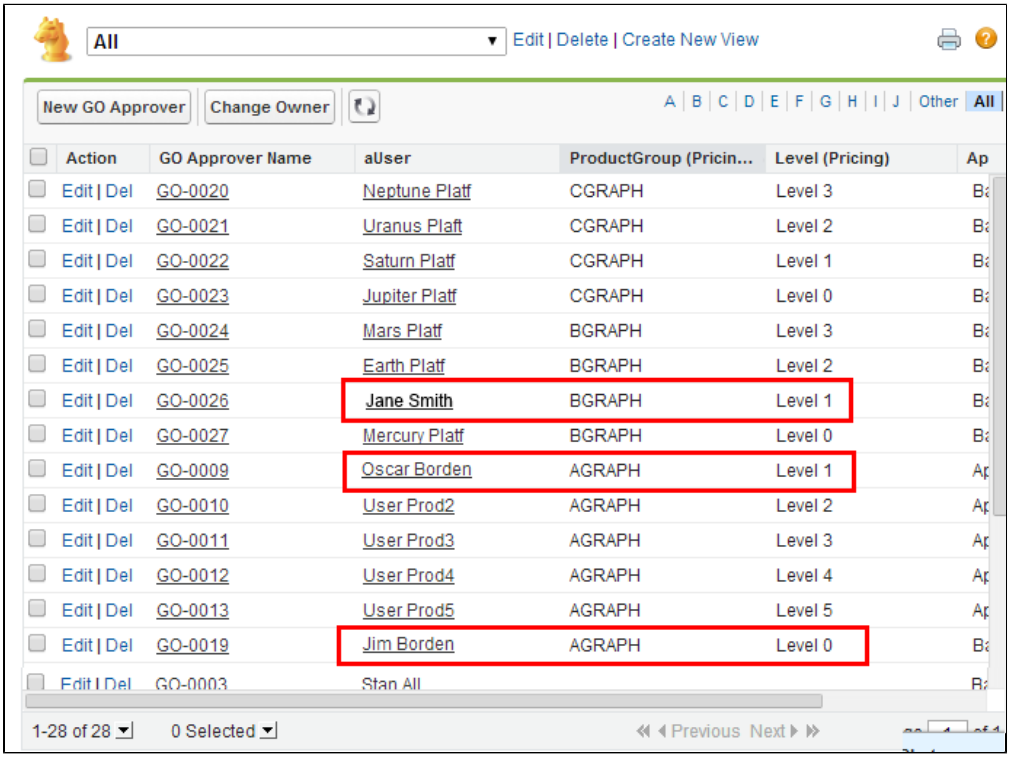
The Approval Systems Property must include the API name of the custom object:



Step 3: Create users for the custom object.

Go to the *GO Approver* tab to display the page and create all the users you want to approve requests. The values you enter in the fields for each user is what is used when you create formulas for selecting assignees.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

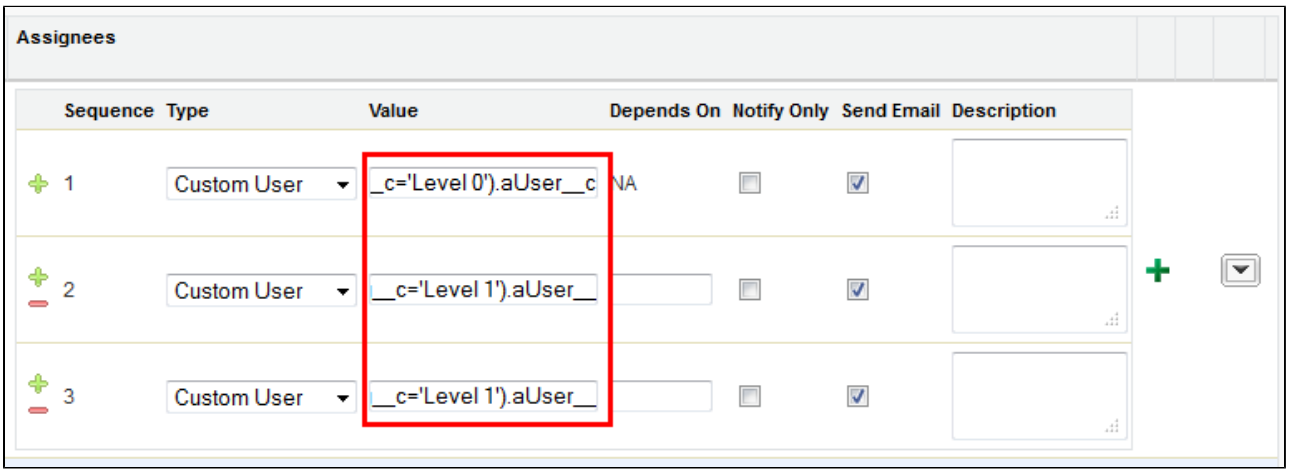


Step 4: Create your approval rules, using formula expressions to select assignees.

Go to an Approval Rule of Type *Condition* and create assignees by selecting *Custom User* and then enter a formula in the *Value* field. For instance the following formulas would route an approval to the following assignees, based on the users you created for the custom object.

GO_Approver__c(ProductGroup_Pricing__c='AGRAPH' AND Level_Pricing__c='Level 0').aUser__c	Jim Borden
GO_Approver__c(ProductGroup_Pricing__c='AGRAPH' AND Level_Pricing__c='Level 1').aUser__c	Oscar Borden
GO_Approver__c(ProductGroup_Pricing__c='BGRAPH' AND Level_Pricing__c='Level 1').aUser__c	Jane Smith

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



Approval matrices enable you to dynamically assign an approval request to someone selected from a list of a maximum of six potential approvers. An approval matrix can be selected as an assignee type when creating an approval step.

The potential approvers are assigned an approval level, which is associated with a percentage discount. Those discount values are based on the *Authorized Discount Percents* set up in Global Discount Policies. You must have these policies set up for an approval matrix to route approvals to the correct level.

The Global Discount Policy values set the default discount percentage levels that will typically require approval and also designate who the approver should be for each level. Matrices enable you to have approvals start at any of the policy levels. For instance, if the policy's *Authorized Discount Percent* for *Approval Level 1* is 15% and no approval is required until the discount on certain items reaches 35%, an approval matrix can be created that does not start until the approval level 2.

To create Global Discount Policies

1. Select the **Global Discount Policies** tab or click ? Unknown Attachment and then select **Global Discount Policies**.
2. Click **New** and enter a whole number for the **Authorized Discount Percent**. This represents the percentage discount at which an approval will be routed to the associated approval level.
3. Enter a description and then select the **Approval Level** for the discount policy entry. This value will be used in the approval matrix to associate a user with the approval level.
4. Click **Save** to return to the Global Discount Policy list - or - click **Save & New** and create another policy entry.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Once you have created the required policies, you can create an Approval Matrix that will make use of the Global Discount Policy levels.

To create an approval matrix

There must be Global Discount Policy levels for each level you want to use in the matrix.

1. Click the **Approval Matrix** tab or click

and then select **Approval Matrix**.
2. Click **New** to display the Approval Matrix Edit page.
3. Enter the required values for the following:

Option	Description
Matrix Owner	This is the Salesforce.com user account associated with the matrix. This means the matrix can also be accessed from the *Custom Links* section on that user's account page. The owner and the user do not need to be the same user account.
User	This is used to find the correct approval matrix, for when an object enters the intelligent approval process. For instance, if an opportunity enters the approval process and an approval step assignee type is an approval matrix
Is Active	Select this option to have the matrix available for inclusion in an approval process. **Note** **Is Valid** is an internal Salesforce.com setting that can be ignored.
Approval Level	This is the level the approval matrix will start at, which corresponds to the same level for global discount policies.
Next Level Approver	This approver is typically the same as *Approver 2*.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

4. Select the Approver, Authorized Discount, and Approver Level values for each approver you want to include in the matrix. The Authorized Discount value should match those of the Global Discount Policies.
5. Click **Save** to return to the Approval Matrix list - or - click **Save & New** and create another matrix.

If it is active, the approval matrix can now be selected when configuring approval process steps.

After you create an Approval Matrix record, you can see the following links when you edit the Approval Matrix record:

- Generate Approval Matrix: When you create a new approval matrix for a single user, you can simply click the Generate Approval Matrix link. This creates the matrix for a new user and adjusts any other matrices that have dependencies on the created batch job.
- Generate Approval Matrix for All: Click the Generate Approval Matrix for All if you have changed values in the Global Approver Settings (the threshold percentages) which requires that all matrices be regenerated and use a batch job mechanism as well.
- Set Next Level Approver: Enables you to change the next level approver specified in the matrix. For example, you can change Approver 2 to Approver 5.

Expected Behavior

The suggested way to use these matrices is as follows:

- For a single user, create a new approval matrix record and enter the minimum information such as User, isActive, isValid, (both true) and Approval Level. Click Generate Approvals Matrix to fill in the rest of the values of the matrix automatically.
- For multiple users, create a new approval matrix record for each user and enter the minimum information such as User, isActive, isValid, (both true) and Approval Level. Click Generate Approvals Matrix to fill in the rest of the values of the matrix automatically. Click Generate Matrix for All to do the same (this runs more jobs and updates to matrices for all users).
- For a bunch of users or whenever global discounts have been adjusted, pick any matrix record and click Generate Approval Matrices for All. Ensure that you specify the first and last matrix records so every single record gets updated.

Related fields can be used to add custom formula fields to Intelligent Approval criteria.

Specifically you can use related fields with:

- Approval Process Entry Criteria

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- Approval Step Entry Criteria
- Re-Approval Criteria
- Child and Search Filters
- Approval Rules Criteria - Both Dimension and Condition
- Approval Rule Entry Criteria - Approval conditions and Auto Reapproval conditions

When you configure a formula field to be used as a related field, it is automatically available with each of the criterias listed above.

To add business objects to Formula Field picklist

1. From Setup, select **Create > Objects > Formula Field (Approvals)**.
2. From **Custom Fields & Relationships**, click **Business Object**.
3. From **Picklist Values**, click **New**.
4. Enter the API Name for the objects you want to include, such as Apttus_Config2__ProductConfiguration__c and Apttus_Config2__LineItem__c.
5. Click **Save**.

The API names are now added to the picklist values.

The next time you create or edit a Formula Field (Approvals), based on the values in Step 4, *Product Configuration* and *Line Item* are available from the *Business Object* picklist.

To set up Formula Fields (Approvals)

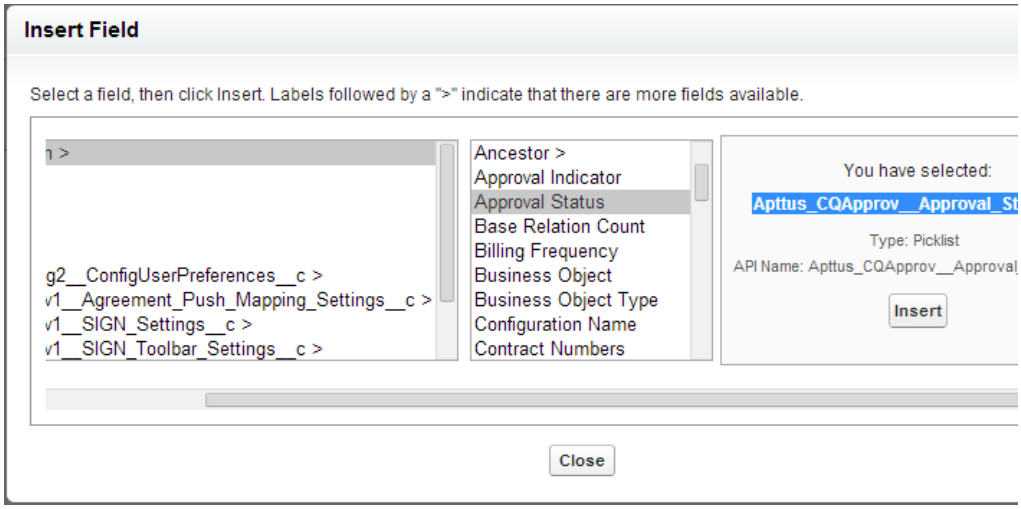
If you want additional Business Object options other than the default values, they must be added to the *Formula Field* (Approvals) business object picklist.

1. Click

and select **Formula Fields (Approvals)**.
2. Click **New** and enter the following:

Option	Description
Field Name	Name displayed in the Field list when setting entry criteria for a process, step f conditions, or re-approval criteria.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Option	Description
Type	Currently this value can only be *Relationship*.
Business Object	This is the business context object that relates to the context object of the appı process or approval step. The field will only be available in a process or step, v value matches that of the process or step. The available default values are *Sta Agreement*, *Agreement Line Item*, and *Opportunity*.
Formula	Contains fields from the business object, such asApttus_Config2__PriceListId_ Price List field on the Configuration object. It can also be used for fields that are associated with the business object via a field. For this you must use__rto indicate there is a relationship between the fie the object. For instance,Apttus_Config2__ConfigurationId__r.Apttus_QPConfig _Proposald__r.Payment_Term__cenables the Payment Term field to be used Product Configuration is the business object. You can use Salesforce Insert Field dialog to build your formula and then copy paste it into the Formula field. You can access the formula by creating a new fi appropriate business object. In this example the *Approval Status* for the *Produ Configuration* object. 
Description	Enter information to state the purpose of the formula field is.

3. Click **Save**.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

The new field is added to the Formula Field (Approvals) list and can be included in an approval process.

When you go to add criteria in approvals, the Field list will display the related field, with the format *Related(Field Name): Formula Field Label*. For example *Related(Price List): Price List*.

When you create step entry criteria for your approval process, you can now use custom child object fields with the expressions. Previously you were limited to the fields of the main context object.

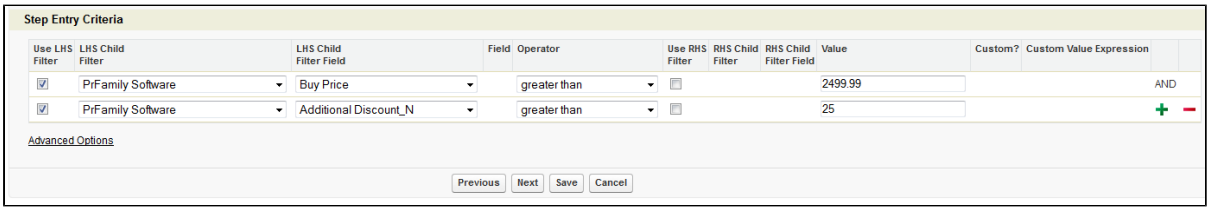
When creating an approval step you can choose to use a child filter. Here you can select from a list of search filters that are related to child objects. This enables you to then select any of that child object's fields. That field value can be compared with another child object field, a static value, or a custom expression.

As with any expression, you must ensure that the operators you choose are applicable to the data type of the fields you are comparing. For instance, when using a percentage field you can use operators such as *less than* and *greater than*, but not *contains* or *starts with*. As well the value you are comparing against would need to be another percentage field or a static value such as the number *75*.

Configuring the Search Filters

You must have created any custom child objects you want to use the filters.

1. Go to **Build > Installed Packages > Apttus Approvals Management** and under **Package Components** select **Business Object** for the **Search Filter** parent object.
2. Under **Picklist Values** click **New** and enter the API name for the child object you want to use with child filters. Repeat the step for each child object.
3. Go to the **Search Filters** tab or click ? Unknown Attachment and then **Search Filters**.
4. Click **New**, select the **Business Object** you want to use the filters with and click **Next**. This can include child objects of objects associated with an approval process.
5. Enter a **Filter Name** and **Description**.



Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

6. Enter the required **Filter Criteria**, which will be used in the step entry criteria for the approval process. It is this expression that forms the basis of the child filter expression in the step entry criteria, for determining if an approval step is used.
7. Click **Save**.

The child object will be available when you select *Use LHS Filter* or *USE RHS Filter*, when creating an approval process for its parent object.

Walkthrough

Filters must have been created already via the Search Filters tab.

1. For an approval process, click **New Approval Step**.
2. Enter a name for the step and click **Next**.
3. Click **Use LHS Filter** and the **LHS Child Filter** and **LHS Child Filter Field** drop-down lists are displayed. All search filters created for the child object of the approval process are available from the **LHS Child Filter** list.
4. Select the child object from the **LHS Child Filter** and select one of its fields from **LHS Child Filter Field**.
5. Select a valid operator for the field type and then select another filter or fixed value to compare it to.
6. Add further filters if necessary and then click **Next** to finish creating the step.

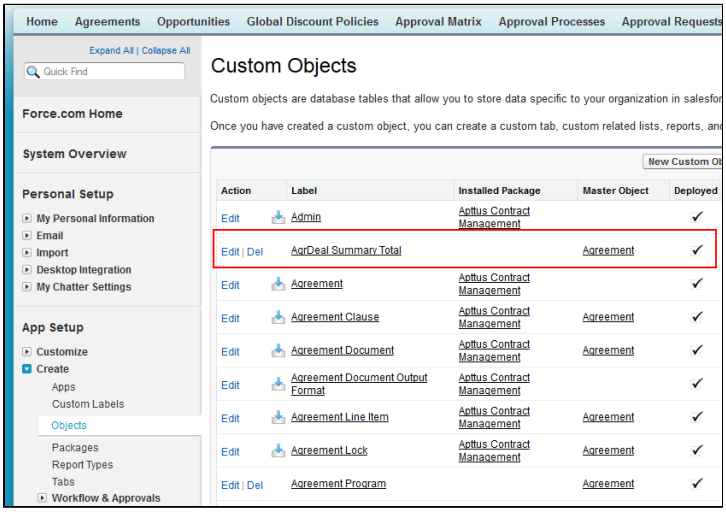
When an object record submitted for approval matches the step entry criteria, the approval process will be routed to that step's assignee.

Example: Child Object Filters

Using Agreements as an example, previously you could only use Agreement fields, such as Total Agreement Value, Category, and Status for entry criteria. With this feature you could create a new custom object and associate it with the Agreement object, enabling it to be used for step entry criteria.

Step 1: Create the custom child object for the Agreement object. In this instance that will be *AgrDeal Summary Total*. This will include fields used for indicating additional discounts for products included in an agreement.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



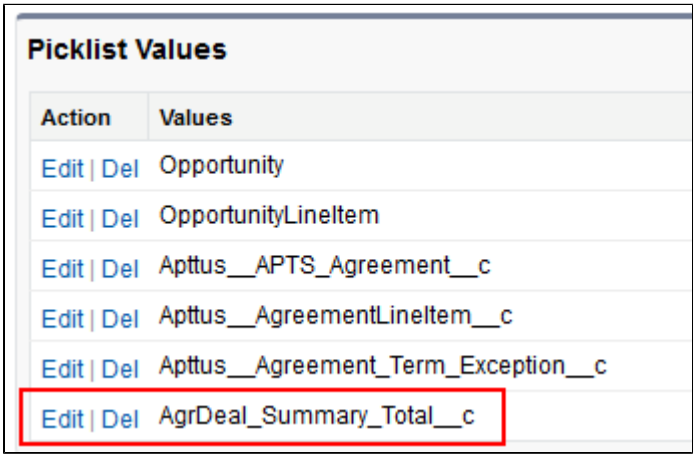
Step 2: After the new custom object has been created for Agreements, the *AgrDeal Summary Total* related list needs to be added to the *Agreements* page layout.

Step 3: Add *AgrDeal Summary Total* to the picklist for the Search Filter Object. This is required to have it available when you set up a Search Filter in the next step. You got to *Build > Installed Packages > Apttus Approvals Management > View Components* and select *Business Object* (Search Filter).

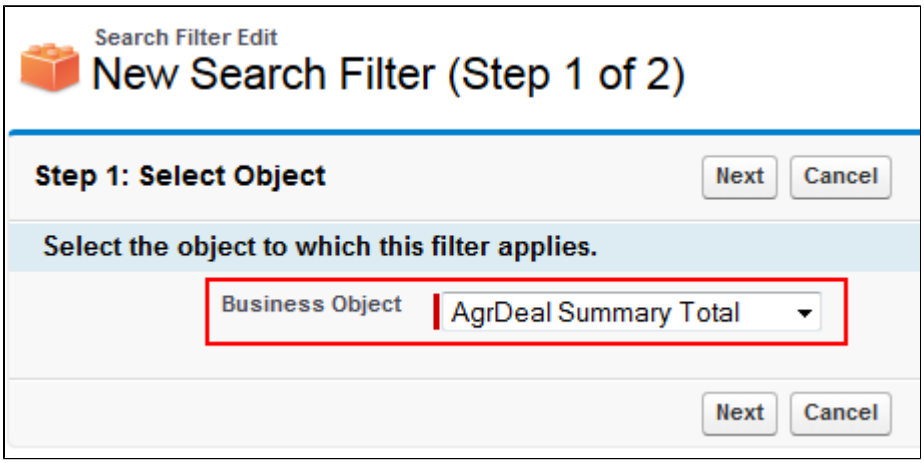
BackupUserSearch		Visualforce Page
BackupUserSearchController		Apex Class
BackupUserSearchTest		Apex Class
Business Object	Approval Process Instance	Custom Field
Business Object	Search Filter	Custom Field
Business Object	Approval Rule Dimension	Custom Field
Business Object	Approval Rule	Custom Field
Business Object Link	Approval Process Instance	Custom Field
Business Object Type	Approval Process Instance	Custom Field

The *AgrDeal Summary Total* API name needs to be entered into the picklist.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

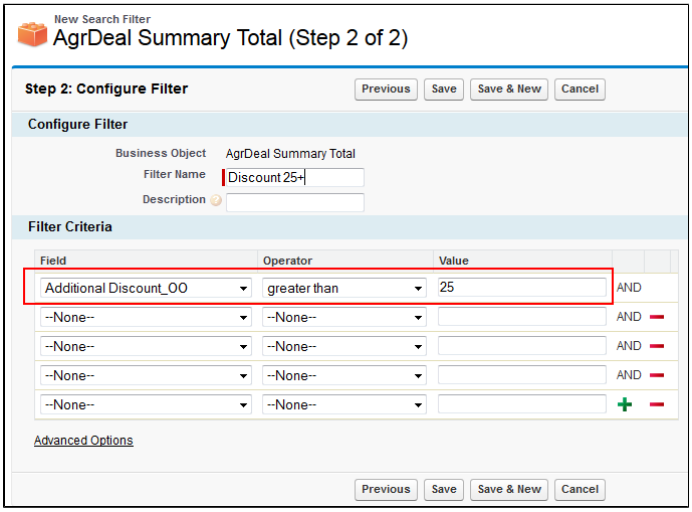


Step 4: Now that AgrDeal Summary Total had been added to the picklist values, a search filter can be created that references it. This is then referenced in the approval step entry criteria. Click ? Unknown Attachment and then *Search Filters*, to begin creating the new filter called *Discount 25+*.

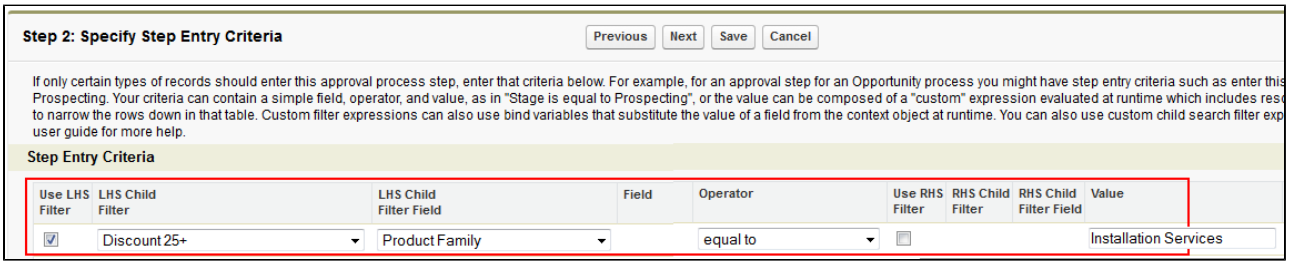


The expression you create for the search filter will be used to build the step entry criteria expression. Then when the *Additional Discount* value for an *AgrDeal Summary Total* record is greater than *25%*, the step entry criteria expression will be checked.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

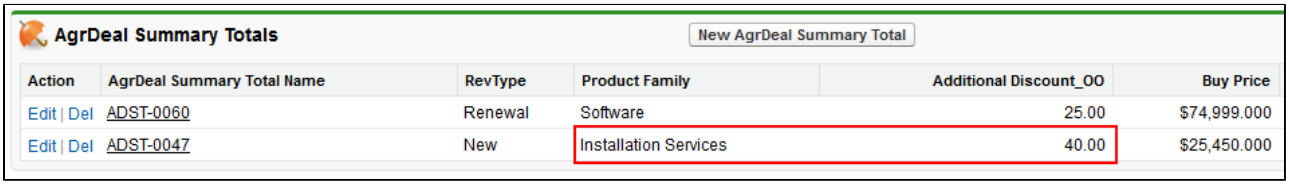


Step 5: Now an approval process step needs to be created which references that search filter. Go to the approval process for an Agreement and create a new step. In *Step 2*, click *Use LHS Filter* and from the *LHS Child Filter* list, select *Discount 25+*. This means only agreement records with an *AgrDeal Summary Total* record that has an *Additional Discount* greater than 25% may enter that step.



Because this step is to route approvals to users who are responsible for the Acme Data product, as well as having a discount of greater than 25%, the AgrDeal Summary Total record's *Product Family* field, must have a value of *Acme Data*. Select an assignee for the step and then save and activate the approval process.

Step 6: Now that the approval process and approval step have been activated, submit an agreement for approval that evaluates as true when compared with the step entry criteria. Here *ADST-0047* has a *40%* discount for the *Installation Services* product family.



Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

This meets the entry criteria as configured above and an approval request email is sent to the assignee for this step.

1. Go to **Setup > Develop > Apex Classes** and click **New**.
2. Copy and paste the code below and ensure the name of the new class is *CartViewController* .

```
/**
 *    Apttus CPQ Approval
 *    CartViewController
 *
 *  @2012-2013 Apttus Inc. All rights reserved.
 */
public with sharing class CartViewController  {
    // context id
    private ID contextId = null;
    // approval type
    private String approvalType = null;
    /**
     * Class Constructor
     * @param stdController the standard controller
     */
    public CartViewController(ApexPages.StandardController
stdController) {
        // get context id
        contextId = stdController.getId();
        // get default approval context type
        //approvalType = SystemUtil.getDefaultApprovalCtxType();
        approvalType = 'cart';
    }
    /**
     * Gets context object Id
     */
    public ID getCtxObjectId() {
        return contextId;
    }
    /**
     * Gets cart approval context type
     */
    public String getCtxApprovalType() {
        return approvalType;
    }
}
```


Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

3. Save the class and then go to **Pages** and click **New**.
4. Copy and paste the following code into the Visualforce Markup window

```
<apex:page standardController="Apttus_Proposal__Proposal__c"
    extensions="CartViewController">
    <apex:form >
        <apex:pageMessages id="errorPage" />
        <apex:outputPanel id="idApprovalContextPanel">
            <Apttus_CQApprov:ApprovalContextView contexSOId="{!
ctxObjectId}"
                contextApprovalType="{!ctxApprovalType}"/>
        </apex:outputPanel>
    </apex:form>
</apex:page>
```

5. Ensure that the **Name** is *CartView* and click **Save**.
6. Go to **Create > Objects** and click **Quote/Proposal**.
7. Scroll to **Page Layouts** and click **Edit** for the page layout you want to add Cart Approvals to.
8. From the **Visualforce Pages** window, drag and drop **CartView** onto the page.
9. Display the VisualForce Page Properties for CartView and select **Show scrollbars**.
10. Save the changes to the page.

The CartView page acts like a related list for displaying the Cart Approvals, so the next time you go to a Quote/Proposal record that has been submitted for approval from the Cart, the approval steps and associated approvers will be displayed.

You must finish configuring the other objects before the feature will work as expected.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Configuring Intelligent Workflow and Approvals for Custom Objects

Configuration Overview

After the Intelligent Approvals package has been installed, there are *Setup* configuration options that can be changed.

By default, the package installation sets up the majority of the application to be used as is; however, some organizational specific options can only be configured after the installation. Some post-package installation configuration must be done to best maximize the features available in Intelligent Approvals. There are also default settings that you may want to change, to better suit your business.

This section provides the workflow and the sequence of actions you have to define to enable Custom Object Approvals.

Workflow

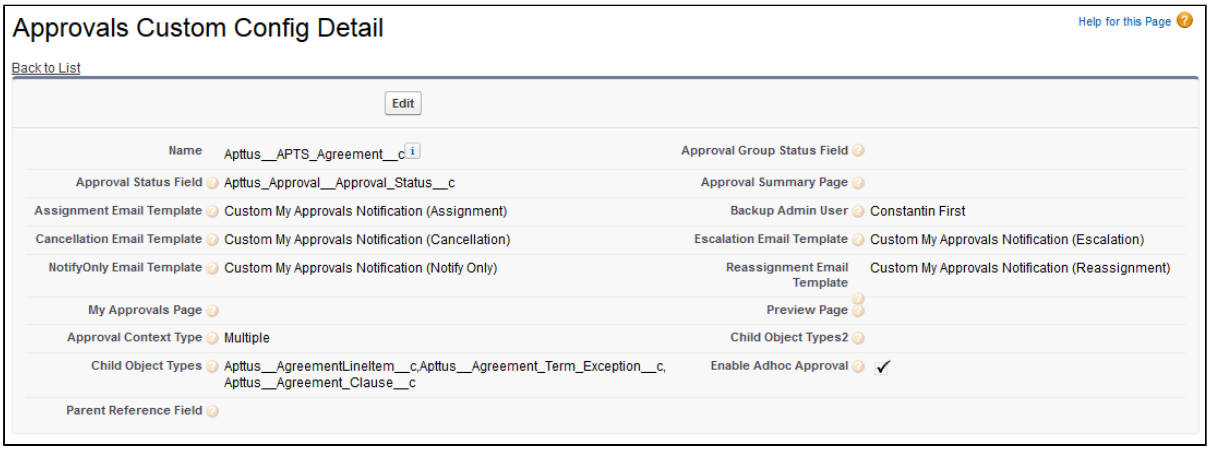
To do...	How to define...
Install required packages	Install the latest approvals and dependent packages.
Adding Values to Approval picklists	Add object names to processes, rules, and dimensions.
Approvals System Properties	Create a record in Approval System Properties and enter the requisite details. For details, see Mandatory Setting for Agreement Objects.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

To do...	How to define...
To configure custom object settings	Create a record in Approval Custom Config for the primary custom object- Setup the context type as Multiple if you are defining an approval process for the header and child object and set it as Single if you are using approvals only on one object.
Add pick list values for approval fields	• Create Approval Status and Approval Preview Status fields on the header object. • Create Approval Status and Approval Preview Status fields on the child object.
Configure Approval Required Check Settings	• Setup Search Filter (Entry Criteria) for header (e.g. Opportunity). • Setup Search Filter (Entry Criteria) for line items (e.g. Opportunity Products). • Create the Approval Required Check Trigger for the header and line item object. • Invoke the Approval Required Check API within the trigger for the header and line item object and click **Save**. • Set Header and line item approval status based on the Approval Required Check API. • Pass the line items that need to be evaluated for approvals when the line items and header information is created or updated. APIs to be invoked: ◦ Apttus_Approval.ApprovalsWebService.isApprovalRequired (customobjectAPIName, customobject.Id) ◦ Apttus_Approval.ApprovalsWebService.CheckIfApprovalRequired2 (headerIdStatus, childIdStatusList, modifiedChildObjectIds) Approval status at the line item as well as header should be set to Approval Required for preview / submit to work.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

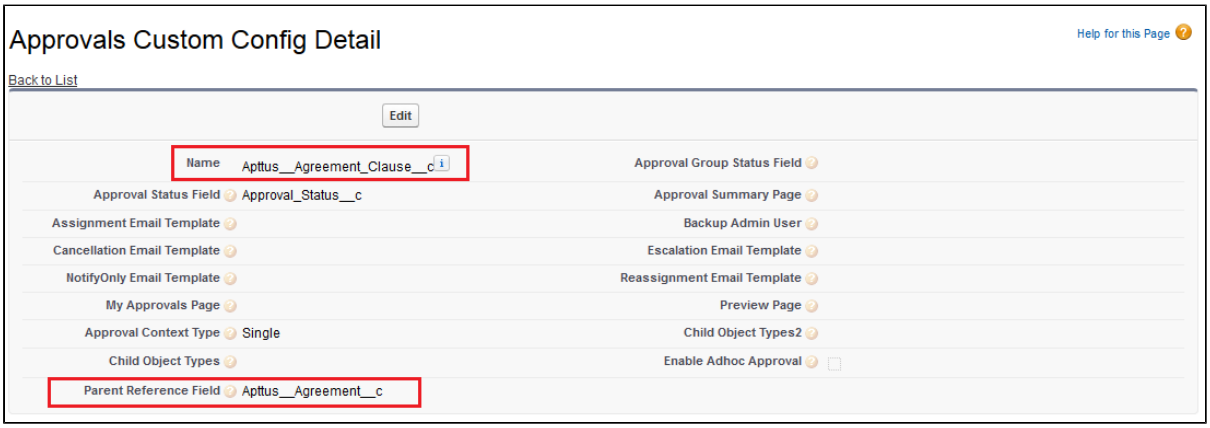
2. From the **Custom Setting Definition Detail** section, click **Manage** to display the current objects associated with Intelligent Approvals.
3. If it does not already exist, click **New** and enter Apttus__APTS_Agreement__c in the **Name** field, which is the API name for the agreement object to be used with approvals.
4. In the **Approval Status Field**, enter Apttus_Approval__Approval_Status__c or whatever the API name is for the picklist created for the custom object.
5. The custom summary page and templates you created should be entered in the **Approval Summary Page** and various **Email Template** fields. If you do not enter values, the default system values will be used.



6. Specify the **Approval Context Type** as *Single* or *Multiple.* If you want to use Header and line item approvals, set the **Approval Context Type** to *Multiple*. For header only approvals, set the **Approval Context Type** to *Single.*
   In our example, enter *Multiple* because we want to setup approval process on agreement header and line item level.
7. Specify the Child Object Type. The Child object type is associated with the approval process for a parent object. In our example, enter the API name of the child objects on which you want to setup approval process, such as Agreement Clause and Agreement Line Item.
8. You can enable ad hoc approvals for a custom object by selecting **Enable Ad Hoc Approval** .
9. In the **Parent Reference** field, enter the API name of the object with which you have either a master-detail or a look-up relationship. For example, if for the Agreement Term Exception record of **Approvals Custom Config**, if you want to create approval on Agreement object and it has a master detail relationship with Agreement Term Exception, so enter

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Apttus__Agreement__c in the **Parent Reference Field**.



10. Click **Save**.

The page and templates will be used by default for the next approval process created for the custom context object.

When creating an approval process, you can override these templates if necessary.

Optional Configuration

Optional Configuration

Auto-escalating Approval Requests	When an approval request is not approved, rejected, or reassigned within the allotted time, it can automatically be reassigned to a new approver so the approval process can continue.
Changing Approval Rule Step Behavior	Typically steps that cannot identify an assignee are sent to the backup administrator; however, you can change that behavior and have those steps skipped instead.
Changing the Assignee Search page results list	This controls the number of assignees that can be displayed on a single search page. Typically the default value of twenty is suitable for your organization, but you can increase or decrease the value

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Creating Approval Matrices	Matrices are used with *Global Discount Policies* to route approvals to users based on system-wide default discount percentages.
Approval Request History	When an Apttus approval process is initiated — by submitting or resubmitting an approval — for an agreement, term exception, or opportunity, an approval history record is created. The Approval request history Object comprises information for old approval requests such as, the approval status, the date of the request, who it was assigned to, and who the actual approver was.
Submitting a Request with Attachments	Enables you to submit your approval request with an attachment. To submit a request with attachment, ensure that you have created custom email notification templates and specified the name of each of the templates in the Approval Process of the object.
Approval Submission Comments	Approval submission comments enable you to add personalized comments when you submit an approval request. You can have a single comment at the process level or up to three comments at the step level.
Child Filter Objects	From 7.0 onwards you can use a child process to configure approvals on child objects. However, if you wish to create approval steps based on child object fields, you can use custom child object fields. Create an child filter expressions to filter the records based on child object fields.
Opportunity records and ACM	When Advanced currency management (ACM) is enabled in your org, you cannot have any Opportunity record fields of data type currency in your email templates or approval summary page.

Performance and Scalability

Performance and Scalability

Area	Detail
	When to use multiple approval process?

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Area	Detail
Multiple Approval Processes	When you have Region Based Approval variations, Business Unit Based Approvals variations, Channel Based Approvals variations. How do I configure multiple approval processes? Define mutually exclusive process entry criteria so that only one process is selected for a given primary object instance. Why do I configure multiple approval processes? Having multiple approval processes reduces the number of approval steps/criteria system needs to execute
Approval Rule Entry Criteria	Specify minimum approval conditions in Approval Rule entry criteria for Sub Process or Child Process steps to avoid evaluation of all approval rule entries every time.
Approval Required Check	Provides users visibility to whether approval is needed for header or line items without executing the entire approval process. Provides a mechanism to avoid approval process evaluation for a large number of scenarios.

Mandatory Configuration for Custom and Agreement Objects

This section outlines the mandatory settings to setup Approvals for your objects.

Approval System Properties

Approval System Properties

This section provides a brief description of all the Approval System Properties. Navigate to **Custom Settings > (Manage) Approval System Properties > (Edit) System Properties.**

Table 1.

Setting	Description
Name	System Properties. The default name for the system property settings.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Setting	Description
Backup Admin Profile	Specify the profile of backup administrators who can control the settings and approval profile.
Backup Admin User	Specify the full name or email address of the user who will serve as a backup administrator. ⚠ This is mandatory in the event you deactivate a user from the org. If there is no BackUp Admin User available, the system displays an error. This is also true where the email address being used is active but not the same address for a user in this org.
Enable Email Approval Response	Enables the approvers to approve or reject an approval request through e-mail. The approver can write APPROVE or REJECT in the first line of the email. The approval comments can be added from the second line onwards.
UI Assignee Search Page Size	Specify the number of rows the search result shows when you search for user roles, rules, queues, or users.
UI Custom Assignee Object Types	Specify the API names of the objects you want to use when defining custom assignee expressions.
Enable Approval Request Auto Escalation	Selecting this checkbox enables the system to escalate approval requests to users or queues if an approval action is pending for a specific period of time. The users to whom the request is escalated to and the period after which a request is escalated is specified in the approval process.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Setting	Description
Email Sender Display Name	Specify the origin of the email. If not specified, the value is the requester of the agreements and submitter for all other cases.
Cart Approval Context Type	Specify the context for which an approval process is applicable. The applicable values are cart-triggers an approval process for the entire cart, header-triggers an approval process for the header items of the cart only, and lineItem-triggers an approval process for the line items of the cart.
Admin User	Specify the name of the Admin User who is the default owner of all the activities created by the user.
Cart Approval Preview Page	Specify the name of the custom preview cart page that you want to use if you want to define and use a custom page to preview approvals.
Enable Approval Check On Quote Update	Is run by default for CPQ Approvals. Approval required check is run, whenever the Quote is updated. This flag enables the system to evaluate the approval process and if the entry criteria is satisfied, changes the status to Approval Required.
Enable Ad hoc Approver	Enables you to add the Ad hoc approver feature for an org.
Enable Resubmit	Enables you to define the behavior of the Submit for Approvals button in the Approvals related list of your object. This system property replaces the CancelPendingProcess parameter on the Preview and Submit formula button on your object. When selected, and user clicks Submit for Approvals, current approval requests are cancelled and new approval requests are resubmitted.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Setting	Description
	When deselected, and the and user clicks Submit for Approvals, the user cannot cancel and resubmit and ongoing approval request.
Enable Upload Attachment From Desktop	Enables you to browse and attach external documents from your local machine for **Submit with Attachments** action on Preview approvals page. This eliminates your effort to attach the required documents in Notes & Attachments related list of your object record before submitting the record for approval.

To set the Approval & Config System Properties

1. Go to **Setup > Build > Develop > Custom Settings** and click **Manage** for **Approvals System Properties**.
2. Click **Edit** beside **System Properties**.
3. For Cart Approval Context Type, enter one of the following:
    - **cart** - There will be one approval process for all the items in the cart.
    - **header**- The approval process is triggered only for the header items of the cart.
4. Click **Save**.

Link

Configuring Global Settings

Configuring Global Settings

Approvals custom configuration settings provide the global default values for using Approvals with different objects.

The backup admin user, summary page, and email templates are designated here so that they do not need to be selected each time you create an approval process. You can choose to override them for specific processes, but this ensures approval requests will work correctly regardless.

To configure global settings

You must have created the required custom pages and templates.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

1. Go to **Build > Develop > Custom Settings** and click **Approvals Custom Config**.
2. From the **Custom Setting Definition Detail** section, click **Manage** to display the current objects associated with Intelligent Approvals.
3. If it does not already exist, click **New** and enter API name of the Object in the **Name** field, which is the API name for the object to be used with approvals.
4. In the **Approval Status Field**, enter Approval_Status__c or whatever the API name is for the picklist created for the custom object.
5. The custom summary page and templates you created should be entered in the **Approval Summary Page** and various **Email Template** fields. If you do not enter values, the default system values will be used.
6. Specify the Approval Context Type as Single or Multiple. If you want an approval process to be triggered for Header and the Line items, enter Multiple. If you want to trigger an approval process for the header items only enter type as Single.
7. Specify the Child Object Types if child object types are associated in the approval process.
8. Click **Save**.

The page and templates will be used by default for the next approval process created for the context object.

When creating an approval process you can override these templates if necessary.

Setting up the Admin Profiles

Setting up the Admin Profiles

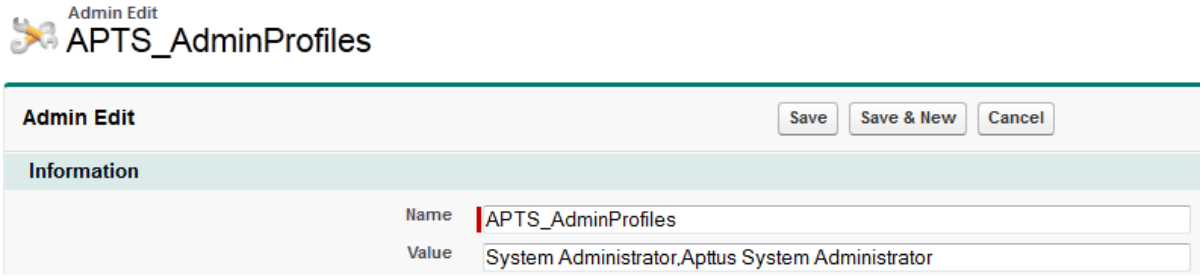
Admin profiles enable you to associate users — via their roles — with admin level access to Intelligent Workflow and Approvals.

To set up Admin Profiles in Approvals,

1. Select the **Admin** tab.
   - or -
   Select ✚ (All tabs) and select **Admin**.
2. Click **Go** to display all of the admin settings.
3. If **APTS_AdminProfiles** is listed, click **Edit**, enter the required profile names, separated by a comma, in the **Value** field and click **Save**.
   - or -
   If the setting is not displayed, click **New Admin**.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

4. Enter the name **APTS_AdminProfiles**, enter the required profile names, separated by a comma, in the **Value** field, and click **Save**.



Users associated with the profiles can now complete administrative tasks for Intelligent Workflow and Approvals.

Configuring Email Templates

Configuring Email Templates

Typically the easiest way to create your own custom template is to clone one of the email templates provided in the unmanaged Apttus samples package and then edit it. After that has been done you can then override the default email templates for all of your approval processes using APTS_ApprovalConfig or on an ad-hoc basis for specific approval requests.

The Apttus Approvals Management (Customization Samples) package provides email template examples for currently supported objects, as well as for Salesforce Cases, which can subsequently be used as the basis for creating email templates for custom objects you've configured yourself. Also note that Opportunity Product is also used to provide templates for further customization.

You have to specify the email templates in the Approval Process and in the Approvals Custom Config custom setting.

As well as providing samples for templates and the summary page, the pages that are used to provide approval functionality on the custom object record page are also included.

Note

As this package is unmanaged, it cannot be upgraded. If you want to move to the newest version, you must uninstall the existing package and then install the new package. It is recommended you uninstall the samples package after you have created your custom

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

templates and pages.
Queue email address cannot be used for notifications. If Queue has "Send Email to Members" box un-checked - email of current user will be used for notifications (not queue email address). This is due to Salesforce limitations which we cannot bypass.

Installing Customization Samples package

The Apttus Approvals Management (Customization Samples) package contains email templates, components, Visualforce pages and Apex controllers which can help you build you templates and approval summary pages for custom context objects.

Note

The samples contained in the package should not be used 'as is' and are only to be used in the development of your own bespoke templates and pages, and should not be installed in production.

Configuring Email Templates

For a process with header and child process steps, use the Apttus Approval Email Templates. Notification templates are used to create the notifications sent to approvers to alert them to pending approvals and to allow them to approve or decline a request without logging in to Salesforce.

The following approval email notification templates are available as a part of the standard Approvals Management package. These are generic email notification templates that can be used for approvals on any standard or custom objects without any change. However, these notification templates can be customized as needed. Clone these templates if you want to customize your own template.

To view the Quote Header name in the My Approvals page, you must change your existing process definitions or custom config settings to use the new templates provided with this release. If you have already customized an email template to use with CPQ Cart Approvals, you need to include the MyCartApprovalsEmail class inside your custom Visualforce template to correctly launch the My Approvals page that shows the quote id and name fields.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Sample	Component Type	Description
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Assignment)	Visualforce Email Template	This template is used to notify users they must decide on an approval request.
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Reassignment)	Visualforce Email Template	This template is used to notify users that an approval request task initially assigned to them has been reassigned to someone else.
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Escalation)	Visualforce Email Template	This template is used for auto-escalation. Configuration is required to activate this feature.
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Cancellation)	Visualforce Email Template	This template is used to notify users that an approval request has been cancelled.
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Notify Only)	Visualforce Email Template	This template is used to notify users only.

- You can select who you want to be displayed in the *From* field, when Intelligent Workflow and Approvals emails are sent.

  You can select to have emails indicate they were sent by an *Approver*, *Requester*, or *Submitter* in the *From* field.

Approver	This value comes from the last person in the chain of approval requests to approve the request. For the initial approval request email - before anyone has actually approved it - the submitter is used.
Requester	This value comes from the Agreement record that is submitted for approval. For example: Requestor Ben Easter Requester is only valid for agreements and agreement term exceptions.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Submitter	This value comes from the user who clicks *Submit* in the *Approvals* related list for the object record that is being approved.

If the setting is not configured, it defaults to the name of the requester for agreements, otherwise it defaults to the name of the submitter.

- To enable approval requests to be decided via email, an email service and Approval System Properties settings for emails must be configured.

  Typically an approval request will be sent to the designated assignee, from where they can access Salesforce to see more details and approve the request; however, by ensuring these settings are configured correctly, an assignee can indicate their decision and progress the approval by simply replying to the request email.

To configure the email service

1. Go to **Build > Develop > Email Services** and click **New Email Service**.
2. For **Email Service Name**, enter ApprovalReplyService and for Apex Class, **select ApprovalEmailHandler**.
3. Select **Active** and for **Route Error Emails to This Email Address** enter the email address of a user with admin level access. The remaining settings are not required, but may be used if necessary.
4. Click **Save** and **New Email Address** and then enter ApprovalReplyService for email address.
5. Select **Active**, select a **Context User** and click **Save**. The email address is automatically generated for your Salesforce org, apart from the text before@which you entered in Step 4. For more details, see Salesforce Help.

This email service can now be used to ensure approval request emails are handled as expected.

Complete the task, *To set the email system properties*.

To set the email system properties

You must have configured your email service, so you can enter the address is Step 2 below.

1. Go to **Build > Develop > Custom Settings** and click **Manage** for **Approvals System Properties**.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

2. Click **Edit** and ensure the **Email Approval Service Address** is the one that was automatically generated by the system when you configured the email service.
3. Select the checkbox for **Enable Email Approval Response** and click **Save**.
4. To enable approval email response ensure that you follow the steps at Enable Email Approval Response.

> Queue email address cannot be used for notifications. If Queue has "Send Email to Members" box un-checked - email of current user will be used for notifications (not queue email address). This is due to Salesforce limitations which we cannot bypass.

When someone replies to an approval request via email, the address their email is sent to is the one set in the Email Approval Service Address field and selecting Enable Email Approval Response means they can enter *Approve*, *Approved*, *Yes*, *Reject*, *Rejected*, or *No* to decide on the approval without logging into Salesforce.

Bounce back emails

If you make a spelling mistake when replying to an approval request email the system can send you a 'bounce back' email to inform you an error has occurred. As long as the previous tasks have been completed for the email service and email system properties, this will occur automatically.

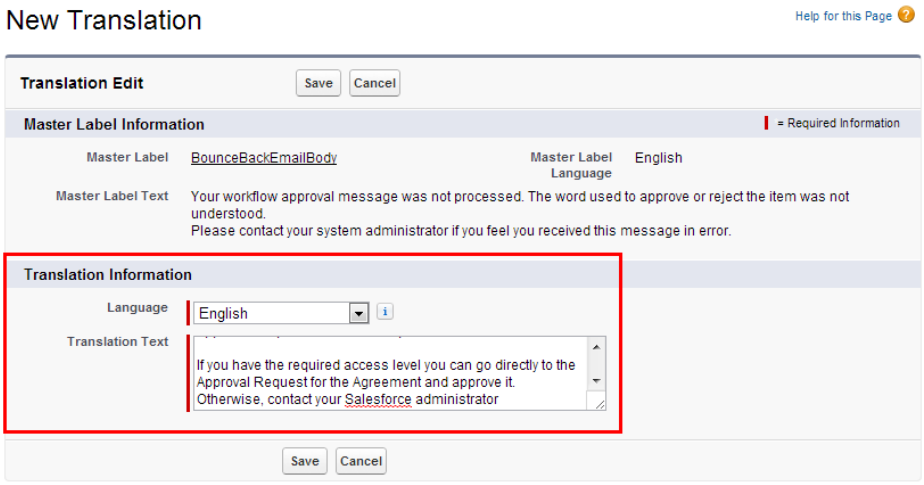
When you reply to an approval request email by typing in one of the supported words (*Approve*, *Approved*, *Yes*, *Reject*, *Rejected*, *No*), the approval request status will be updated accordingly in the system. If you make a typo when you do this, no update can be made. This feature enables you to be informed of the mistake and make the necessary correction to ensure the approval process progresses as intended.The email will be sent to the approver who made the mistake only.If you do not want to use the default text for the email, you can use Salesforce Translation Workbench functionality to customize the text. A custom label is used to provide the content for the body of the email and you can use translation text to override this.

To customize the bounce back email text

You must have enabled the Translation Workbench for your org.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

1. Go to **Build > Create > Custom Labels** and select **BounceBackEmailBody**.
2. Click **New Local Translations / Overrides** to display the New Translation page.
3. Select the **Language** and enter the text you want included in the email and click **Save**.



The next time a bounce back email is sent, the body of the email will use the content in the **Translation Text** field for the corresponding language.

You can edit the text as required and also add different versions for multiple languages.

- Default email templates provide the ability to use Intelligent Approvals out of the box and begin testing approval process workflows quickly; however, if you want to have bespoke emails for your organization or you want to attach documents to approval request emails, you must use custom email templates. Email alerts are triggered by workflow rules and can make use of the same email templates.

  Typically the easiest way to create your own custom template is to clone one of the email templates provided in the unmanaged Apttus samples package and then edit it. You cannot clone the standard email templates included in the *Apttus Approvals Management* package.

  The *Apttus Approvals Management* package provides email template examples for Agreements, Opportunities, and Term Exception Approvals. *Apttus Quote/Proposal Approvals Management* provides examples for Quotes/Proposals and Quote Line Items.

  After that has been done, you can then override the default email templates for all of your approval processes using Approvals Custom Config Custom Settings, APTS_ApprovalConfig Admin Settings, or on an ad-hoc basis for specific approval processes.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Note

Which email template is used works as follows:

- Email templates selected in an Approval Process override templates in Approvals Custom Config.
- Templates in **Approvals Custom Config** override templates in APTS_AppprovalConfig.
- Templates in **APTS_ApprovalConfig** override the system defaults.

To customize email templates

You must have installed the *Apttus Approvals Management* and *Apttus Quote/Proposal Approvals Management* packages.

Go to **Administration Setup > Communication Templates > Email Templates.**

1. From the **Folder** list, select **Apttus Email Templates** and then select the email template you want to use as the basis for your customized template.
2. Click **Clone**, enter the required template details and click **Save**. **Template Unique Name** is the value that must be used when you override the default email templates.
3. Click **Edit Template** to display the Visualforce editor and make the required changes to the template. You should be familiar with Visualforce pages and apex code to complete this step.

Attention

When you edit the text and code in a template you should be sure that the *Approval Request ID* and *Approval User ID* fields are still included in the template. These are required for the approvals engine to route emails correctly and retain the ability to decide on an email by responding to it. When you customize an email template ensure that you retain the Context.recipientSO.Id email markup instead of using Context.requestSO. Apttus_Approval__Assigned_To_Id__c. Not retaining the original markup causes an email notification issue where some of the recipients do not receive an email notification.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

> Ensure that you set the Target Object Id in the template. For more information, refer to TargetObjectId.

4. Click **Save** to return to the main template view page.
5. In the **Standard Attachments** section, select **Attach File** and select a file you want attached to each request.
6. Click **Send Test** and **Verify Merge Fields** to display the Preview Template window.
7. Select a user and an approval request for an object that matches the object the template will be used for, select any email address and click **OK**. The email can be used to verify that all the fields have the expected values and that any attachments are included.
8. To enable approval email response ensure that you follow the steps at Enable Email Approval Response.

Templates that are **Available For Use** can now be used for any subsequent approval requests.

You can make the template a default template or to override the default templates on an ad-hoc basis, you can now use this template when you create an approval process.

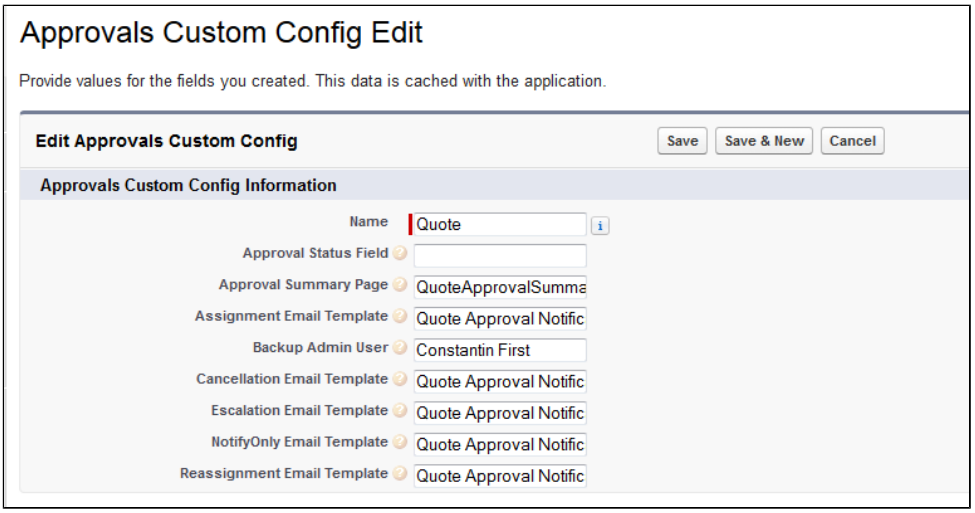
To override default email templates with Custom settings

You must have customized templates you can reference.

1. Go to **Build > Develop > Custom Settings** and click **Approvals Custom Config.**
2. From the **Custom Setting Definition Detail** section, click **Manage** to display the current objects associated with Intelligent Approvals.
3. Click **Edit** beside the object that you want to edit email templates for.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

4. Enter the **Name** of the customized email template in the appropriate field.



5. Click **Save** when complete.

The templates referenced in the template fields will be used as the global Intelligent Approval default email templates for that object. When the Process Definition Notification Templates value fields are left blank, while creating an approval process, these templates will be used.

To override default email templates with Admin settings

You must have customized templates you can reference.

1. Select the **Admin** tab - or - select ➕ and select **Admin**.
2. Click **Go** to display all of the admin settings.
3. If **APTS_ApprovalConfig** is listed, select it, then click **Edit** and proceed to Step 5.
4. If it is not listed click **New Admin**, for **Name** enter APTS_ApprovalConfig and for **Value** enter XML.
5. In the **Code** field enter the references to the custom email templates for each of the objects you are using with Intelligent Approvals.
   See, Appendix B - Email Examples, if you need help with formatting of the XML code.

The templates referenced in the Code field will be used as the global Intelligent Approval default email templates. When the Process Definition **Notification Templates** value fields are left blank, these templates will be used.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

To edit email alerts

Go to **Build > Create > Workflow & Approvals > Email Alerts**

1. Click **Edit** beside **Approval Request Comments Entered**. Since it is a part of the managed package, you cannot change the description or unique name.
2. Click and select the required email template.
3. Select the **Recipient Type** and the related recipients and click **Save**.

Subsequent email alerts that are sent when approval request comments are entered, will use the new email template.

Any other email alerts can be edited in the same manner.

Settings for Email Reply

Create email service: Go to **Setup > Develop > Email Services.**

Accept Email From should contain the domains which we plan to use: For Example: Accept Email From: apttus.com,yahoo.com, gmail.com

In the Email Addresses section, click **New Email Address** and **Accept Email** From: apttus.com,yahoo.com, gmail.com and click **Save**. New email address should be created in the format “approval_email_service@t8l0k46ikux0mfg3lk083tqdn2qetmjc7cosf2m5v92hp70s1.11-fk7eai.cs18.apex.sandbox.salesforce.com”.

Custom Label setting:

Edit the **Custom Label ApttusEMailServiceAddress**. Ensure that the value of the custom label matches that of the Email Address specified in Email Services.

In the **Local Translations / Overrides** section, click **New Local Translations / Overrides**.

Copy the string (Email Address) from Email Service- Email Addresses section and paste it in the Translation Text box.

Click **Save**.

Approvals System Properties:

Email Approval Service Address should contain same string from Email Service- Email Addresses page.

Email Templates:

Should contain the reply to as below:replyTo="{!$Label.Apttus_Approval__ApttusEMailServiceAddress}"

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Whenever a reassigned or a delegate approver approves or rejects a request, the next approver does not recieve an email Notification. If the previous approver has a Yahoo email address, the email is not routed to the next approver. Follow the DMARC guidelines and the steps listed at Google Support and Yahoo Support to ensure email notifications are generated and sent.

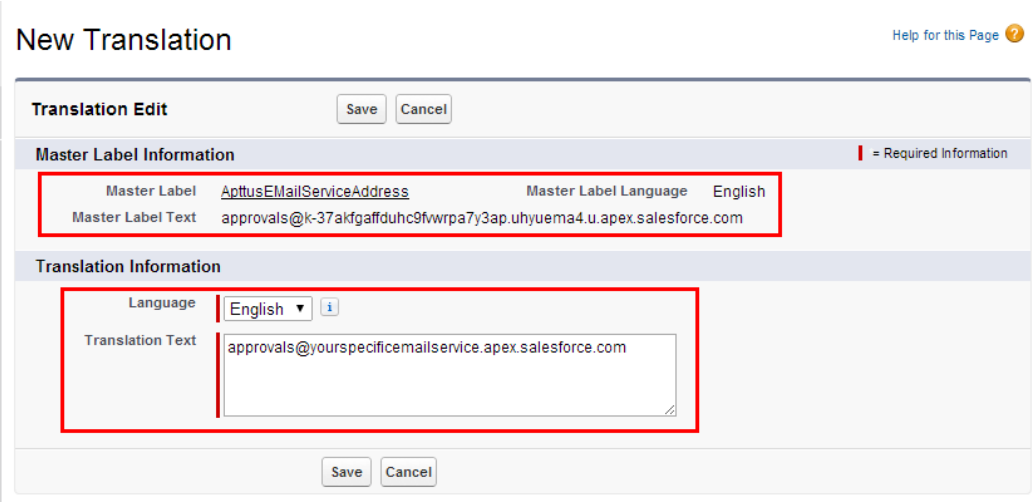
- There are five new email templates used by Consolidated Approvals and to ensure that emails are sent to the correct address, you must configure a custom label used by the emails. Each email template references the same label, so you only need to configure the one custom label as it affects each template.

```
<messaging:emailTemplate subject="{!$Label.ApprovalRequestsFor} '{!relatedTo.Object_Name__c}'
                         recipientType="User"
                         relatedToType="Approval_Request__c"
                         replyTo="{!$Label.ApttusEMailServiceAddress}"
                         language="{!recipient.LanguageLocaleKey}">
```

  You must have already configured your email service.

  1. From **Setup**, go to **Develop > Email Services** and click the **Email Service Name** *ApprovalReplyService.*
  2. Copy the system generated **Email Address**, which is required in the upcoming steps.
  3. From **Setup**, go to **Create > Custom Labels** and select **ApttusEmailServiceAddress**.
  4. Click **New Local Translations / Overrides** to display the Translation Edit page.
  5. The **Master Label Information** section displays the text that is used by default, which points to a dummy email service that you cannot use with your org.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



6. In the **Translation Information section**, select **English** from the **Language** list and in the **Translation Text** field, paste in the email address copied in Step 2.
7. Click **Save**.

The label is now updated with the email address for your org.

When consolidated approval emails are next sent, they will be routed to the correct users.

Setting up Intelligent Approval Flag

Intelligent Approval Flag

If you define an approval process for a specific object and want the process to be initiated on click of a button, navigate to **Create > Objects > <<Object Name>>Quote > <<Field Name>>Configure Products(Field) > Edit** the formula field and add **useAdvancedApproval=true**. For example, IF (LEN(Apttus_QPConfig__PriceListId__c) > 0 , HYPERLINK("/apex/Apttus_QPConfig__ProposalConfiguration?id=" &Id&"& **useAdvancedApproval=true**&useDealOptimizer=true", IMAGE("/resource /Apttus_QPConfig__Button_Configure", "Configure Products"),"_self"), NULL).

Creating Search Filters

Creating Search Filters (Approval)

The two Filter Type options (Child Filter and Entry Criteria) serve two different purposes.

Entry Criteria	

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

	This is required for approvals to be intiated from the Shopping Cart. To improve performance, the system will check if there are any Entry Criteria search filters that match the attributes in the Shopping Cart and set the approval status to Approval Required. You can have the entry criteria at the line item to set the approval status to Approval Required or Approval Triggered.
Child Filter	This is required to have a header level approval step entry criteria that makes use of the line item fields for the products in the Shopping Cart. After you create a child filter, you then need to create step entry criteria using child filters that mirrors the expression used in the child filter.

Configuring Search Filters

Search filters of type Entry Criteria are used to check whether the contents of a shopping cart require approval before it can be finalized.

If you want approvals to be triggered at the *Shopping Cart Header* level, then you need to configure search filters based on the *Product Configuration* context object. If you want approvals to be triggered at a specific Cart Line Item level, then you would configure search filters for the Line Item context object. Additionally if you want consolidated approvals for the whole Cart/Product Configuration, then you would create both.

Configuring Search Filters - this adds Product Configuration to the Search Filter object picklist so you can create search filters that use these objects for their entry criteria

Creating Search Filters - the Search Filters are used to determine if the products in the Shopping Cart require approval.

To configure Search Filters (Approvals)

1. Go to **Setup > Build > Create > Objects** and select **Search Filter (Approvals)**.
2. From the **Custom Fields & Relationships** section, select **Business Object**.
3. From **Picklist Values**, click **New** and enter the API names for the cart and the line items: Apttus_Config2__ProductConfiguration__cfor Header level approvals andApttus_Config2__LineItem__cfor Line Item level approvals.
4. Click **Save**. The values are added to the **Picklist Values** list.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

5. Click **Back to Search Filter (Approvals)** and from the **Custom Fields & Relationships** section, select **Filter Type**.
6. From **Picklist Values**, click **New** and enterChild FilterandEntry Criteria.
7. Click **Save**.

The values are added to the picklists, which are required to create search filters.

You can create *Search Filters (Approvals)* for controlling which carts are checked to see if they need approval.

To create Search Filters (Approvals)

1. Click ✚ and select **Search Filter (Approvals)**.
2. Click **New Search Filter (Approvals)** and select either:
   - **Product Configuration** - select this if you want the filter to be at the Product Configuration/Shopping Cart (Header) context object level.
   - **Line Item** - select this if you want the filter to be at the Line Item context object level, which are the individual line items within the cart.
3. Click **Next** to display the *Configure Filter* page.
4. From **Filter Type**, select one of the following:
   - **Child Filter** - This enables you to have step entry criteria within your approval process that references the child record fields of the main context object. Typically this enables you to use Line Item fields with your *Product Configuration* approval process. The *Line Item Child Filters* you create here, enable you to have them available for approval step entry criteria.
   - **Entry Criteria** - is used to indicate that the search filter will be used for the *Approval Required* check, which checks to see whether the quote or quote line item values require the shopping cart to undergo approval. You are effectively having an additional level of entry criteria for approvals here, before the system searches for matching approval processes. You must have at least one of these for approvals to be available from the shopping cart.
5. Enter a required **Filter Name** and **Sequence**. The sequence is used to determine the order in which the search filters will check if approvals are required.
6. Enter the filter criteria, which is used to determine if the quote requires approval.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

7. Click **Save**.

The Search Filter is now active and if it is a Filter Type of *Entry Criteria* it will be used by the system to determine if a Shopping Cart requires approval.

You must create an approval process that can be used with the Shopping Cart.

Link

Configuring Email Templates for Custom Objects

Typically the easiest way to create your own custom template is to clone one of the email templates provided in the unmanaged Apttus samples package and then edit it. After that has been done you can then override the default email templates for all of your approval processes using APTS_ApprovalConfig or on an ad-hoc basis for specific approval requests.

The Apttus Approvals Management package provides email template examples for currently supported objects, as well as for Salesforce Cases, which can subsequently be used as the basis for creating email templates for custom objects you've configured yourself. Also note that Opportunity Product is also used to provide templates for further customization.

You have to specify the email templates in the Approval Process and in the Approvals Custom Config custom setting.

As well as providing samples for templates and the summary page, the pages that are used to provide approval functionality on the custom object record page are also included.

Note

As this package is unmanaged, it cannot be upgraded. If you want to move to the newest version, you must uninstall the existing package and then install the new package. It is recommended you uninstall the samples package after you have created your custom templates and pages.

The Apttus Approvals Management package contains email templates, components, Visualforce pages and Apex controllers which can help you build you templates and approval summary pages for custom context objects.

Note

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

The samples contained in the package should not be used 'as is' and are only to be used in the development of your own bespoke templates and pages, and should not be installed in production.

Configuring Email Templates

For a process with header and child process steps, use the Apttus Approval Email Templates. Notification templates are used to create the notifications sent to approvers to alert them to pending approvals and to allow them to approve or decline a request without logging in to Salesforce.

The following approval email notification templates are available as a part of the standard Approvals Management package. These are generic email notification templates that can be used for approvals on any standard or custom objects without any change. However, these notification templates can be customized as needed. Clone these templates if you want to customize your own template.

Sample	Component Type	Description
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Assignment)	Visualforce Email Template	This template is used to notify users they must decide on an approval request.
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Reassignment)	Visualforce Email Template	This template is used to notify users that an approval request task initially assigned to them has been reassigned to someone else.
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Escalation)	Visualforce Email Template	This template is used for auto-escalation. Configuration is required to activate this feature.
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Cancellation)	Visualforce Email Template	This template is used to notify users that an approval request has been cancelled.
		This template is used to notify users only.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Sample	Component Type	Description
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Notify Only)	Visualforce Email Template	

Global Settings for Custom Objects and its Related Objects

Approvals custom configuration settings provide the global default values for using Approvals with different objects.

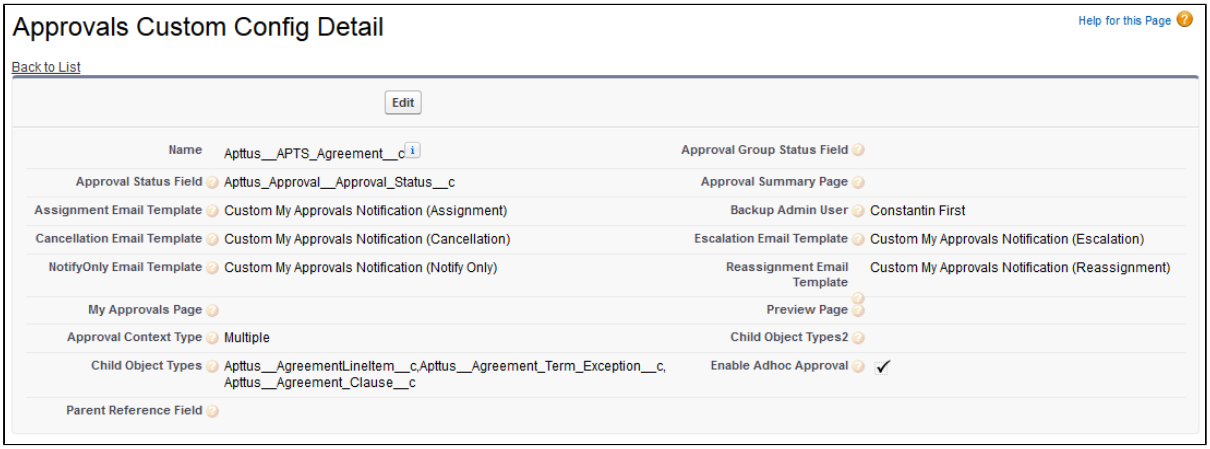
The backup admin user, summary page, and email templates are designated here so that they do not need to be selected each time you create an approval process. You can choose to override them for specific processes, but this ensures approval requests will work correctly regardless.

To configure global settings

You must have created the required custom pages and templates.

1. Go to **Build > Develop > Custom Settings** and click **Approvals Custom Config**.
2. From the **Custom Setting Definition Detail** section, click **Manage** to display the current objects associated with Intelligent Approvals.
3. If it does not already exist, click **New** and enter Apttus__APTS_Agreement__c in the **Name** field, which is the API name for the agreement object to be used with approvals.
4. In the **Approval Status Field**, enter Apttus_Approval__Approval_Status__c or whatever the API name is for the picklist created for the custom object.
5. The custom summary page and templates you created should be entered in the **Approval Summary Page** and various **Email Template** fields. If you do not enter values, the default system values will be used.

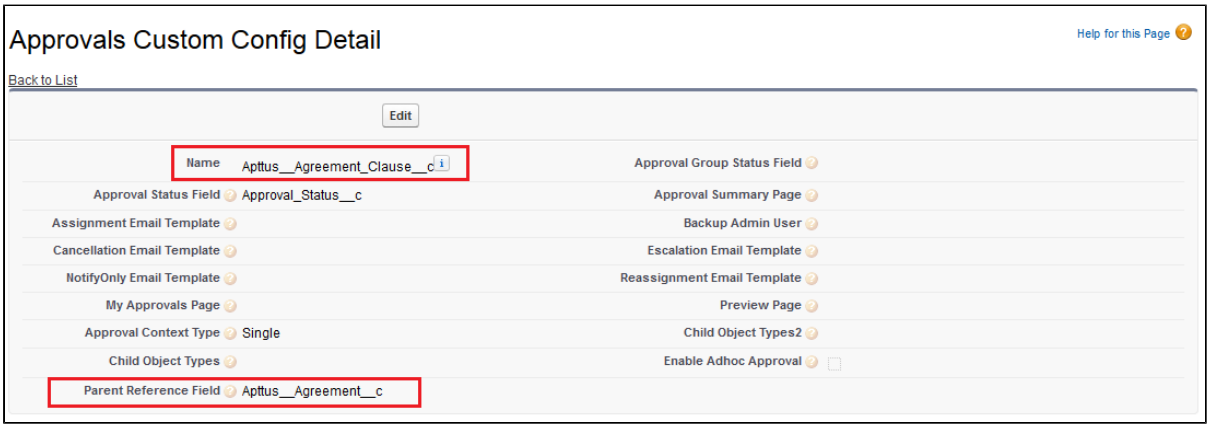
Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



6. Specify the **Approval Context Type** as *Single* or *Multiple.* If you want to use Header and line item approvals, set the **Approval Context Type** to *Multiple*. For header only approvals, set the **Approval Context Type** to *Single.*
   In our example, enter *Multiple* because we want to setup approval process on agreement header and line item level.
7. Specify the Child Object Type. The Child object type is associated with the approval process for a parent object. In our example, enter the API name of the child objects on which you want to setup approval process, such as Agreement Clause and Agreement Line Item.
8. You can enable ad hoc approvals for a custom object by selecting **Enable Ad Hoc Approval** .
9. In the **Parent Reference** field, enter the API name of the object with which you have either a master-detail or a look-up relationship. For example, if for the Agreement Term Exception record of **Approvals Custom Config**, if you want to create approval on Agreement object and it has a master detail relationship with Agreement Term Exception, so enter

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Apttus__Agreement__c in the **Parent Reference Field**.



10. Click **Save**.

The page and templates will be used by default for the next approval process created for the custom context object.

When creating an approval process, you can override these templates if necessary.

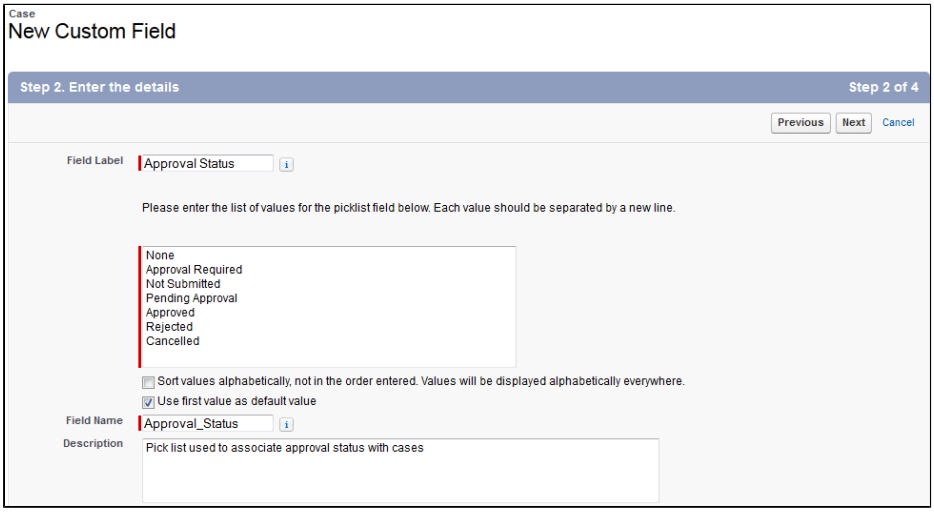
Adding Approval Status to Objects

After the picklists have been set for objects, it's time to set the object picklist field so that Approval Status is available on the object record.

To add a picklist field for approvals to objects

1. Go to **Build > Customize > {Object Name} > Fields**.
2. In the **Custom Fields & Relationships** section, click **New**.
3. Select **Picklist** data type and click **Next.**
4. On the Details page, enter the following to ensure approval statuses will be available for the custom object and click **Next**.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



5. Select which users will be able to see the picklist and click **Next**.
6. Select which page layouts will include the picklist and click **Save**.

The **Approval Status** picklist is added to the **Custom Fields & Relationships** related list and the API Name *Approval_Status__c* is automatically added to the picklist.

Adding Values to Approval picklists

When creating an approval process, to be able to associate it and its various components with a custom object, you must have the custom object available from approval picklists.

Any part of the approval process creation that includes linking approvals to a context business object, needs to have the custom object added to it. This includes the approval process, approval rule dimension, approval rule, and search filter.

To add a new Object to Approval Process picklist

1. Go to **Build > Create > Objects > Approval Process** and click **Object Label**.
2. In the **Picklist Values** section, click **New**.
3. Enter Object Name in the text field and then select **Approval Process**.
4. Click **Save**.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Object is added to the Picklist Values list for the Approval Process.

The custom object API name must be added to the pick list.

To add API name to Approval Process picklist

1. Go to **Build > Create > Objects > Approval Process** and click **Object Type**.
2. In the **Picklist Values** section, click **New**.
3. Enter Object API name in the text field and then select **Approval Process**.
4. Click **Save**.

The Object is added to the Picklist values and can now be associated with an approval process during the creation process.

To add API name to Approval Rule Dimension picklist

1. Go to **Build > Create > Objects > Approval Rule Dimension**.
2. In the **Custom Fields & Relationships** section, click **Business Object**.
3. In the **Picklist Values** section, click **New**.
4. Enter Object API Name in the text field.
5. Click **Save**.

The Object can now be associated with dimensions during the creation process

To add API name to Approval Rule picklist

1. Go to **Build > Create > Objects > Approval Rule**.
2. In the **Custom Fields & Relationships** section, click **Business Object**.
3. In the **Picklist Values** section, click **New**.
4. Enter Object API name in the text field.
5. Click **Save**.

The Object can now be associated with approval rules.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

To add API name to Search Filter picklist

1. Go to **Build > Create > Objects > Search Filter**. In instances when there are multiple options, be sure to select the *Search Filter* associated with *Apttus Approvals Management*.

2. In the **Custom Fields & Relationships** section, click **Business Object**.
3. In the **Picklist Values** section, click **New**.
4. Enter Object API Name in the text field.
5. Click **Save**.

Configuring My Approvals and Approvals Pages

Pre requisite:

Before you start configuring the new buttons on your context object, ensure that you have created a record with the API name of the context object in the **Approvals Custom Config** available at **Setup > Develop > Custom Settings**.

For example, if you want to configure Approvals on Agreement object and its Child objects, create a record for each of the objects in the **Approvals Custom Config** and perform the following steps. So, to configure Approvals for Agreement and Agreement Clause objects, create 2 records with the API names, Apttus__APTS_Agreement__c and Apttus__Agreement_Clause__c respectively. For more details, refer to Configuring Global Settings for Objects.

To enable Approvals for your context object, you must configure the following 2 buttons and place them on your object record's page layout.

- **Preview & Submit Approval** - For actions such as **Preview**, **Submit**, **Recall for Submitter** .
- **My Approvals** - For actions such as **Approve**, **Reject**, **Add Ad hoc Approver**, **Reassign**.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Configuring the My Approvals button

The My Approvals page is the page within Salesforce where you can act on the approval requests assigned to you.

The My Approvals page is primarily used by the requester for the following tasks.

- View the list of items that need approval from the current logged in approver
- To take ownership of the approval items that are assigned to queues or roles, if the current user is a member of the queue / role
- To approve or reject one or more assigned approval items
- To add ad hoc approver to the list of approvers

For configuring **My Approvals** button for your context object, follow any one of the following procedures:

- Creating a custom button for your context object

1. Go to **Setup > Create > Objects** and search for your object.
2. In the **Buttons, Links, and Actions** section, click **New Button or Link.**
3. In the Label field, enter **My Approvals**.
4. In the **Display Type**, select *Detail Page Button*.
5. In the **Behavior** drop-down list, select *Display in existing window without sidebar or header*.
6. In the **Content Source** drop-down list, select *URL*.
7. Enter the following formula in the Advanced Formula section, **/apex/Apttus_Approval__MyApprovals?id={!context-object-api-name.Id}**

   Ensure that in the **context-object-api-name**, you enter the API name of your context object. In our example for Agreement object, enter Apttus__APTS_Agreement__c as context-object-api-name.
8. Click **Save**.
9. Go to a record of your object, click the **Edit Layout** link.
10. From the Buttons list, drag and drop the newly created button on your page layout and click **Save.**

- Creating a custom formula field for your context object

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

1. Go to **Setup > Create > Objects** and search for your object. In our example, select Agreement object of Contract Management package.
2. In the Custom Fields & Relationships section, click **New.**
3. Select **Formula** as the field type and click **Next**.
4. In the Field Label, enter **My Approvals**, select *Text* as **Formula Return Type** and click **Next** .
5. In the Advanced Formula text box, enter the following formula:
   IF(OR((ISPICKVAL(Approval_Status__c,"Pending Approval")), (ISPICKVAL (Approval_Status__c,"Approved"))), HYPERLINK("/apex /Apttus_Approval__MyApprovals?Id="&Id, IMAGE("/resource/[button-image]", "My Approvals"),"_self"),NULL)

   Ensure that you enter the API name of the field you use for Approval Status of your context object, which you defined before configuring this button.
6. After checking the syntax of your formula field, click **Next**.
7. Select visibility for your required profiles and click **Next**.
8. Select appropriate page layouts on which you want to display the new field and click **Save**.

Configuring the Preview & Submit Approvals button

The Approvals page enables you to preview the approval requests assigned to you. The sample files provide the base for customizing the information to display on the page. However, you must ensure you keep the Approval Action code on the page so that users can approve or reject requests assigned to them. The Approvals page is primarily used by the requester for the following tasks.

- Preview a list of all approvals that will be required before they are submitted for approval
- View a list of all approvals including those that have already been submitted and approved or rejected, or are in another status such as Assigned, On Hold, or Not Submitted
- Allow the submitter to recall all approvals for the current context object

You can follow any one of the following procedures to configure **Preview & Submit Approvals** button for your context object:

- Creating a custom button for your context object:

1. Go to **Setup > Create > Objects** and search for your object.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

2. In the **Buttons, Links, and Actions** section, click **New Button or Link.**
3. In the Label field, enter **Preview & Submit Approvals**.
4. In the **Display Type**, select *Detail Page Button*.
5. In the **Behavior** drop-down list, select *Display in existing window without sidebar or header*.
6. In the **Content Source** drop-down list, select *URL*.
7. Enter the following formula in the Advanced Formula section, **/apex/Apttus_Approval__PreviewSubmitApprovals?id={!context-object-api-name.Id}**

   Ensure that in the **context-object-api-name,** you enter the API name of your context object.

   In our example for Agreement object, enter *Apttus__APTS_Agreement__c* as **context-object-api-name**.
8. Click **Save**.
9. Go to a record of your object, click the **Edit Layout** link.
10. From the Buttons list, drag and drop the newly created button on your page layout and click **Save.**

- Creating a custom formula field for your context object:

1. Go to **Setup > Create > Objects** and search for your object. In our example, select Agreement object of Contract Management package.
2. In the Custom Fields & Relationships section, click **New.**
3. Select **Formula** as the field type and click **Next**.
4. In the Field Label, enter **Preview & Submit Approvals**, select *Text* as **Formula Return Type** and click **Next**.
5. In the Advanced Formula text box, enter the following formula: **IF(AND(NOT(ISPICKVAL(Approval_Status__c,"Pending Approval")), NOT(ISPICKVAL (Approval_Status__c,"Approved"))), HYPERLINK("/apex /Apttus_Approval__PreviewSubmitApprovals?Id="&Id, IMAGE("/resource/[button-image]", "Preview & Submit Approvals"),"_self"),NULL)**

   Ensure that you enter the API name of the field you use for Approval Status of your context object, which you defined before configuring the My Approvals, Preview, and Submit button. Along with **ID** as a mandatory parameter, you can also append the following optional parameters to capture more details by a button click.

 Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

These parameters are applicable only for CPQ.

Parameter name	Datatype	Use of the parameter
ctxChildSObjectId	ID of the child context object	To view subset of approvals required for the speci context object.
returnId	ID of the object	To return to detail view of the object referred to by identifier.
returnPage	string	To return to the specified page.
returnButtonLabel	string	To use the specified label for the return button. Th when this page is invoked from multiple locations
autoPreviewIndicator	boolean	To force the system to perform Preview before dis approval requests.
hideSubmitWithAttachments	boolean	Indicator to instruct the system to hide **Submit wi Attachments** button.
headerSObjectId	Id of the standard object	The ID to be rendered as a link in the header of th different from the context object. This is used to di Quote link instead of Cart or Product Configuratio
headerSObjectTitle	string	The title or label to display as a link in the header ID, if one wants to display a value other than the N value of the context object.
CancelPendingProcess (deprecated from 7.2.370 onwards use Enable Resubmit instead)	boolean	• true:Cancel the previous approval requests object record and submit a new approval re object every time you click Submit. To conf behavior, in the My Approvals Formula butt context object set the CancelPendingProce to true. For example,/apex/ ApprovalConte

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Parameter name	Datatype	Use of the parameter
		sObjectType=Apttus__APTS_Agreement_ {!Apttus__APTS_Agreement__c.Id} &CancelPendingProcess=true. • false:The existing Approval Process will no cancelled. To configure this behavior, in the Approvals Formula button for your context CancelPendingProcess parameter to false. example, /apex/ ApprovalContextPreview? sObjectType=Apttus__APTS_Agreement_ {!Apttus__APTS_Agreement__c.Id} &CancelPendingProcess=false. • If you do not pass any parameter in the forı the approval requests on the context objec cancelled and a new approval request is su

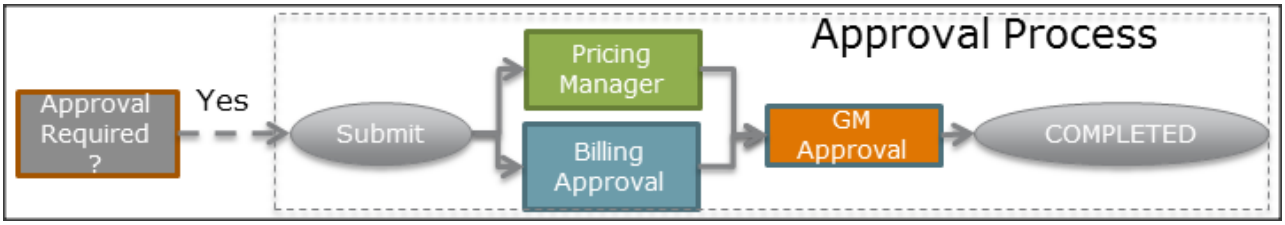
6. After checking the syntax of your formula field, click **Next**.
7. Select visibility for your required profiles and click **Next**.
8. Select appropriate page layouts on which you want to display the new field and click **Save.**

Approval Required Check

Approval Required check is performed to determine whether a custom object, Apttus object, standard Salesforce object or its line item requires an approval and if an approval process needs to be executed. Approval Required check sets the approval status of the object or line item to Approval Required. Approval Required check does not evaluate the approval process, but rather performs a simple check outside of the approval process definition. Approval Required Check sets the approval status of the header or line items to Approval Required to make it easy to check whether approval is needed. The purpose of the Approval Required check is to reduce the overhead of performing detailed process evaluation to determine if approval is needed. While defining the Entry criteria of the Approval Process in conjunction with Approval Required check, you should use the *Approval Required* approval status as one of the criteria.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

For example, Approval Required check is invoked prior to the execution or evaluation of the approval process. Approval criteria/conditions are defined using **Search Filters(Approvals)** of type *Entry Criteria*. Approval Required Check is primarily used with CPQ approvals, but can also be used with approval on other objects, such as Agreement and its related objects.



Steps to Set up Approval Required check

- Adding Approval Status and Approval Preview Status fields to an object
- Adding the custom object to the search filter
- Setting up the Approval Required check trigger
- Setting up an entry criteria for the Approval Required check

Workflow Rules: An alternative to Approval Required Check

If you do not wish to configure and use Approval Required Check, you can use the Salesforce functionality of Workflow Rules to set the Approval Status of your header or line items from *Not Submitted* to *Approval Required.* While defining Workflow rules, you must ensure that every time an update is made to the existing header or line item records, the Approval Status is set based on the Entry Criteria of **Search Filters(Approvals).**

For details on how to create and configure Workflow Rules to match your business requirements, see Workflow Rules.

To create an approval required check trigger

Approval Status picklist enables triggers in the Approval Required check process. Ensure that you have added Approval Status picklist for your context object by navigating to **Build > Custom object (Object Name) > Fields > New** and adding the values: *Not Submitted (default), Approval Required, Pending Approval, Approved, Rejected, Cancelled, Closed*.

1. Use the following two global methods of the ApprovalRequiredCheck class to create your Approval Trigger or Workflow Rule.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

a. doCheck(Id objId) – This API takes up the IDs of all the records of your context object and checks if these records satisfy the Entry Criteria defined at the Search Filter (Approvals). If the Entry Criteria is satisfied, this API returns true, otherwise false.
For example, if you have approval processes defined for your Agreement header fields and Agreement Line Items, this API checks if your Agreement record and Agreement Line Items satisfy the Entry Criteria (RecordType == NDA) returns True or False, and sets the Approval status of filtered records to *Approval Required*. Also, if there is a change in the value of your Agreement header or Agreement Line Item, and the entire approval request is re-submitted, this API considers all record IDs for Approval Required Check and re-evaluates them.

   If a child object record, such as an Agreement Line Item is already *Approved*, this API does not consider these Line Items. For rest of the Approval Statuses, such as *Cancelled*, *Rejected*, *Not Submitted,* this API is useful.

   This API is invoked as follows:

   Apttus_Approval.ApprovalRequiredCheck checker = new Apttus_Approval.
   ApprovalRequiredCheck()
   Boolean result =checker.doCheck(objId)

b. doCheck(SObject object) – This API returns a map of approval status values keyed by object ids for your context object. The first entry in the map corresponds to the header context object. The Key-Value pair indicates what Approval Status should be set for a specific record of your context object.

   For example, if you make any change in one of the field of Agreement header, such as Agreement End Date and the Approval Status for your Agreement record is *Cancelled.*

   This API is invoked in a trigger before update as follows:

   Apttus_Approval.ApprovalRequiredCheck checker = new Apttus_Approval.
   ApprovalRequiredCheck()

   Boolean result = checker.doCheck(object)

2. Add the custom object to a search filter criteria by clicking **Create Objects > Search Filter (Approvals) > Business Object**. Add the API name of your custom object to the pick list.
3. Create a trigger that sets the Approval Required check for your custom object.
4. Navigate to **Apttus Approvals Management > Search Filters (Approvals)** tab and set up your entry criteria in this section.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

After you setup the Search Filter Criteria for your object, define the Approval Process for it. If the approval criteria is fulfilled, the approval status of the object changes based on the trigger you configure.

Creating Search Filters (Approvals)

The two **Filter Type** options (*Child Filter* and *Entry Criteria*) serve two different purposes.

Entry Criteria	This is required for approvals to be initiated for a custom object. To improve performance, the system will check if there are any Entry Criteria search filters that match the attributes of the custom object and set the approval status to Approval Required. You can have the entry criteria at the line item to set the approval status to Approval Required or Approval Triggered.
Child Filter	This is required to have a header-level approval-step entry criteria that makes use of the line item fields for the header custom object. After you create a child filter, you then need to create step-entry criteria using child filters that mirrors the expression used in the child filter.

Configuring and Creating Search Filters

Search filters of type *Entry-Criteria* are used to check whether the object requires approval before it can be finalized. If you want approvals to be triggered at the *header* level, then you need to configure search filters based on the context object. If you want approvals to be triggered at a Line Item level, then you would configure search filters for the Line Item context object. Additionally, if you want consolidated approvals for the whole object configuration, then you would create both. You must follow the procedure listed in the following section to configure and create search filters.

Configuring Search Filters - this adds custom objects to the Search Filter object picklist so you can create search filters that use these objects for their entry criteria.

Creating Search Filters - the Search Filters are used to determine if the products in the object require approval.

To configure Search Filters for Approvals

1. Go to **Setup > Build > Create > Objects** and select **Search Filter (Approvals)**.
2. From the **Custom Fields & Relationships** section, select **Business Object**.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

3. From **Picklist Values**, click **New** and enter the API names for the Header object and the line items: Header Object API name for Header level approvals and Child Object API namefor Line Item level approvals.
4. Click **Save**. The values are added to the **Picklist Values list**.
5. Click **Back to Search Filter (Approvals)** and from the **Custom Fields & Relationships** section, select **Filter Type**.
6. From **Picklist Values**, click **New** and enter Child Filter and Entry Criteria.
7. Click **Save**.

The values are added to the picklists, which are required to create search filters.

You can create *Search Filters (Approvals)* for controlling which objects are checked to see if they need approval.

To create Search Filters for Approvals

1. Click

and select **Search Filter (Approvals).**
2. Click **New Search Filter (Approvals)** and select one of the following options.
    - **Header Object Name** - select this if you want the filter to be at the context object level.
    - **Child Object Name** - select this if you want the filter to be at the Line Item context object level, which are the individual line items within the Header object.
3. Click **Next**. The Configure Filter page appears.
4. From **Filter Type**, select one of the following options.
    - **Child Filter** - This enables you to have step entry criteria within your approval process that reference the child record fields of the main context object. This enables you to use line item fields with your Header Object Name approval process. The line item child Filters you create here enable you to have them available for approval step entry criteria.
    - **Entry Criteria** - Indicates that the search filter will be used for the Approval Required check, which checks whether the header or header line item values of an object required to undergo an approval. Essentially, you have and an additional level of entry criteria for approvals here, before the system searches for matching approval processes.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

> **Note**
>
> You must have set at least either the Entry Criteria or the Child Filter for approvals to be available from the parent object.

5. Enter a required **Filter Name** and **Sequence**. The sequence is used to determine the order in which the search filters will check if approvals are required.
6. Enter the **Filter criteria**, which is used to determine if the object requires approval.
7. Click **Save**.

The Search Filter is now active. If it is an Entry Criteria filter, the system will determine if a header object requires approval.

You must create an Approval Process that can be used with the header object.

Approval Process for Custom Objects

Apttus Intelligent Workflow and Approvals offers the ability to setup approval processes that are currently not supported by Salesforce.com. It allows the customer to configure their various approval processes with greater flexibility and visibility, helping in overall compliance.

Approval steps assign approval requests to various users and define the chain of approval for a particular approval process. Each approval step specifies the attributes a record must have to advance to that approval step, the user who can approve requests for those records, and whether to allow backup assignees of the approver to approve the requests. Regardless of their complexity, when anyone in the process rejects an item, the entire process is considered rejected.

- Creating the Process Definition
  The process definition serves as the framework for your intelligent approval process, providing options for setting up key objects like Entry Criteria, Email Templates, and Approval Summary Pages.
- Checking the Approval Status of the Document
  Approval required check is performed to determine whether a document requires approval and if approval process needs to be executed.
- Creating Initial Submission Actions
  Initial actions update object record fields when the approval process begins for that record.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- Creating Final Actions
  Final actions enable you to update record fields in the object according to whether the intelligent approval process was completed successfully or it was rejected.
- Creating Approval Steps
  Approval steps provide the logic for routing object record approvals to the correct people based on specific criteria.
- Setting up Auto-escalation
  Enabling auto-escalation in an approval process occurs at the approval step level. While the email templates apply to the entire approval process, you can have different auto-escalation settings for each approval step or you can use the global escalation options.
- Creating Expressions
  Intelligent approval process expressions provide a method for qualifying whether an object record should be routed through specific approval steps.

Performance and Scalability

Area	Detail
Multiple Approval Processes	**When to use multiple approval process?** When you have Region Based Approval variations, Business Unit Based Approvals variations, Channel Based Approvals variations. **How do I configure multiple approval processes?** Define mutually exclusive process entry criteria so that only one process is selected for a given primary object instance. **Why do I configure multiple approval processes?** Having multiple approval processes reduces number of approval steps / criteria system needs to execute
Approval Rule Entry Criteria	Specify minimum approval conditions in Approval Rule entry criteria for Sub Process or Child Process steps to avoid evaluation of all approval rule entries every time.
Approval Required Check	Provides users visibility to whether approval is needed for header or line items without executing the entire approval process. Provides a mechanism to avoid approval process evaluation for a large number of scenarios.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Types of Approval Steps and when do I use them?

- **Standard** - This is the existing method for creating header level approval steps.
- **Sub Process** - This is used when you want to select approval rules that are associated with the header level context object of the approval process. The assignee types are derived from the Approval Rule. Create a Sub-Process when you have multiple approvers for a set of criteria instead of defining multiple Standard steps for each criteria.
- **Child Process** - This is used when you want to select approval rules that are associated to child objects of the approval process header level context object such as you want to define an approval process for Proposal and Proposal Line Items. The assignee types are derived from the Approval Rule. Use a child process instead of a Subprocess and Standard step type when you want to populate the Approval request with the child object line items to be approved, such as proposal line items.

It is recommended that you use conditional criteria instead of Approval Dimensions and Approval Matrix while creating your approval rules and processes.

Create Process Definition

The process definition serves as the framework for your intelligent approval process, providing options for setting up key objects like entry criteria, email templates, and approval summary pages.

Entry criteria is used to define the conditions that must be met before an object record is routed through the intelligent approval process. For instance, you may want to specify that a certain approval process for agreements is only used when there is a discount given of greater than 10%.

While everyone may have a Salesforce dashboard set up to display outstanding tasks, having email templates associated with the approval process ensures that people are notified outside of Salesforce when they are required to approve an item, helping ensure the approval process does not stall.

Approval summary pages contain the information and action items that enable a record to be reviewed and approval actions to be taken. The default summary pages provide sufficient information for Agreements, Opportunities, Quote/Proposals, Proposal Line Items, and Term exceptions; however, the pages can be configured to provide whatever details are needed.

Consolidating Approvals and Notifying Users

Consolidation applies to scenarios when a user is responsible for multiple approval items for a single document. In this scenario, you can use the Consolidated Notification and Approvals options to avoid sending separate approval notifications to the approver for each approval item.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Consolidated Notification is the capability to send single approval email notifications to the approver for all the header or line item approvals, when all the approval items become available for approval. This enables approvers to review all their approval items for a document as a whole, rather than revisiting the same document multiple times. When all the items become available, the system changes the status of all the approval items to *Assigned* and then you are allowed to independently **Approve** or **Reject** the assigned approval items.

You can navigate to the **My Approvals** page (provides the list of all the approval items for the user for that document) in the application to take approval actions. From **My Approvals** page**,** you can selectively approve or reject assigned approval items.

The **Consolidate Notifications** check box when selected, enables the assignee to receive single consolidated assignment notification for all approval items. An approver then has flexibility to approve or reject all or subset of the assigned requests.

Also from the May Patch release onwards, an assignee will also receive consolidated e-mail notifications for cancellation and notify only requests.

If an approver is defined for notify only steps, a consolidated notification email is sent once all the notify only steps are available.

If an approval is cancelled, and the user is an assignee for multiple steps, the user receives a consolidated cancellation notification.

Email Approvals: In case of email approvals for consolidated notifications, when you approve or reject an approval using email, all the items that require approval are Approved or Rejected simultaneously. Email approval does not enable you to approve or reject individual approval items. You can then either respond to the email approval notification to approve or reject all the items assigned to the user or can navigate to the "My Approvals" page (provide the list of all the approval items for the user for that document) in the application to take approval actions. Within the application, from "My Approvals" page, user can selectively approve or reject assigned approval items. System will consolidate the approval requests as per the behavior specified above and send single notification for all the approval items that require approval from a given user when all the items become available, rather than sending separate notification for each approval item.

The **Consolidate Approvals** check box when selected, enables the assignee to receive single consolidated assignment notification for all approval items. An approver can then either Approve All or Reject All the requests that require their approval.

 Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

From the May Patch release onwards, you can use the **Consolidate Approvals** feature only with the **Consolidate Notifications** and not independently. When you select **Consolidate Approvals,** accordingly, **Consolidated Notifications** is selected by default. However, **Consolidated Notifications** can be used by itself without **Consolidated Approvals**.

To create a process definition

1. Click the **Approval Processes** tab or click ⊞ and click **Approval Processes**.
2. Use **Manage Approval Processes** to select the required object and click **Create New Approval Process**. Currently *Opportunities*, *Agreements*, *Quote/Proposal*, *Proposal Line Item*, and *Agreement Term Exceptions* can be associated with Intelligent Approvals.
3. Enter a process name and description and click **Next**.
4. Select the Entry Criteria, which indicates in which circumstances the approval process should be initiated, and click **Next**. Any field can be used. You must ensure you select an appropriate operator for the field value, as there is no validation of operator-value combinations. If no criteria is selected, all records will require approval once the approval process has been activated. You can used Advanced Options if want the criteria to be linked by more than just *AND*.
5. Based on your requirements, do the following,:
    a. Select **Consolidate Approvals** if you want to bundle multiple approvals into a single approval action.
    b. Select **Consolidate Notifications** if you want to bundle multiple notifications into a single notification both via email and in Salesforce.
    c. Select **Continue Pending Approvals on a Reject** if you want to continue the approval process even when the approver rejects an approval request.

    Consolidated Approvals only works when Consolidated Notifications is selected. Consolidated Notifications can work independently. See Consolidated Approvals, for more details.
6. Click **Next**.
7. Select the Notification Templates you want to use for the process or leave the fields empty to use the default templates and click **Next**:

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Option	Description
Assignment Email Template	This is used for emails that are sent to someone who has been assigned a task, based on the approval workflow process. The default is *Apttus Agreement Approval Notification (Assignment)*.
Reassignment Email Template	When an existing task is reassigned to someone else, this is used for the email sent to that person.. The default is *Apttus Agreement Approval Notification (Reassignment)*.
Escalation Email Template	This is used when auto-escalation is enabled and an outstanding approval task has reached the point where it is auto-escalated. The default is *Apttus Agreement Approval Notification (Escalation)*.
Cancellation Email Template	This is used to notify people when an approval process has been cancelled. The default is *Apttus Agreement Approval Notification (Cancellation)*.
NotifyOnly Email Template	This is used when the Notify Only option is selected in one of the steps. The recipient of this email does not have any action items. The default is *Apttus Agreement Approval Notification (Notify Only)*.
Reminder Email Template	This is used when reminders are set up. The default is *Apttus Agreement Approval Notification (Reminder)*.

Note

If approvals will be submitted with attachments, the email templates you use need to be custom templates.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

8. To override the default, enter the **Approval Summary Page** name where the approver indicates whether they approve or reject the item and click **Next**. You can leave this field blank and the default pages will be used automatically. There is no auto-lookup available for this, you must enter the exact name of the page to change the setting. The default pages are *OpportunityApprovalSummary*, *AgreementApprovalSummary*, *QuoteApprovalSummary*, *QuoteLineItemApprovalSummary*, and *AgreementTermExApprovalSummary*.
9. Click to display a list of users who can act as the backup admin user for this specific process. If you do not select one, the global backup admin user will be used.
10. To add a customized comment that applies to the approval process or step when the request is submitted for approval , select **Submission Comments Enabled**.
11. To make Approval Comments and Rejection Comments mandatory, select **Approval Comments Mandatory** and **Rejection Comments Mandatory**.
12. Click **Save**.

The Intelligent approval process has been created and saved in Salesforce.

You can now proceed to creating approval steps, which are required to activate an approval process, by selecting **Yes, I'd like to create an approval step now**. You can select one of the **No...** options to go to work on other parts of the intelligent approvals configuration process.

Checking the Approval Status

Approval required check is performed to determine whether a document requires approval and if approval process needs to be executed.

CPQ Approvals: For CPQ Approvals, **Approval Required check** is a default system behavior and an approval process is not evaluated unless the Approval status is set to Approval Required by the approval required check. Preview, Submit for Approval / Request Approval actions are only enabled when approval status is set to Approval Required. For CPQ Approvals, entry criteria filters need to be defined on Product Configuration object at minimum. In addition, the entry criteria filters can also be defined on the Line Item object if approval is needed based on line item parameters.

Approval Required Check on Pricing: For CPQ Approvals, system auto executes Approval Required check on Reprice, if Apttus Intelligent Approvals is used.

Approval Required Check on Quote Update: For CPQ approvals, system can also execute Approval Required Check on Quote update if Quote Header parameters are used in Approval Required criteria. You can use Quote Header parameters in CPQ Approval Required check using **Formula Fields (Approvals)** in Entry Criteria Search Filters.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Approval Required check does not evaluate the approval process, but checks the entry criteria of the approval process. The purpose of the approval required check is to reduce the performance overhead of performing detailed process evaluation to determine whether approval is required.

Approval criteria or conditions are defined using Search Filters (Approvals) of type Entry Criteria.

Approval Required Check is primarily used with CPQ approvals, but can also be used with approval on other objects.

Use the following guidelines while defining entry criteria filters:

Entry Criteria Filters: Search Filters (Approvals) of type Entry Criteria are used in Approval Required Check.

Entry Criteria filters on the Primary object: These entry criteria filters are defined for the approval process context object. For example, if approval process is defined for Quote/Proposal then Entry Criteria filters need to be defined on Quote/Proposal object.

Entry Criteria filters on the Child Object: If the approval conditions are also based on the parameters from the child objects of the approval context object then entry criteria filters are also defined on the related child context object. For example, if an approval process is defined Quote /Proposal, but the approval conditions are also based on the proposal line item object then Entry Criteria filters needs to be defined on Quote/Proposal line items object also.

Entry Criteria using parameters related Parent Object: Entry criteria filters can also be defined on a given object using reference fields from the related parent object. For example if an approval process is defined on Quote/Proposal then Entry Criteria filters need to be defined on Quote /Proposal object. However, if approval conditions are also based on fields from Opportunity object (parent of Quote/Proposal) then you can define **Entry Criteria** fields using Formula Fields (Approvals). In the above example, you will define Formula Fields (Approvals) on Quote/Proposal object using fields from Opportunity object. Once these Formula Fields (Approvals) are defined, the fields appear in field selection list for defining Entry Criteria filters on the Quote/Proposal object.

Guidelines for Defining Entry Criteria Filters: You can define multiple Search Filters (Approvals) of type Entry Criteria on a given object. System will evaluate all these entry criteria filters.

Creating Initial Submission Actions

Initial actions update object record fields when the approval process begins for that record.

 Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

The only conditions considered before the initial actions occur is the entry criteria for the process definition, which starts the intelligent approval process. There is no additional logic involved. Therefore it is best to create initial submission actions for the fields that will always require updating when the approval process begins. This ensures that all fields are handled programatically and do not require someone to manually change them.

Note

As with all fields that can be updated as part of the intelligent approvals process, there is no validation that the values entered for the *Field Value* are correct while you are creating actions and approval steps. You must know what the field type is and should thoroughly test your process before using it in a live environment.

To create initial submission actions

There must be an approval process.

1. Click **Add New** in the **Initial Submissions Actions** section.
2. Select **Field Update (Constant)** from the **Field Action Type** list and select the field name. Enter the **Field Value**, ensuring it is an appropriate value type for the field. - or - Select **Field Update (Value)** and select the user lookup field for the object record you want to update with the Current User ID. The current user is the person who is logged into Salesforce and makes a change to the object record that initiates the intelligent approval process.
3. Click **Save** to complete the task - or - Click **Save & New** to add another action.

The item is added to the **Initial Submission Actions** section.

Creating Final Actions

Final actions enable you to update record fields in the object according to whether the intelligent approval process was completed successfully or it was rejected.

As final actions can only be used to update fields, the order in which they are created is unimportant.

Note

There is a single reject policy embedded in the system. If there is at least one rejection during the approval process, the entire process is rejected.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

To create final actions

1. Click **Add New** in either the **Final Approval Actions** or **Final Rejection Actions** section of the approval process. To use Auto Re-approvals, set the cart status to **Ready for Finalization** in the final submission actions rather than Finalized to ensure that a new cart is not created every time.
2. Select the **Field Name** for the field in the object record you want to update.
3. Enter a valid **Field Value** for the field and include a description. If the field is a pick list, the **Specify New Field Value** list is displayed, to select from.
4. Click **Save** to add the action and return to the main approval process page. - or - Click **Save & New** to add the action and create another action of the same type.

The items are added to the appropriate final actions section. The actions will update those object record fields upon the last approval or rejection action for that approval process.

Creating Approval Steps

Approval steps provide the logic for routing object record approvals to the correct people based on specific criteria.

A minimum of one approval step is required to activate an intelligent approval process; however, a process can contain many steps. When you create steps it is important to understand the approval workflow you want to have. Along with the step criteria, step dependencies should be used when organizing your approval workflow. Any steps that are not dependent on another step will be executed in parallel.

Approval Step Enhancements

Approval steps have been enhanced to offer three different step types to the user, as well as new description fields, and the ability to select which context object fields should be displayed when an approval request or preview is sent.

Approval Step Types	There are three step types you can choose from when creating an approval step: • **Standard** - This is the existing method for creating approval steps. • **Sub Process** - This is used when you want to select approval rules that are associated with the context object of the approval process, which also replace the assignee types that are used with a Standard step.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

	• **Child Process** - This is used when you want to select approval rules that are associated to child objects of the approval process context object, which also replace the assignee types that are used with a Standard step. It enables the *Context Object* and *Approval Rule* list.
Description Fields	There are description text fields available for adding information about a step, as well as for conditions of the step entry criteria. These fields enable you to provide useful information to the approvers about these items.
Display Fields	The fields enables you to select the header level fields of the context object you want to show to users when previewing an approval or when an approval request has been sent and the approver is reviewing the request information. Any Related Fields you create for the context object is available as display fields.

To create approval steps

There must be an approval process.

1. From the Approval Process page, click **New Approval Step** in the **Approval Steps** section.
   - or -
   At the end of creating a process definition, select **Yes, I'd like to create an approval step now** and click **Go**.
2. Enter a **Step Name, Step Label** and **Description** for the step.
3. Specify the appropriate **Step Type** and click **Next**.
4. Select the **Entry Criteria** for the step and click **Next**. See Creating Expressions for details on setting the criteria.
5. Specify the conditions for setting up Auto-Reapproval. When these conditions are satisfied, the current step will be automatically re-approved.
6. Select **Step Dependencies**, if necessary, by highlighting steps in **Unselected Items** and click to add them to the **Selected Items**. Reorder the steps as required and click **Next**. Step dependency is based on their order in **Selected Items**.
7. Select **Step Auto Complete** if you want this step to automatically be approved when it is assigned to the approver. For auto complete to work as expected, ensure that the step you set Set Auto Complete for is independent from another step. You can set up any or all standard steps in an Approval Process for auto-completion. Entry Criteria is still enforced for

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

the selection of the step, but will be marked as auto-completed if flagged. Approval Comments are not enforced even if the comments are flagged as mandatory. Fact that the Step is auto-completed is captured in the audit trail.

8. Select the process approvers, by selecting from **Assigned Approver > Assignee Type.**

Option	Description
Approval Matrix	Use this to dynamically assign an approval request to a user who has the given approval level in the approval matrix for the user submitting the request. For example, approver authority may change based on the discount being offered on a sales contract. So different levels of approvers can be assigned based on approval authority for a given item.
Custom Queue	This points to a field which contains a queue name in any custom object with a filter to narrow it down to a single row. This can be specified in two ways: • Select the custom field in the custom object you want to use for the custom filter expression and manually enter a constant value it will be compared to. • Select the custom field in the custom object, but select Bind Value, which enables you to select a field in the associated business object to compare to.
Custom Role	This is a field which contains a role name in any custom object with a filter to narrow down to a single row. The behavior is the same as Custom Queue.
Custom User	This is a user lookup reference field in any custom object with a filter to narrow down to a single row. The behavior is the same as Custom Queue.
Queue	Use this to dynamically assign an approval request to a queue. If email notifications are set for the queue, notifications will be sent to all members of the queue, otherwise, a single notification will be sent to the queue email.
Related User	This is a user lookup reference field in the associated business object (i.e. Agreement or Opportunity).
Role	

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Option	Description
	A role can be based on your company's hierarchy and can have one or more users assigned to it.
Rule	Use this assignee type when you want to dynamically assign an approval request based on an approval rule. If you select this option , t he approval request is sent only to the first user that satisfies the filter criteria in the Approval Rul e . If you have multiple approvers in a sequence, only the first approver is selected and assigned.
User	Use this assignee type when you want to dynamically assign an approval request to a user.

9. Select **Send Email** to notify the assignee by email that they must approve or reject the object record and select **Notify Only** to only inform the assignee by email that the approval process has reached this step, without any actions to take.
10. Select **Skip Unresolved Assignee** to optionally skip an unresolved approver from the list of sequential approvers.
11. Choose **Step Auto Escalate** if you want to escalate the current step if no action is taken on the approval request within a specified period. Enter the number of days in **Step Expected Days To Complete and** the number of hours in **Step Expected Hours To Complete** by which you want to escalate the approval request.
12. Select a mandatory **Assignee Type** where you can escalate the approval request to a User, Role or any of the assignee type mentioned in Step 8. Click **Next**.
13. Create Reminders for approval requests that send a reminder notification to the assignee at the specified duration unit and intervals. For example, you can remind the assignee to take action on the request 7 days after it was assigned, and then again a week later. To activate reminders, select **Step Reminders Active**.
14. If you have enabled submission comments at the process level, at each step, you must enable submission comments.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

15. Select the Header and Display Fields which will appear at each approval step, by highlighting steps in **Unselected Items** and click to add them to the **Selected Items**. Reorder the steps as required and click **Next**. Step dependency is based on their order in **Selected Items**. For example, the selected Display fields appear on the Approvals page if you have configured Approvals for CPQ.
16. Click **Save**.

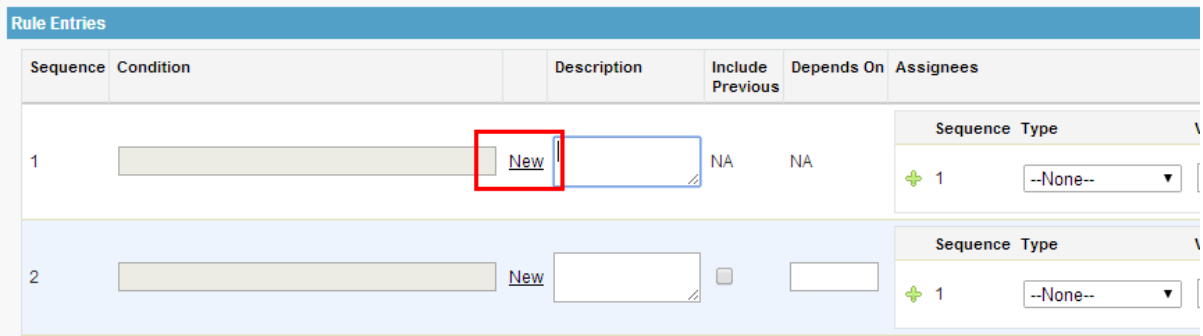
The step is added to the **Approval Steps** section for the Intelligent Approval Process. You can now **Activate** the approval process.

To create an Approval Rule to use with a Sub-process or Child processes

Condition must be added to the *Rule Type* picklist.

Go to **Setup > Create > Objects > Approval Rule**, scroll to **Custom Fields & Relationships** and click **Rule Type**. From **Picklist Values** section, click **New**. Enter Condition and click **Save**.

1. Go to **Approval Rules** and click **New**.
2. Select the Business Object and click **Next**. To use the approval rule with a sub-process it must match the context object of the approval process. To use it with a child process, it must match the child object associated with the approval process.
3. Enter a **Rule Name, Sequence,** and from **Rule Type**, select **Condition**.
4. Click **Save** and then click **Manage Entries** from the *Approval Rule Detail* page.
5. From Rule Entries, click **New**.



6. Enter the condition you want to use to route an approval request to the assignee and click **OK**.
7. Now you can fill out the rest of the rule entry as normal, including descriptions for both the condition and the assignee.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

8. When selecting assignees, the **Type** you select impacts what you need to enter for the **Value**:
    - *User*, *Role*, *Queue* - Enter the *Label* for the specific object record you are referring to.
    - *Related User* - For custom fields enter the *API Name*, such asQuoteOwner___c. This needs to be the *User Lookup* field on the *Line Item* or *Product Configuration* object record. If it is a standard field, addIdto the field name and use that. For instance, with the Line Item field *CreatedBy*, you would enterCreatedById.
    - *Custom User*, *Custom Queue*, *Custom Role* - This can be a formula, using a format as follows:Custom Object (Custom Object Field 01 = "Value" AND Custom Object Field 02 = "Value") User. For more details, see Custom Assignee Example.
9. Add additional conditions and assignees as desired and click **Save**.

> **Note**
>
> The *Assignee Type* is *Subprocess* regardless of whether you created a Subprocess or Child process type.

When the approval rule is *Active* it can be used with an approval process and depending on the context object of the approval process, the approval rule will be available when you select a *Step Type* of *sub-process* or *child process*.

You can create additional approval rules as needed.

Using Date Criteria in Approval Rule Entry

If you use date based criteria in an approval rule entry, you must YYYY-MM-DD 00:00:00 format for the date. For example, you want to trigger an approval rule on Proposal Line Item with Create Date greater or equal to April 5, 2018.

Use the following and do not delete anything:2018-04-05 00:00:00

This is useful when you want to set an approval rule or entry to take effect on or after a certain date. If you do not use the right format, the system displays an error when you try to submit for approval OR the system will simply ignore the criteria and trigger the rule regardless of the date.

Setting up Auto-Escalation

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

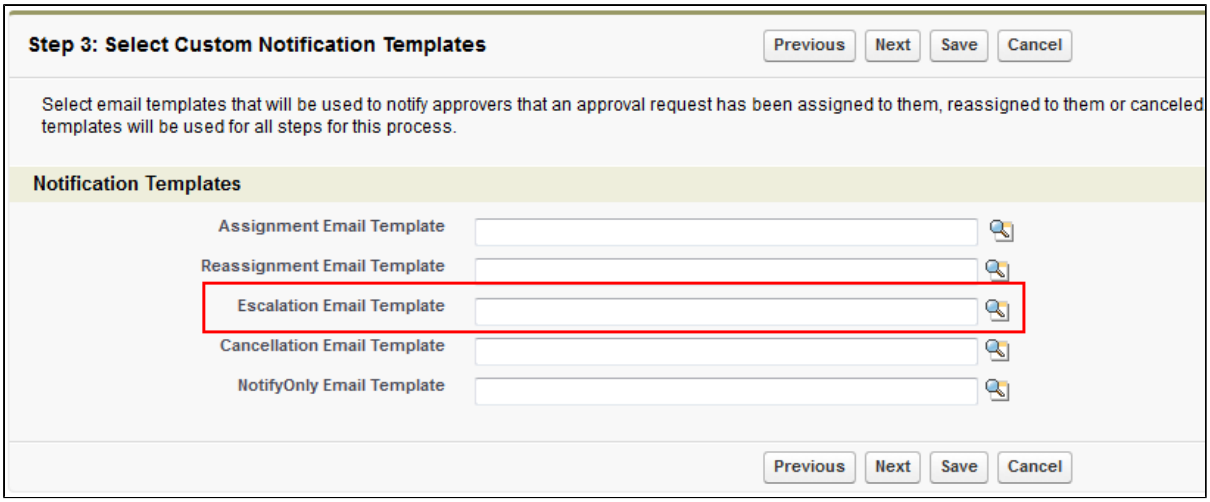
Enabling auto-escalation in an approval process occurs at the approval step level. While the email templates apply to the entire approval process, you can have different auto-escalation settings for each approval step or you can use the global escalation options.

Once an approval process has started, you can choose to manually escalate an approval request from the *Approval Request* related list for the object record currently under approval.

To configure auto-escalation for an approval process

You must have completed the configuration tasks to enable auto-escalation functionality.

1. Create a new approval process or edit an existing one.
2. When you come to the Notification Templates page, you can leave the **Escalation Email Template** field empty and it will use the default template or you can override it with a custom template.



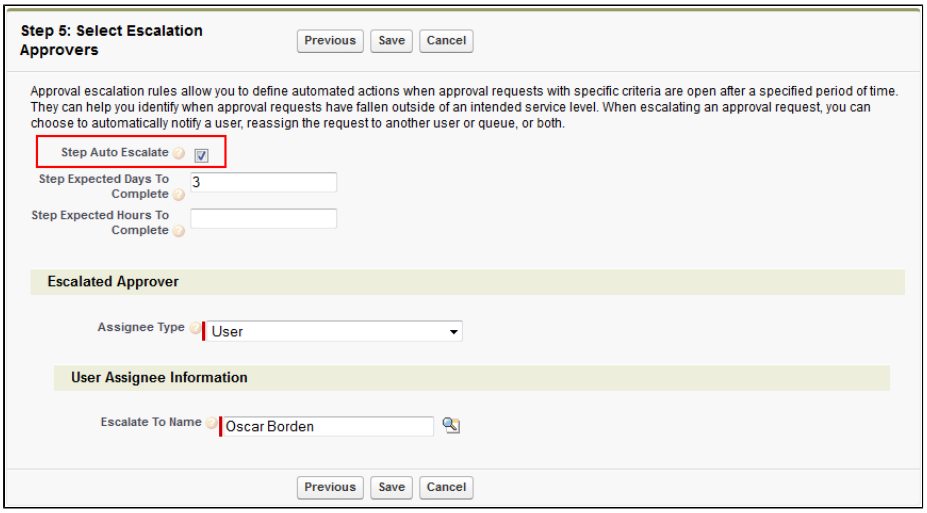
3. Finish creating the approval process and then create or edit an approval step for it.
4. When you come to the Select Escalation Actions page you must select **Step Auto Escalate**. Configure the settings as follows:

Option	Description
Expected *nn* To Complete	These values are used to trigger the auto-escalation. Once an approval request has been created, the system uses the value of expected time to complete to determine when the request should be auto-escalated.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Option	Description
Assignee Type	While you could include any assignee type, the following behavior should be noted. If you select *Related User*, the assignee name can only be a single word otherwise it cannot be reassigned correctly. Also be aware of the differences between selecting a single-step and multi-step assignee type.
Assignee Name	This value is dependent on the assignee type.

> **Note**
>
> This page is displayed regardless of whether the auto-escalation feature is enabled.



5. Save the approval process step to complete the procedure.

When approval requests for that specific approval step exceed the **To Complete** values, they will be auto-escalated per the escalation settings.

To manually escalate an approval request

The configuration tasks must have been completed.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

1. Go to an object record that you have submitted for approval. Only the user who initially submitted the approval, or system administrators, can manually escalate a request.
2. From the **Approvals** related list, select **Escalate**.

The request is immediately escalated, according to the auto-escalation settings.

Creating Expressions

Intelligent approval process expressions provide a method for qualifying whether an object record should be routed through specific approval steps.

To connect individual expressions together using *OR*, as well as *AND*, you must use Advanced Options. For details, see Creating Advanced Options.

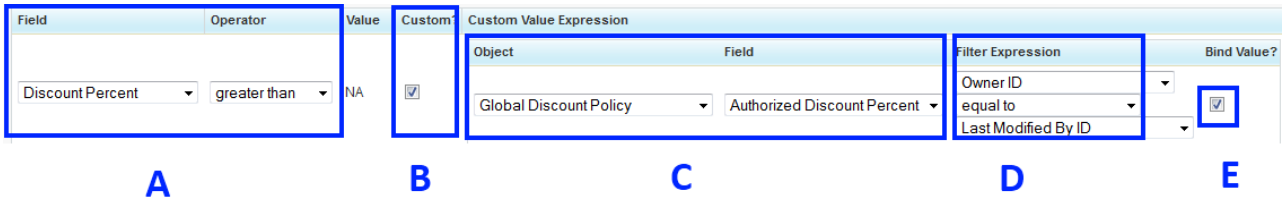
There are three types of expressions: standard, advanced and bound.

Expression	Description
Standard	This uses a field from the object record in the approval process, along with an operator, to compare to a single value to see if the process should enter a certain approval step. The value can be a constant value, whether entered manually or selected from a picklist, depending on the field type.
Advanced	This builds upon the simple expression, by enabling the value to come from a custom value expression. The custom value is derived from building another equation using a custom field in a custom table.
Bound	The same as advanced, except that the filter expression can use a field from the business object record in the approval process.

Your criteria can contain a simple field, operator, and value, or the value can be composed of a "custom" expression evaluated at runtime which includes resolving a value from a custom table, a custom field in that table, and an optional filter expression to narrow the rows down in that table. Custom filter expressions can also use bind variables that substitute the value of a field from the context object at runtime.

Bound Expression

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



A	The field comes from the business object associated with the approval process. Along with the operator, this forms the typical first two thirds of an equation.
B	Selecting **Custom** enables the **Custom Value Expression** section for creating advanced and bound expressions. It also sets **Value** to a read-only *N/A*.
C	The **Object** is a custom Salesforce object containing the available fields. The value selected for **Field** is what is compared to the field in part *A*. At its most basic form it is those two fields and the operator that form the expression. The expression will be evaluated for each row in the custom object.
D	The **Filter Expression** can be used to limit the number of rows in the custom object which are used as part of the overall expression. Any of the fields in the custom object can be used to create a filter expression, independent of the overall expression being evaluated.
E	Selecting **Bind Value?** creates a bound expression and makes the second field used in the Filter Expression come from the same business object as the field in part *A*. The **Bind Value** check box identifies the following: • A specific field on the custom object and compares it to a field on the context object. • A unique record on the custom object that needs to be used in the step entry criteria.

Attention

When building your expressions — both the Custom Value and Filter Expression — you must ensure the data types for the values in the fields being compared match. If they do not match, an error will occur when you preview the process or submit a request.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

To create standard expressions

Must be in *Step 2: Specify Step Entry Criteria* when creating or editing an Approval Process Step.

1. From the **Field** list, select the required object record field you want to compare.
2. Select the **Operator** and enter a valid **Value**.
3. Click ✚ or ➖ to add and remove additional field expressions. By default, each line is linked with *AND*, click **Advanced Options** to use *AND*, *OR*, and parenthesis. See Creating Advanced Options for details.
4. Click **Save** once all the expressions have been added.

To create advanced and bound expressions

Must be in *Step 2: Specify Step Entry Criteria* when creating or editing an Approval Process Step.

1. From the **Field** list, select the required object record field you want to compare and select the **Operator**.
2. Select **Custom** to display the **Custom Value Expression** options.
3. Select the required options:

Option	Description
Object	This is the custom Salesforce object that is a table containing fields that are used for the expression. **Note** These must have been added via Approvals System Properties. See Setting up Custom Assignee Value Expression Objects for details.
Field	This is the field in the custom object which will be compared against the field and operator selected in step 1.
Filter Expression	These two fields and operator act as an independent expression within the larger overall expression.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

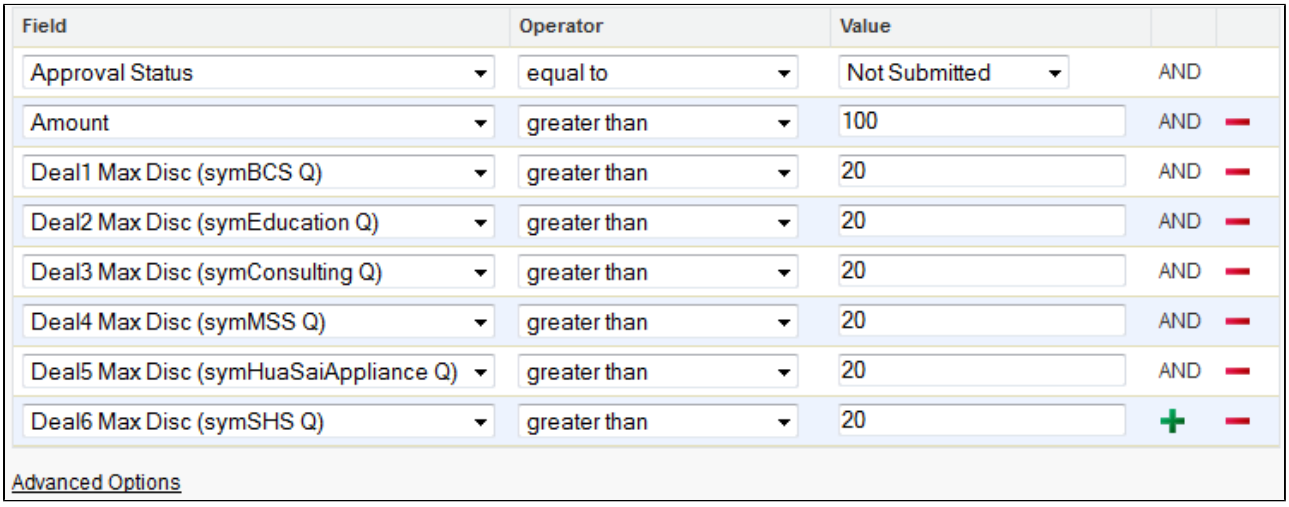
Option	Description
Bind Value	This enables the third **Filter Expression** picklist to be populated with values from the same object record that is being used in the main Field picklist.

4. Click ✚ to add another line.
   - Or -
   Click **Next** or **Save** to leave the page.

Creating Advanced Options

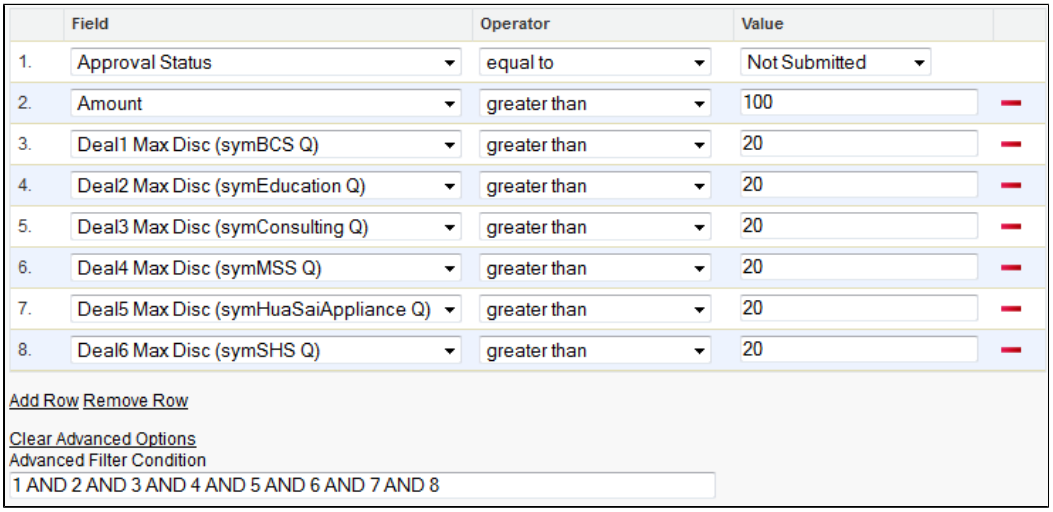
By default, when you create expressions each of them is associated by *AND*. This means the criteria for each expression must be met before the approval process will be routed according to the entry criteria, approval step criteria, or term exception approval conditions.

The **AND** column is read-only and cannot be changed. You must select **Advanced Options**.



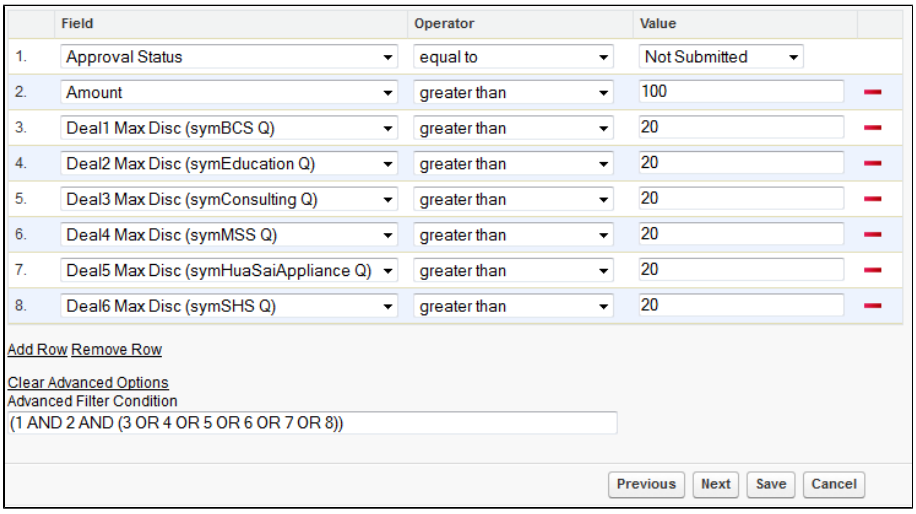
When you select **Advanced Options** the **AND** column is removed, a number is prepended to each expression, and the **Advanced Filter Condition** field is displayed. It displays each of the expressions – identified by their number – joined by the default *AND*.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



In the **Advanced Filter Condition** field you can use any combination of *AND*, *OR*, parenthesis, and numbers representing the expressions. These are the only values that can be used. Using other values may cause unexpected behavior.

As it is a free text field, there is no validation on the characters you can enter in the field. You can use up to 255 characters in the field.



To set advanced options

You must be in one of the following custom object sections:

- **Approval Process > Entry Criteria**
- **Approval Process > Approval Steps > Step Entry Criteria**

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

1. After you have created the required expressions, select **Advanced Options**. The **Advanced Filter Condition** field is displayed with the expressions listed in sequence, linked by *AND*.
2. In the **Advanced Filter Condition** field, create the equation using only the numbers representing the expressions, *AND*, *OR*, and parenthesis.

Option	Description
Valid example	((1 OR 2) AND 4) OR 3
Invalid example	((1 > 2) & (three or 4)) AND 5

3. Click **Next** or **Save** depending on which custom object you are in.

The expressions are linked and evaluated according to the formula in the **Advanced Filter Condition** field. There is no auto-validation on the formula. You should test the resulting criteria before using it in a live environment.To remove the advanced options and return to expressions that are all linked by *AND*, click **Clear Advanced Options**.

Initiating an Approval Request

If the object for which you have defined the approval process fulfils the search entry criteria and the step entry defined in the approval process, an approval request is initiated. All line items that require an approval, show up with an approval required label. To view the object and line items that require an approval you can use the Approval button on the object, to view a list of approvals required along with the approvers.

Setting up Approval Rules

Approval rules and dimensions enable you to package approval routing criteria together and use them for handling the *Assigned Approvers* step in the Approval Steps of your Intelligent Approval Process.

Typically if you choose to assign approval responsibilities to a specific user or role, there is no further logic or criteria that can be put into that assignment. The only real criteria available for the approval step is the *Step Entry Criteria*. By associating rules at the assignee step, via approval rules, you can dynamically assign approvers based on the same object records information used for the entry criteria.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- Dimensions
  Dimensions enable you to map fields from a variety of business objects including, but not limited to, Opportunity, Quote/Proposal, and Agreement Term Exception.
- Approval Rules
  Approval rules are used to associate Salesforce business objects, approval rule dimensions, and entry criteria for deciding which assignees are required during the Intelligent approval workflow.

Dimensions

Dimensions enable you to map fields from a variety of business objects including, but not limited to, Opportunity, Quote/Proposal, and Agreement Term Exception.

Once a dimension has been created, you can create an approval rule and associate it with the dimension.

To create approval rule dimensions

1. Click the **Approval Rule Dimensions** tab or click + and then select **Approval Rule Dimensions**.
2. Click **New** and then enter the dimension information:

Option	Description
Dimension Name	Enter a meaningful name, which will make it easy to identify and select in the intelligent approval process.
Business Object	This should match the object in the Intelligent approval process, that you plan to use the approval rule with. The objects you can select from are dependent on the packages you have installed.
Dimension Type	Field is a field associated with the business object. Formula is a type which can be extended through the associated business object.
Field	

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Option	Description
	The fields associated with the business object are available if the Dimension Type is Field. If the Dimension Type is Formula, then enter a formula with a reference field syntax (nnn__r.area__c), such as *Approval_Submitter__r.Area__c*.
Description	Description for the approval rule dimension.

3. Click **Save** to go to the Approval Rule Dimensions details page - or - Click **Save & New** to add another dimension.

The dimension is added to the list on the Approval Rule Dimensions page.

You can now create approval rules and associate them with the dimension. Either from the dimension details page or from the Approval Rules tab.

Approval Rules

Approval rules are used to associate Salesforce business objects, approval rule dimensions, and entry criteria for deciding which assignees are required during the Intelligent approval workflow.

To create approval rules

Dimensions must exist, so that the approval rule can be associated with one.

1. From the Approval Rule Dimension page, click **New Approval Rule** in one of the **Approval Rules (Dimension)** sections. - or - Click ✚ and then select **Approval Rules** and click **New**.
2. Select the **Business Object** that is the same as the one associated with the Intelligent approval process this rule will be used with and click **Next**.
3. In the **Configure Rule** section, enter the minimum required settings for the rule:

Option	Description
Business Object	This is the value selected in Step 2 and cannot be edited here.
Rule Name	Mandatory name for the rule.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Sequence	Mandatory number indicating in which sequence the rule will be evaluated.
Rule Type	Select **Dimension** or **Condition** for this mandatory setting.
Description	Description of the rule.
Dimensions	Select the dimensions you want the rule to be used with. The available dimensions are based on the business object selected in Step 2. There can be a maximum of six dimensions.
Dimension Types	Select **Discrete** or **Range**. Discrete must be a specific value, such as a number or a value for a category. The value *Rejected* in the category *Approval Status* would be discrete. Range is continuous data, where a value can be measured to multiple degrees. For example the number of units for a product could fall into a range of 1-99, 100-199, 200-499 and 500 or more.

> **Note**
>
> You should not use the Rule Criteria section, as this kind of logic is typically handled by Approval Step logic.

4. Select **Active** so the rule can be used with Intelligent approval processes.
5. Click **Save** to go to the Approval Rule details page - or - Click **Save & New** to add another rule.

The rule is added to the list on the Approval Rules page.

From the Approval Rules detail page, you should add assignees, using the **Manage Entries** option.

Approval Rule Assignees

The Manage Entries section of an Approval Rule designates assignees who will receive approval requests, based on the associated dimension and where they are called within an approval step.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

You can have a user, role, queue, custom version of those, related user, or auto approval as an assignee. Like configuring assignees in the approval step, you can indicate whether they should only be notified or sent an email informing them they must decide on the approval.

If you want to automatically progress an item, you can select Auto Approval as an assignee and associate the rule with a *Subprocess* in an Approval Step. In instances where approval routing is based on thresholds, an Auto Approval assignee can ensure the process is handled correctly.

In instances where approval routing is based on thresholds, an Auto Approval assignee can ensure the process is handled correctly. For instance, if approval routing is based on discount percentages and no approval is required for the 0-20% range, the approval step for that range could go to an Auto Approval assignee.

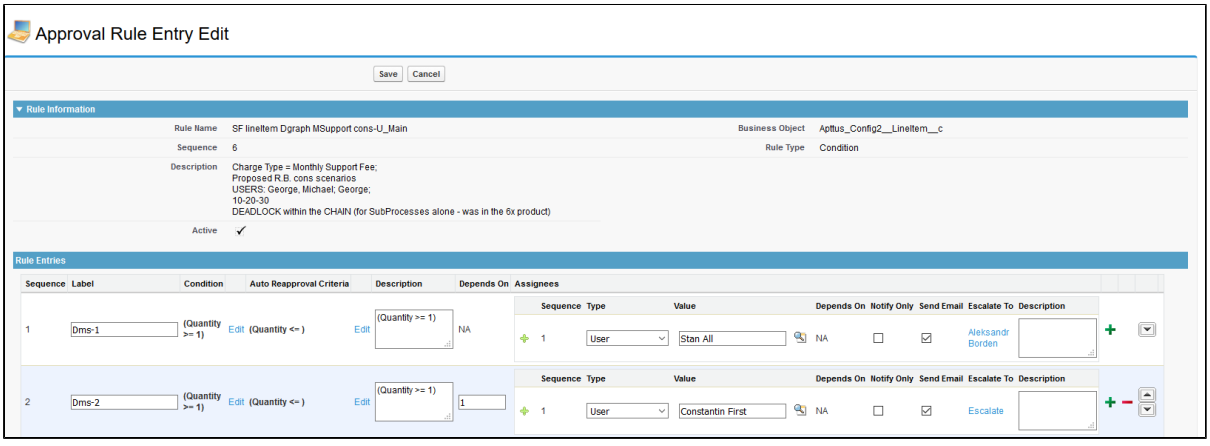
Note

You must ensure valid values are entered or the expected assignees may not get notified as expected. While you can enter someone's name, username, or email address, it is recommended that you either use the username (that they login to the system with) or the email address associated with their account. As these should be unique, you can best ensure you have selected the correct user.

To set the assignees

There must be an Approval Rule.

1. From the Approval Rule Detail page, click **Manage Entries**.
2. Select the criteria, based on the previously selected dimensions.



3. Enter the assignee details:

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Option	Description
Sequence	If you are going to use this rule with a *Subprocess* in an Approval Step, you can select to add another assignee, otherwise do not add more.
Type	Choose from **User, Role, Queue, Related User, Custom User, Custom Role, Custom Queue** or **Auto Approval**.
Value	You need to enter a valid Salesforce value for the assignee, based on the Type selection.
Label	Enter a label to associate with the Value.
Depends On	If you have multiple assignees for the rule entry, enter the number corresponding to the assignee who you want to make the current assignee dependent on.
Notify Only	An email is sent to the assignee, without any action items.
Send Email	An email is sent to the assignee, informing them they must make an approval decision.
Skip Unresolved Assignee	Select to optionally skip an unresolved approver from the list of sequential approvers.
Escalate To	If the assignee does not approve or reject a request within a stipulated frame of time, the request is escalated to the specific assignee.
Description	Description for the assignee.

4. Click ✚ to add another rule entry - or - Click **Save** to go to the Approval Rule Detail page.

The rule entries are now in use by the approval rule.

Now that the approval rule has assignees, you can create an Intelligent approval process and reference the approval rule and it will use values entered here to route the approval.

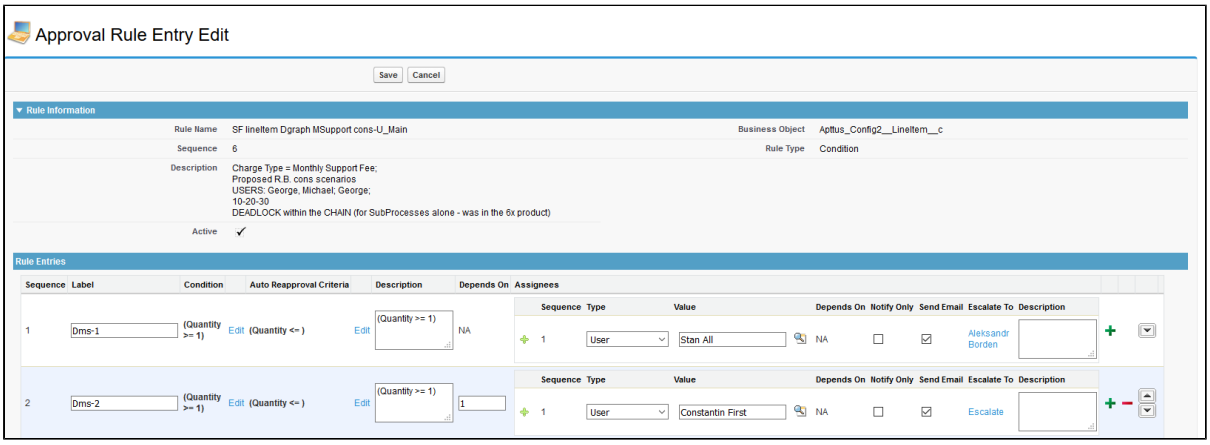
Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Setting up Auto-escalation for Rule Assignees

> **Important**
>
> Auto Escalation should be set-up on approval rules that will be used as sub-process (context header object) ONLY. Auto escalation should not be setup on child process (child records or line items).

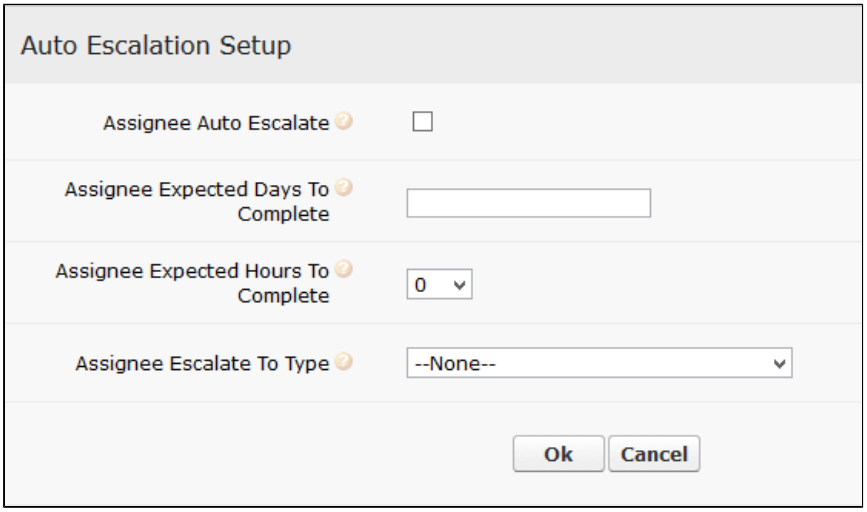
To setup auto-escalation for assignees, there must be an Approval Rule.

1. From the Approval Rule Detail page, click **Manage Entries**.
2. Select the criteria, based on the previously selected dimensions.



3. Enter the assignee details.
4. Click **Escalate To**. The Auto Escalation Setup dialog appears.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



5. Enter the escalation details:

Option	Description
Assignee Auto Escalate	Select this check box to enable auto escalation for the specific assignee. If the Assignee does not approve or reject the request within the specified days or hours, the request is escalated.
Assignee Expected Days/Hours To Complete	Specify the days or hours within which the assignee should approve or reject the request. If no action is taken on the request, it is escalated to the assignee specified in the Assignee Escalate To Type field.
Assignee Escalate To Type	Specify the assignee you want to escalate the request to. The Assignee type can be user, role, queue, backup admin, user manager, delegated user, related user, User Approval Matrix Next Approver

Approval Policies

Approval policies enable you to set the number of approved requests required for a process to be considered approved, based on unanimity, majority, or percentage. This is done by selecting a policy type for an approval rule and associating it with an approval process through a subprocess assignee.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

When there are multiple approvers for a sub-process, as the approvers complete their requests the system uses the policy to determine when the approval process is finished. When an approval process reaches the approval or rejection threshold, any remaining approval requests do not need to be completed.

For example, if you have a majority policy with five approvers and the first three approvers approve the approval request, there is no need for the remaining two approvers to answer the request. 3 out of 5 have approved it to reach a majority and the Approval Status for the object is set to Approved. Even if a single approver rejects the request, the approval status for the object is set as Rejected.

There are four policy types:

Unanimous	All approvers must approve their requests for it to be approved. This is the same as the default Intelligent Approvals behavior.
Majority	Majority of approvers must approve the request for it to be approved. To ensure this policy evaluates as expected, you should ensure you have an odd number of approvers. If you have an even number of approvers and you end up with the same number of approvals and rejections, the request is rejected.
Percent	The designated percentage must be met or exceeded for the request to be approved.
Quorum	The designated number must be met or exceeded for the request to be approved in the **Approval Count** field. For example, if you set up **Approval Count** as 2, and you have 4 approval requests, out of which 2 of your approval requests are approved, then the Approval Status is set to *Approved*. If any 2 of your approval requests are rejected, the system waits for the next 2 approvers to take the decision. If the remaining 2 approvers approve the request, the Approval Status is set to *Approved.* **Note** The above system behaviour is functional when you have selected the **Continue Policy Approval on a Reject** check box.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Note

You cannot use approval policies and consolidated approvals together. You can only use one or the other in an approval process.

From the May Patch 1 release onwards, once an assignee rejects an approval request, you can choose to proceed to send approval requests to the rest of the assignees in the policy despite a rejection. In the earlier releases, the policy status would be set to **Rejected** even if a single assignee in the rule rejected a request.

The Approval policy (supported for Sub Process or Child Process steps) supports a new feature to **Continue Policy Approval on a Reject** when a policy is enabled.

- When checked, this feature allows the user to approve their assigned approval requests, as long as the policy criteria can still be met, even though one or more approval requests within the Sub process or Child process are already rejected.
- When unchecked, all the approval requests with status other than Approved, within the Sub Process or Child Process will be cancelled, whenever any request is rejected. Policy approval for that approval Sub Process or Child Process will stop immediately.

The **Continue Approval Policy After Rejection** check box takes precedence over the **Continue Pending Approvals on a Reject** check box, which is set at the process level.

The table highlights the behavior for the **Continue Approval Policy After Rejection** check box**.**

Policy Type	Behavior
Unanimous	All the assignees must approve the request for the status to be approved. Even if a single approver rejects the request, the Approval Status is Rejected. Continue Approval Policy after Reject (selected): All the assignees are routed the approval request, the approval request cycle continues even after a rejection. Continue Approval Policy after Reject (de-selected): The approval request cycle stops after a rejection. The Policy status is set to Rejected.
Majority	Continue Approval Policy after Reject (selected): All the assignees are routed the approval request, the approval request cycle continues even after a rejection. If the majority of the approvers have approved the request, the status is Approved.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Policy Type	Behavior
	Continue Approval Policy after Reject (de-selected): The approval request cycle stops after a rejection. The Policy status is set to Rejected.
Quorum	Continue Approval Policy after Reject (selected): All the assignees are routed the approval request, the approval request cycle continues even after a rejection. If the specified quorum of the approvers have approved the request, the status is Approved. Continue Approval Policy after Reject (de-selected): The approval request cycle stops after a rejection. The Policy status is set to Rejected.
Percent	Continue Approval Policy after Reject (selected): All the assignees are routed the approval request, the approval request cycle continues even after a rejection. If the specified percentage of the approvers have approved the request, the status is Approved. The approval request cycle stops after a rejection. The Policy status is set to Rejected.

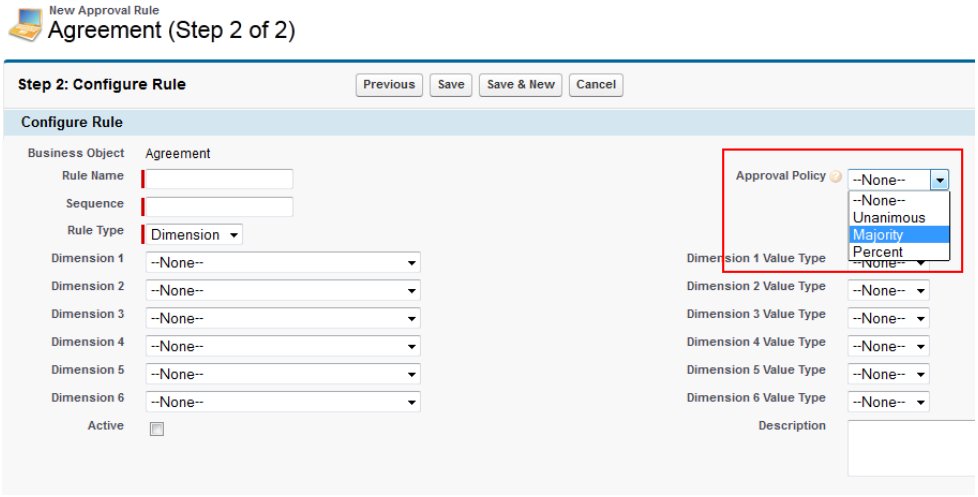
To create an approval policy

1. Go to the **Approval Rule Dimensions** tab and create a dimension.
2. Go to the **Approval Rules** tab and create a rule. Create a rule per usual, but from the **Approval Policy** list, select from **Unanimous**, **Majority**, **Quorum** or **Percent**.

   If you select *Percent*, an additional field is displayed for entering the percentage threshold for requests, to have the Approval Status reach Approved.
   If you select *Quorum*, 2 additional fields are displayed.

   Approval Count for entering the designated number of approval requests to set the Approval Status to Approved. **Continue Policy Approval on a Reject** check box enables you to let the approvers decide even when the designated number of approvers have approved or rejected an approval request.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



3. Go to the **Approval Process** tab and create a process. When you create an Approval Step, in *Step 4: Select Assigned Approvers*, from **Assignee Type** select **Subprocess** and from **Assignee Value**, select the approval rule created earlier.

The approval process is in place to make use of the policy the next time an approval request for an object meets the entry criteria is initiated.

If you select Percent, an additional field is displayed for entering the percentage threshold for requests, to have the Approval Status reach Approved.If you select Quorum, 2 additional fields are displayed. Approval Count for entering the designated number of approval requests to set the Approval Status to Approved. Continue Policy Approval on a Reject enables you to let the approvers decide even when the designated number of approvers have approved or rejected an approval request.

Optional Configuration

Intelligent Approvals provides a wizard-like set of pages that guide you through the process of creating approval processes and term exception approvals; however, if for some reason you do not want the benefits of this it can be disabled.

Changing this setting does not affect the object values, but the ability to be guided through the creation and editing process is lost when you change to the basic Salesforce.com page.

To change the default Intelligent Approvals Process UI

Build > Create > Objects > Approval Process

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

1. Go to **Standard Buttons and Links** and click **Edit** beside **Approval Processes** Tab. By default, *ApprovalProcessDefnList (Visualforce Page, Package: Apttus Approvals Management)* is selected.
2. Select **Override With Standard** Salesforce.com **Page** and click **Save**.
3. Go back to **Standard Buttons and Links** and click **Edit** beside **View**. By default, *ApprovalProcessDefn (Visualforce Page, Package: Apttus Approvals Management)* is selected.
4. Select **Override With Standard** Salesforce.com **Page** and click **Save**. Repeat step 3 and step 4 for **Edit** and **New**.

When someone next accesses the **Approval Processes** tab and creates a new item or views or edits an existing item, the pages look rubbish.

To return to the default Approval Processes UI, settings back to *ApprovalProcessDefnList (Visualforce Page, Package: Apttus Approvals Management)* and *ApprovalProcessDefn (Visualforce Page, Package: Apttus Approvals Management)*.

To change the default Term Exception Approvals UI

Build > Create > Objects > Term Exception Approval

1. Go to **Standard Buttons and Links** and click **Edit** beside **Edit**. By default, *TermExApproval (Visualforce Page, Package: Apttus Approvals Management)* is selected.
2. Select **Override With Standard** Salesforce.com **Page** and click **Save**.
3. Go back to S**tandard Buttons and Links** and click **Edit** beside **New**.
4. Select **Override With Standard** Salesforce.com **Page** and click **Save**.

When someone next accesses the Term Exception Approvals tab and clicks New, or Edit for an existing item, the pages look rubbish.

To return to the default Term Exception Approvals UI, change the Edit and New settings back to *TermExApproval (Visualforce Page, Package: Apttus Approvals Management)*.

By default, when searching for a step assignee type of *Queue*, *Role*, *Rule*, *Subprocess* or *User*, the results are displayed twenty per page.

The number can be changed; however, it is important to understand how changing the value can impact performance. If the number is too high, it can take additional time for the search page to load the results. When no value is designated, the default twenty is used.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

To set the assignees search page

Build > Develop > Custom Settings

1. Click **Manage** beside **Approvals System Properties**.
2. Click **Edit** beside **System Properties**.
3. In the **UI Assignee Search Page Size** field, enter the maximum number of rows to display on each search page.
4. Click **Save**.

The next time someone is configuring an approval step and selects an Assignee Type of *Queue*, *Role*, *Rule*, *Subprocess* or *User*, the resulting search page will reflect this setting.

Advanced currency management (ACM) is optional Salesforce functionality that must be enabled directly by Salesforce, to allow you to manage dated exchange rates on opportunity records.

When ACM is enabled in your org and being used on opportunities, you cannot use any *Opportunity* object fields that are of a *Data Type* of *Currency* in your intelligent approval emails or on the approval summary page. This includes the standard *Amount* field and any custom fields using the currency type.

If you want to have currency type field information in your emails, you cannot have the values within the content of the email. You would need to have links back to the opportunity record itself in the email and users would have to view the date within Salesforce.

Approvals are now supported for Partner Managed Quotes and Contracts using Salesforce Communities. Your channel partners can not only create quotes and contracts, but can also access all the approval functions that are available to your internal employees. For a community page setup, enable the following functions as community user:

- Preview Overall from Cart
- Return to Cart from Cart Preview Page
- Preview Overall from Quote Header
- Line Item Preview from Cart
- Submit for Approval from Cart Preview
- Return to Quote from Cart Submit for Approval confirmation page
- Submit for Approval from Quote Preview Page
- Return to Quote from Submit for Approval from Quote Header Preview page

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- Approvals History page from Quote Header for Submitted Quote
- My Approvals Page (When no approvals needed)
- My Approvals Page (When approvals needed)
- Approve from My Approvals Page
- Reject from My Approvals Page
- Take Queue Ownership from My Approvals Page
- Cancel Submitted Approval as community user

Do the following to provide community access for a community user:

1. Assign all the Approval packages to the Community User.
2. Create a permission set for the community users.
3. Assign Apex Pages/Classes access to the permission set for community users.
4. Manage User Assignments for the Community User.
5. Provide fields and object level permissions.
6. For Objects, set the Field Level accessibility by profile - Hidden/Visible/Editable
7. Navigate to Object > Page layouts > Page Layout assignment. Associate profiles to the layout.
8. Go to Permission set > Object Setting, provide Create, Read, Edit, and Delete permissions for the community user.
9. Navigate to Permission Set > Object Settings > Proposals > Provide permission to the Configure Products (Approvals) link or button .

   If any error is appears pertaining the Read permissions of account locations, navigate to Object Settings > Account Locations > and provide all 4 Create, Read, Edit, and Delete permissions.

10. Go to Setup > All Communities > Administration > Settings and make the tabs visible to your community user.

Errors you may face during IWA community setup :

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- After clicking the Configure Products (Approvals) button, Error: SObject row was retrieved via SOQL without querying the requested field: Apttus_Proposal_Proposalc. Apttus_QPConfigLocationId_c.
  Resolution : > You might have missed point 9.
- After clicking the Configure Products (Approvals) button, Error : Assigned to : Assigned To ID : Owner
  Resolution : > Go To Custom Settings -> Go To Config System Properties > Assign Admin User
- When you click Submit For Approvals, error : Backup Admin Not Assigned error appears, navigate to Setup-> Custom Settings -> Approvals Custom Config > Click ProductConfiguration__c > Backup Admin User and provide a Backup Admin user name.

To configure buttons and fields for approvals in communities

Ensure that you have set the requisite permissions for community users for apex classes, objects, and VF pages.

1. Navigate to the **Approval** object and create a custom field for approval actions with datatype as formula. The formula field for the custom field remains the same as that of the Approval Action field except for the hyperlink.
2. Add the site prefix specific to the community setting, to the hyperlink. For example, HYPERLINK("/developer/Apttus_Approval__ApprovalRequestEscalate?id="&Id,"Escalate","_top"), here developer is the site prefix for the community org.
3. Ensure that you add the custom fields to the appropriate page layout of the pages the community user has access to.

After you add the button to the community page layout, the button is visible to the community user having access to the page.

For each community page which has a specific hyperlink, configure separate custom buttons and fields for the community and associate the site prefix in the hyperlink of the particular custom button or field.

By default, if an approval rule step cannot find an assignee to send an approval to, it will get routed to the backup approver. The *APTS_EnableRuleCriteriaForStep* admin property setting can override the default behavior, and skip the step, instead of sending it to the backup approver.

If this property is set to *True*, when a rule has no assignees the step is skipped. This has the same effect as a step filter that evaluates to false.

 Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

To set the admin property setting

1. Select the **Admin** tab - or - select and select **Admin**.
2. Click **Go** to display all of the admin settings.
3. If **APTS_EnableRuleCriteriaForStep** is listed, click **Edit**, enter **True** or **False** in the **Value** field, and click **Save**. - or - if the setting is not displayed, click **New Admin**.
4. Enter the name **APTS_EnableRuleCriteriaForStep**, enter **True** or **False** in the **Value** field, and click **Save**.

Subsequent approval processes that are routed to a step where an assignee cannot be found will be impacted by this setting.

To have values available in the Object picklist, when creating a Custom Value Expression for determining assignees, those custom objects must be added to Approval System Properties. For more details on where these objects are used in Intelligent Approvals, see Creating Expressions.

Note

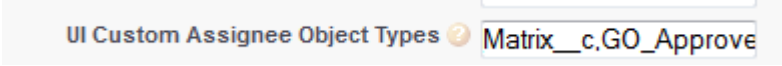
The custom Salesforce objects are configured as normal.

To set up Custom Value Expression Objects

The custom objects you want to add must have been created already.

Build > Develop > Custom Settings

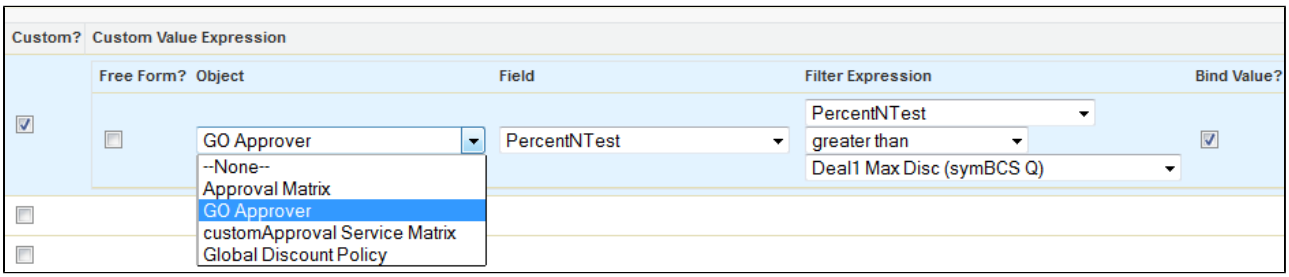
1. Click **Manage** for **Approvals System Properties**.
2. Click **Edit** for **System Properties**.
3. In the **UI Custom Assignee Objects Types** field, enter API names for the custom objects you want to use, separated by commas. The format should be CustomObjectname1__c, CustomObjectname2___c, CustomObjectname3__c.



4. Click **Save** when complete.

The custom objects are now available for selection in the *Object* picklist in the *Custom Value Expression* section, when you are selecting approval request assignees.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

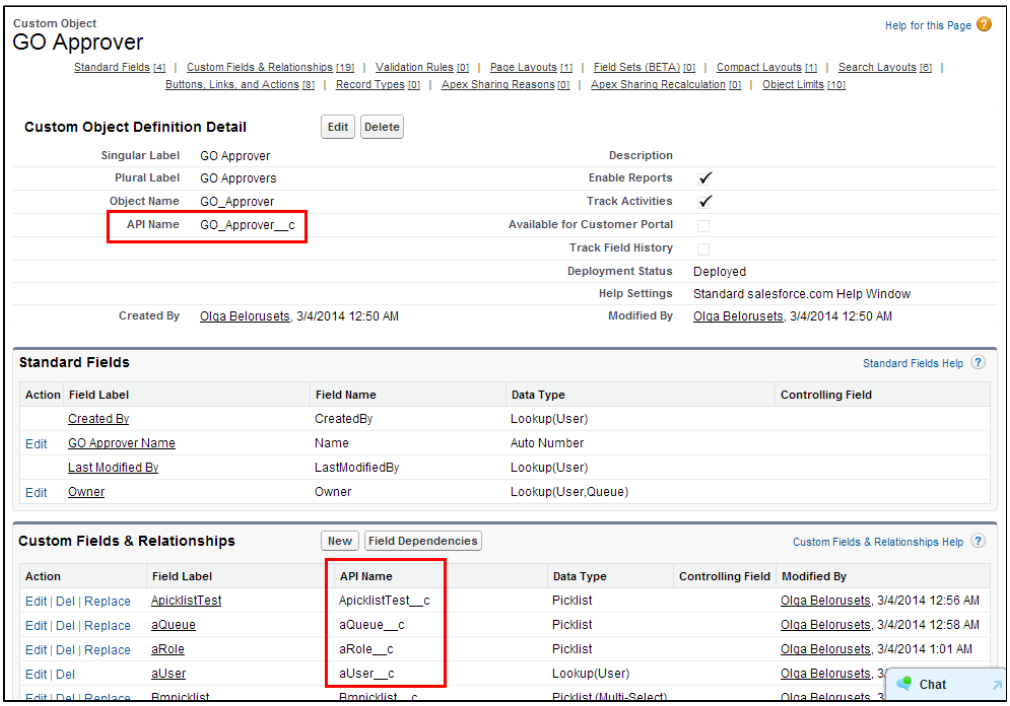


Custom Assignee Example

You can create custom objects to be used with custom assignee types in approval rules. This example will take a custom object called *GO Approver* and show how it is used to provide assignees when creating an approval rule.

Step 1: Create your custom object.

From **Setup**, go to **Create > Objects** and click **New Custom Object**. Create your custom object, adding the necessary fields to enable you to create a formula for selecting assignees. The API name for the custom object and its fields are what are used to create the custom formula in the approval rule.

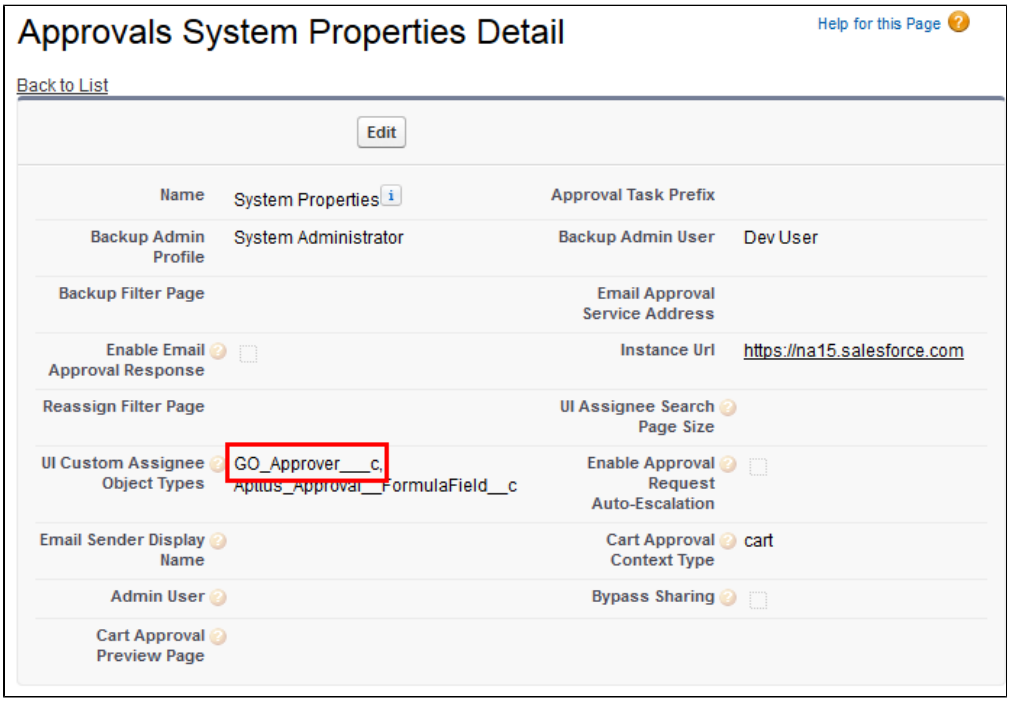


Step 2: Make the custom object available to Intelligent Approvals via a custom setting.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

From **Setup**, go to **Develop > Custom Settings** and click **Manage** for **Approval Systems Properties**. Click **Edit** and for **UI Custom Assignee Object Types** enter the name of the custom objects you want to use with custom assignees.

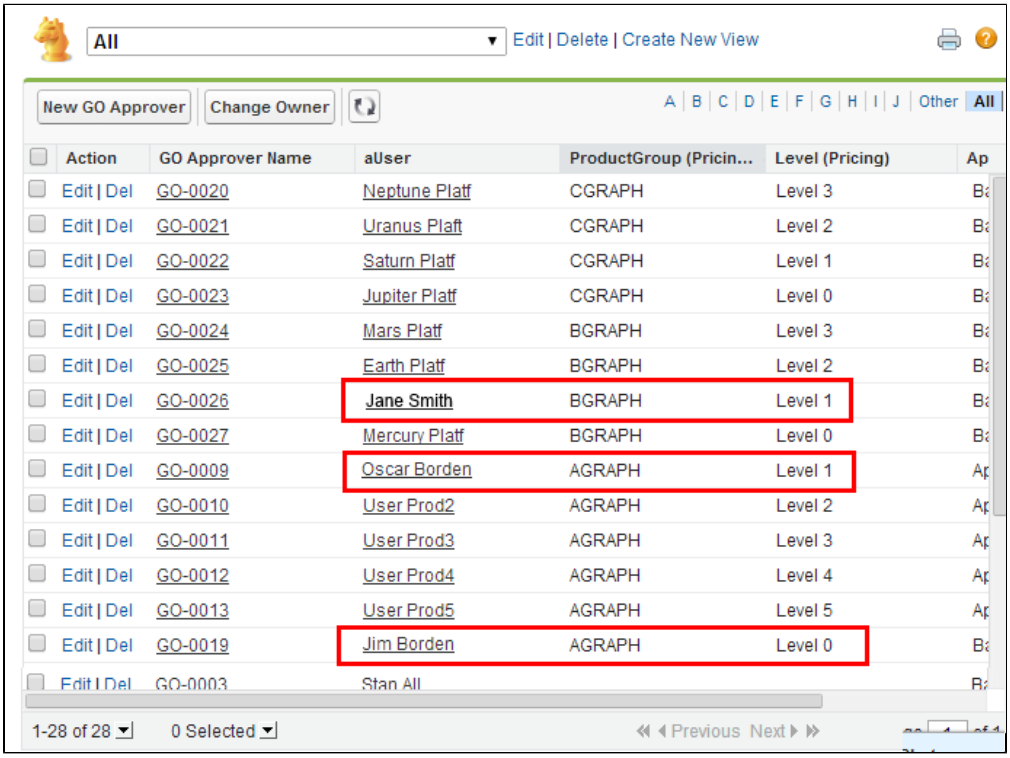
The Approval Systems Property must include the API name of the custom object:



Step 3: Create users for the custom object.

Go to the *GO Approver* tab to display the page and create all the users you want to approve requests. The values you enter in the fields for each user is what is used when you create formulas for selecting assignees.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

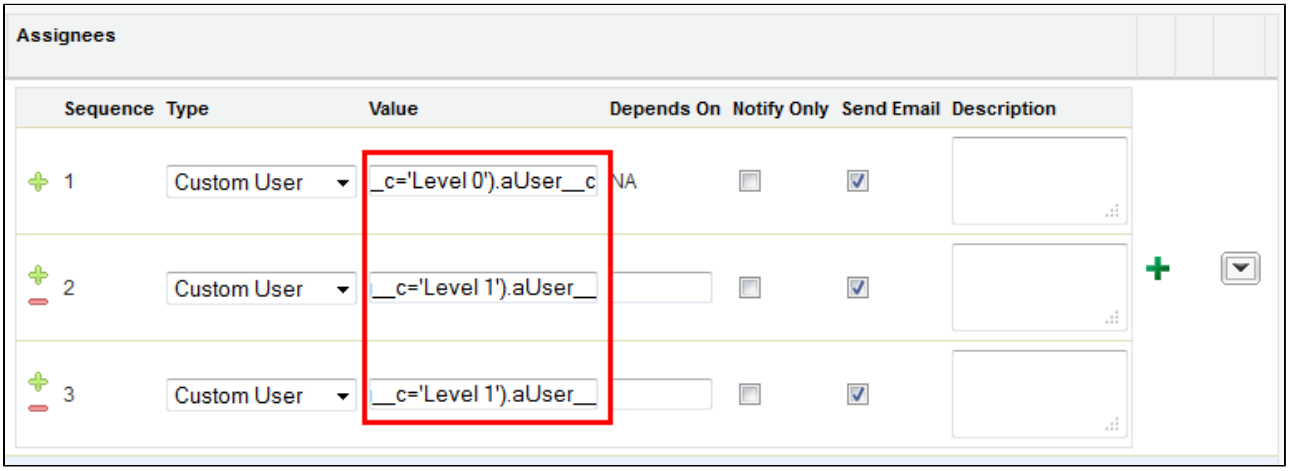


Step 4: Create your approval rules, using formula expressions to select assignees.

Go to an Approval Rule of Type *Condition* and create assignees by selecting *Custom User* and then enter a formula in the *Value* field. For instance the following formulas would route an approval to the following assignees, based on the users you created for the custom object.

GO_Approver__c(ProductGroup_Pricing__c='AGRAPH' AND Level_Pricing__c='Level 0').aUser__c	Jim Borden
GO_Approver__c(ProductGroup_Pricing__c='AGRAPH' AND Level_Pricing__c='Level 1').aUser__c	Oscar Borden
GO_Approver__c(ProductGroup_Pricing__c='BGRAPH' AND Level_Pricing__c='Level 1').aUser__c	Jane Smith

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



Approval matrices enable you to dynamically assign an approval request to someone selected from a list of a maximum of six potential approvers. An approval matrix can be selected as an assignee type when creating an approval step.

The potential approvers are assigned an approval level, which is associated with a percentage discount. Those discount values are based on the *Authorized Discount Percents* set up in Global Discount Policies. You must have these policies set up for an approval matrix to route approvals to the correct level.

The Global Discount Policy values set the default discount percentage levels that will typically require approval and also designate who the approver should be for each level. Matrices enable you to have approvals start at any of the policy levels. For instance, if the policy's *Authorized Discount Percent* for *Approval Level 1* is 15% and no approval is required until the discount on certain items reaches 35%, an approval matrix can be created that does not start until the approval level 2.

To create Global Discount Policies

1. Select the **Global Discount Policies** tab or click ? Unknown Attachment and then select **Global Discount Policies**.
2. Click **New** and enter a whole number for the **Authorized Discount Percent**. This represents the percentage discount at which an approval will be routed to the associated approval level.
3. Enter a description and then select the **Approval Level** for the discount policy entry. This value will be used in the approval matrix to associate a user with the approval level.
4. Click **Save** to return to the Global Discount Policy list - or - click **Save & New** and create another policy entry.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Once you have created the required policies, you can create an Approval Matrix that will make use of the Global Discount Policy levels.

To create an approval matrix

There must be Global Discount Policy levels for each level you want to use in the matrix.

1. Click the **Approval Matrix** tab or click

and then select **Approval Matrix**.
2. Click **New** to display the Approval Matrix Edit page.
3. Enter the required values for the following:

Option	Description
Matrix Owner	This is the Salesforce.com user account associated with the matrix. This means the matrix can also be accessed from the *Custom Links* section on that user's account page. The owner and the user do not need to be the same user account.
User	This is used to find the correct approval matrix, for when an object enters the intelligent approval process. For instance, if an opportunity enters the approval process and an approval step assignee type is an approval matrix
Is Active	Select this option to have the matrix available for inclusion in an approval process. **Note** **Is Valid** is an internal Salesforce.com setting that can be ignored.
Approval Level	This is the level the approval matrix will start at, which corresponds to the same level for global discount policies.
Next Level Approver	This approver is typically the same as *Approver 2*.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

4. Select the Approver, Authorized Discount, and Approver Level values for each approver you want to include in the matrix. The Authorized Discount value should match those of the Global Discount Policies.
5. Click **Save** to return to the Approval Matrix list - or - click **Save & New** and create another matrix.

If it is active, the approval matrix can now be selected when configuring approval process steps.

After you create an Approval Matrix record, you can see the following links when you edit the Approval Matrix record:

- Generate Approval Matrix: When you create a new approval matrix for a single user, you can simply click the Generate Approval Matrix link. This creates the matrix for a new user and adjusts any other matrices that have dependencies on the created batch job.
- Generate Approval Matrix for All: Click the Generate Approval Matrix for All if you have changed values in the Global Approver Settings (the threshold percentages) which requires that all matrices be regenerated and use a batch job mechanism as well.
- Set Next Level Approver: Enables you to change the next level approver specified in the matrix. For example, you can change Approver 2 to Approver 5.

Expected Behavior

The suggested way to use these matrices is as follows:

- For a single user, create a new approval matrix record and enter the minimum information such as User, isActive, isValid, (both true) and Approval Level. Click Generate Approvals Matrix to fill in the rest of the values of the matrix automatically.
- For multiple users, create a new approval matrix record for each user and enter the minimum information such as User, isActive, isValid, (both true) and Approval Level. Click Generate Approvals Matrix to fill in the rest of the values of the matrix automatically. Click Generate Matrix for All to do the same (this runs more jobs and updates to matrices for all users).
- For a bunch of users or whenever global discounts have been adjusted, pick any matrix record and click Generate Approval Matrices for All. Ensure that you specify the first and last matrix records so every single record gets updated.

Related fields can be used to add custom formula fields to Intelligent Approval criteria.

Specifically you can use related fields with:

- Approval Process Entry Criteria

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- Approval Step Entry Criteria
- Re-Approval Criteria
- Child and Search Filters
- Approval Rules Criteria - Both Dimension and Condition
- Approval Rule Entry Criteria - Approval conditions and Auto Reapproval conditions

When you configure a formula field to be used as a related field, it is automatically available with each of the criterias listed above.

To add business objects to Formula Field picklist

1. From Setup, select **Create > Objects > Formula Field (Approvals)**.
2. From **Custom Fields & Relationships**, click **Business Object**.
3. From **Picklist Values**, click **New**.
4. Enter the API Name for the objects you want to include, such as Apttus_Config2__ProductConfiguration__c and Apttus_Config2__LineItem__c.
5. Click **Save**.

The API names are now added to the picklist values.

The next time you create or edit a Formula Field (Approvals), based on the values in Step 4, *Product Configuration* and *Line Item* are available from the *Business Object* picklist.

To set up Formula Fields (Approvals)

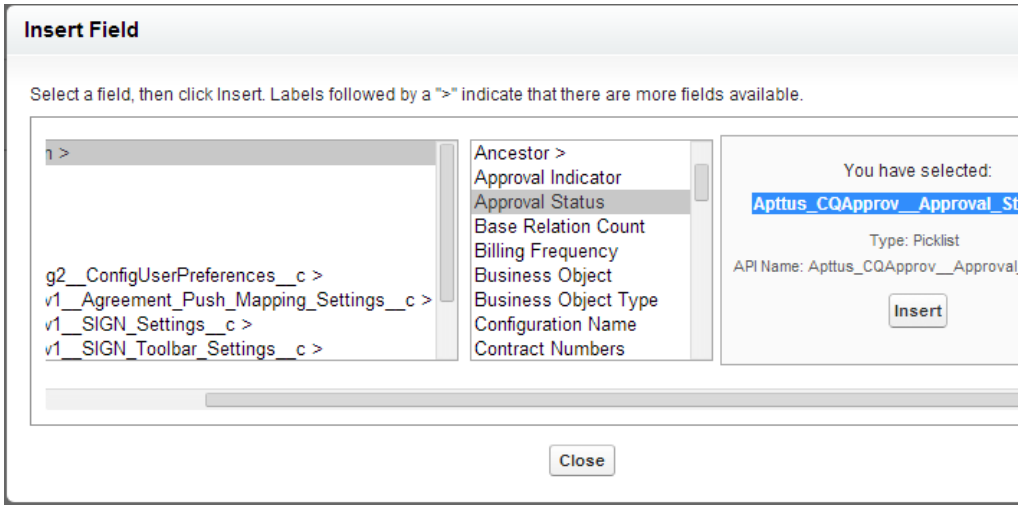
If you want additional Business Object options other than the default values, they must be added to the *Formula Field* (Approvals) business object picklist.

1. Click

and select **Formula Fields (Approvals)**.
2. Click **New** and enter the following:

Option	Description
Field Name	Name displayed in the Field list when setting entry criteria for a process, step f conditions, or re-approval criteria.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Option	Description
Type	Currently this value can only be *Relationship*.
Business Object	This is the business context object that relates to the context object of the appı process or approval step. The field will only be available in a process or step, v value matches that of the process or step. The available default values are *Sta Agreement*, *Agreement Line Item*, and *Opportunity*.
Formula	Contains fields from the business object, such asApttus_Config2__PriceListId_ Price List field on the Configuration object. It can also be used for fields that are associated with the business object via a field. For this you must use__rto indicate there is a relationship between the fie the object. For instance,Apttus_Config2__ConfigurationId__r.Apttus_QPConfig _Proposald__r.Payment_Term__cenables the Payment Term field to be used Product Configuration is the business object. You can use Salesforce Insert Field dialog to build your formula and then copy paste it into the Formula field. You can access the formula by creating a new fi appropriate business object. In this example the *Approval Status* for the *Produ Configuration* object. 
Description	Enter information to state the purpose of the formula field is.

3. Click **Save**.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

The new field is added to the Formula Field (Approvals) list and can be included in an approval process.

When you go to add criteria in approvals, the Field list will display the related field, with the format *Related(Field Name): Formula Field Label*. For example *Related(Price List): Price List*.

When you create step entry criteria for your approval process, you can now use custom child object fields with the expressions. Previously you were limited to the fields of the main context object.

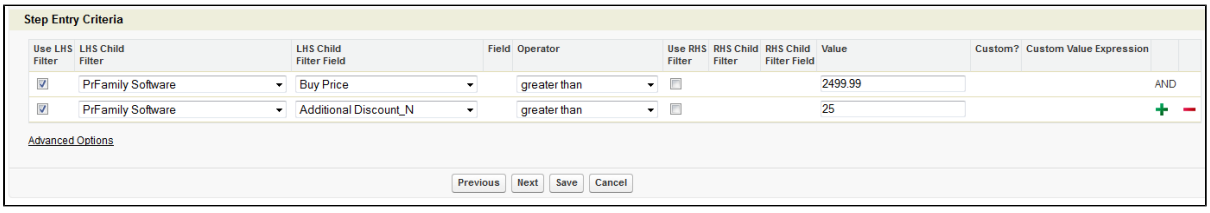
When creating an approval step you can choose to use a child filter. Here you can select from a list of search filters that are related to child objects. This enables you to then select any of that child object's fields. That field value can be compared with another child object field, a static value, or a custom expression.

As with any expression, you must ensure that the operators you choose are applicable to the data type of the fields you are comparing. For instance, when using a percentage field you can use operators such as *less than* and *greater than*, but not *contains* or *starts with*. As well the value you are comparing against would need to be another percentage field or a static value such as the number *75*.

Configuring the Search Filters

You must have created any custom child objects you want to use the filters.

1. Go to **Build > Installed Packages > Apttus Approvals Management** and under **Package Components** select **Business Object** for the **Search Filter** parent object.
2. Under **Picklist Values** click **New** and enter the API name for the child object you want to use with child filters. Repeat the step for each child object.
3. Go to the **Search Filters** tab or click ? Unknown Attachment and then **Search Filters**.
4. Click **New**, select the **Business Object** you want to use the filters with and click **Next**. This can include child objects of objects associated with an approval process.
5. Enter a **Filter Name** and **Description**.



Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

6. Enter the required **Filter Criteria**, which will be used in the step entry criteria for the approval process. It is this expression that forms the basis of the child filter expression in the step entry criteria, for determining if an approval step is used.
7. Click **Save**.

The child object will be available when you select *Use LHS Filter* or *USE RHS Filter*, when creating an approval process for its parent object.

Walkthrough

Filters must have been created already via the Search Filters tab.

1. For an approval process, click **New Approval Step**.
2. Enter a name for the step and click **Next**.
3. Click **Use LHS Filter** and the **LHS Child Filter** and **LHS Child Filter Field** drop-down lists are displayed. All search filters created for the child object of the approval process are available from the **LHS Child Filter** list.
4. Select the child object from the **LHS Child Filter** and select one of its fields from **LHS Child Filter Field**.
5. Select a valid operator for the field type and then select another filter or fixed value to compare it to.
6. Add further filters if necessary and then click **Next** to finish creating the step.

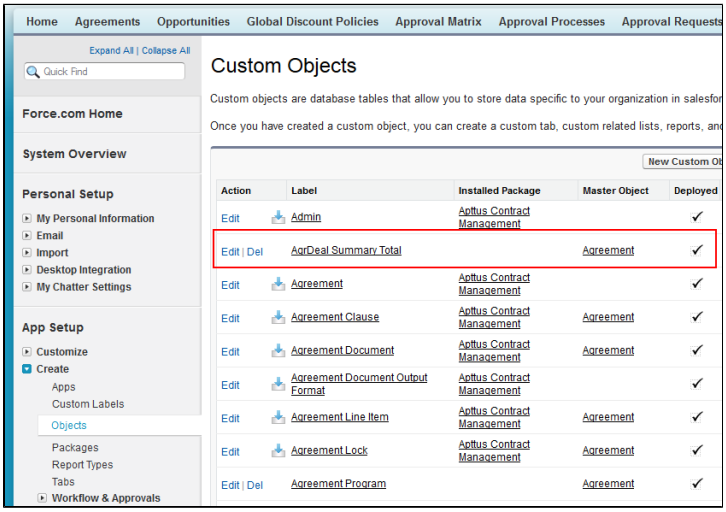
When an object record submitted for approval matches the step entry criteria, the approval process will be routed to that step's assignee.

Example: Child Object Filters

Using Agreements as an example, previously you could only use Agreement fields, such as Total Agreement Value, Category, and Status for entry criteria. With this feature you could create a new custom object and associate it with the Agreement object, enabling it to be used for step entry criteria.

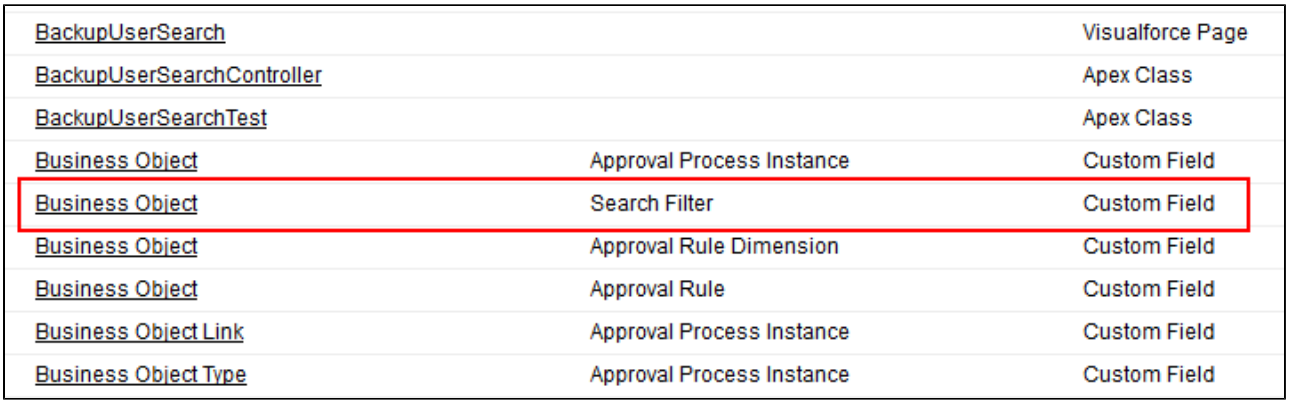
Step 1: Create the custom child object for the Agreement object. In this instance that will be *AgrDeal Summary Total*. This will include fields used for indicating additional discounts for products included in an agreement.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



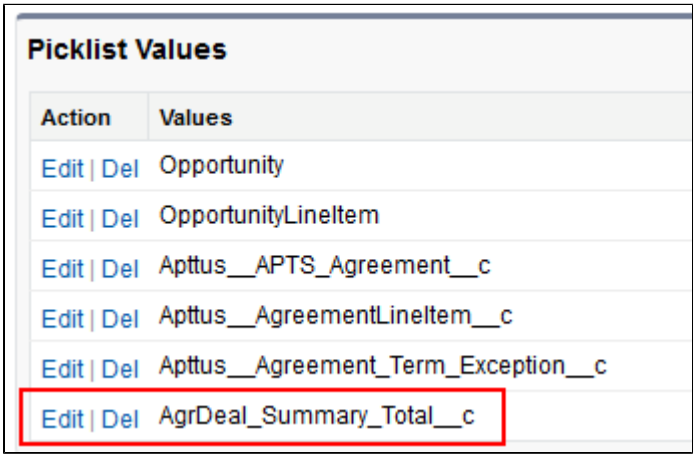
Step 2: After the new custom object has been created for Agreements, the *AgrDeal Summary Total* related list needs to be added to the *Agreements* page layout.

Step 3: Add *AgrDeal Summary Total* to the picklist for the Search Filter Object. This is required to have it available when you set up a Search Filter in the next step. You got to *Build > Installed Packages > Apttus Approvals Management > View Components* and select *Business Object* (Search Filter).

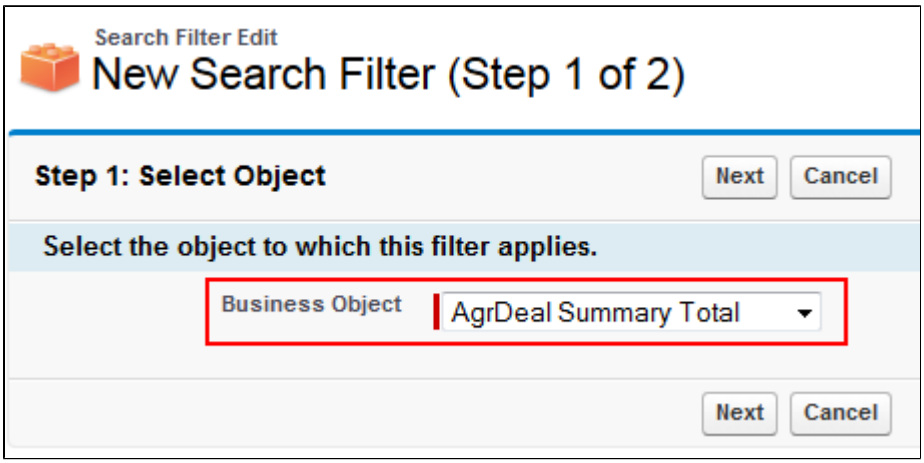


The *AgrDeal Summary Total* API name needs to be entered into the picklist.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

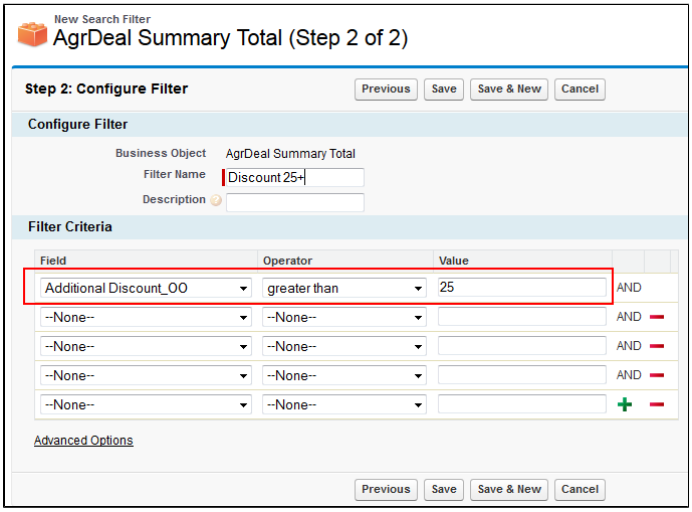


Step 4: Now that AgrDeal Summary Total had been added to the picklist values, a search filter can be created that references it. This is then referenced in the approval step entry criteria. Click ? Unknown Attachment and then *Search Filters*, to begin creating the new filter called *Discount 25+*.

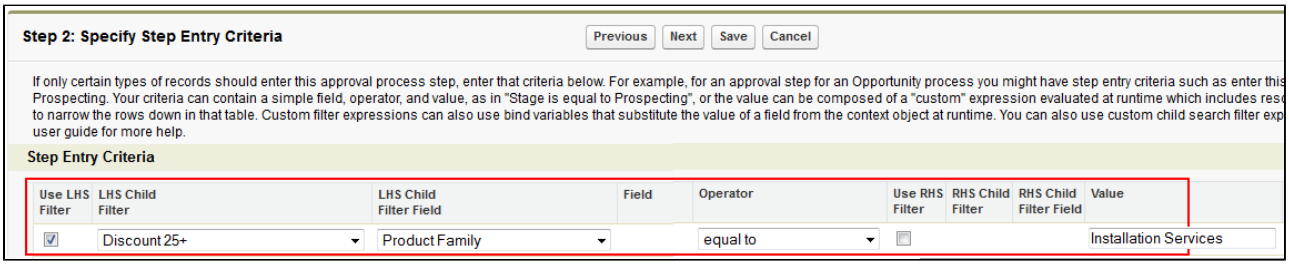


The expression you create for the search filter will be used to build the step entry criteria expression. Then when the *Additional Discount* value for an *AgrDeal Summary Total* record is greater than *25%*, the step entry criteria expression will be checked.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

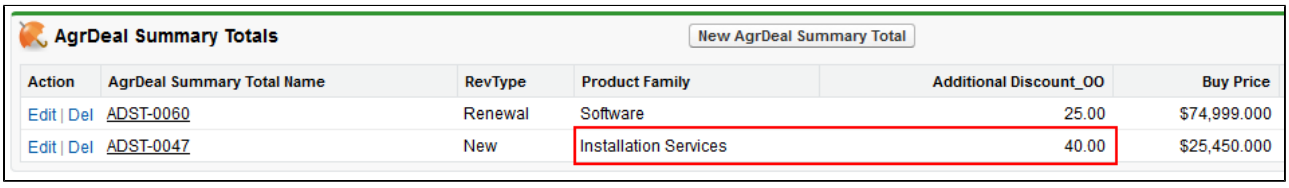


Step 5: Now an approval process step needs to be created which references that search filter. Go to the approval process for an Agreement and create a new step. In *Step 2*, click *Use LHS Filter* and from the *LHS Child Filter* list, select *Discount 25+*. This means only agreement records with an *AgrDeal Summary Total* record that has an *Additional Discount* greater than 25% may enter that step.



Because this step is to route approvals to users who are responsible for the Acme Data product, as well as having a discount of greater than 25%, the AgrDeal Summary Total record's *Product Family* field, must have a value of *Acme Data*. Select an assignee for the step and then save and activate the approval process.

Step 6: Now that the approval process and approval step have been activated, submit an agreement for approval that evaluates as true when compared with the step entry criteria. Here *ADST-0047* has a *40%* discount for the *Installation Services* product family.



Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

This meets the entry criteria as configured above and an approval request email is sent to the assignee for this step.

1. Go to **Setup > Develop > Apex Classes** and click **New**.
2. Copy and paste the code below and ensure the name of the new class is *CartViewController* .

```
/**
 *    Apttus CPQ Approval
 *    CartViewController
 *
 *  @2012-2013 Apttus Inc. All rights reserved.
 */
public with sharing class CartViewController  {
    // context id
    private ID contextId = null;
    // approval type
    private String approvalType = null;
    /**
     * Class Constructor
     * @param stdController the standard controller
     */
    public CartViewController(ApexPages.StandardController
stdController) {
        // get context id
        contextId = stdController.getId();
        // get default approval context type
        //approvalType = SystemUtil.getDefaultApprovalCtxType();
        approvalType = 'cart';
    }
    /**
     * Gets context object Id
     */
    public ID getCtxObjectId() {
        return contextId;
    }
    /**
     * Gets cart approval context type
     */
    public String getCtxApprovalType() {
        return approvalType;
    }
}
```


Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

3. Save the class and then go to **Pages** and click **New**.
4. Copy and paste the following code into the Visualforce Markup window

```
<apex:page standardController="Apttus_Proposal__Proposal__c"
    extensions="CartViewController">
    <apex:form >
        <apex:pageMessages id="errorPage" />
        <apex:outputPanel id="idApprovalContextPanel">
            <Apttus_CQApprov:ApprovalContextView contexSOId="{!
ctxObjectId}"
                contextApprovalType="{!ctxApprovalType}"/>
        </apex:outputPanel>
    </apex:form>
</apex:page>
```

5. Ensure that the **Name** is *CartView* and click **Save**.
6. Go to **Create > Objects** and click **Quote/Proposal**.
7. Scroll to **Page Layouts** and click **Edit** for the page layout you want to add Cart Approvals to.
8. From the **Visualforce Pages** window, drag and drop **CartView** onto the page.
9. Display the VisualForce Page Properties for CartView and select **Show scrollbars**.
10. Save the changes to the page.

The CartView page acts like a related list for displaying the Cart Approvals, so the next time you go to a Quote/Proposal record that has been submitted for approval from the Cart, the approval steps and associated approvers will be displayed.

You must finish configuring the other objects before the feature will work as expected.

Licensing Intelligent Approvals for Custom Objects

For each user that needs to preview or submit approvals for a custom context object, they must have a license. This is handled through the *Apttus Custom Approvals Management* package.

To license users

You must have installed the license package.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

1. Go to **Build > Installed Packages** and click **Manage Licenses for Apttus Custom Approvals Management**.
2. Click **Add Users** and search for who you want to license to use approvals with custom objects.

All users in the Licensed Users list can use Approvals with Custom Objects.

Configuring a Custom Approval Action for Non-Salesforce or Apttus profiles

The Approval Action that is available by default as part of the Approval Request object, contains references to default Salesforce and Apttus profiles which your organization may not use. If you decide to create a custom object to use instead of the default Approval Action, you must ensure you handle $User.id correctly when creating the formula.

$User.id is limited to 15 characters, while some of the fields you compare it to may contain 18 characters. To accommodate this, you must ensure you concatenate any fields that are compared to $User.id, such as in the following example:

(OwnerId=$User.Id Left(Apttus_Approval__Assigned_To_Id_c,15)=$User.Id)

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Configuring Intelligent Workflow and Approvals for Agreement and related Objects

Configuration Overview

Intelligent Workflow and Approvals Management supports the Approvals and My Approvals pages out of the box for any object. With minimal configuration, you can set up both of these pages for any object and its child objects on which approvals is configured. This new capability overcomes the need for create custom Visualforce pages and Controllers for enabling approvals on any object, thus significantly simplifying the approval setup on any object and its related child objects.

Although these pages are now available out of the box, you have to configure Approval Required Check**.** You can get the Approval Required Check with the main Approvals Management package.

To create an approval process for Agreement header fields, Agreement Line Items, Agreement Term Exceptions, and Agreement Clauses, consider the following use cases for each of the Agreement objects.

For each of the following scenarios, you can view the Approval Requests, Approval Status and the changes in the header field or agreement clause for each approver on the MyApprovals and Approvals home page.

1. Agreement header fields: You can set up an approval process and subsequent steps on the Agreement object to initiate an approval request for various scenarios, such as the total agreement amount > 10000, or Agreement type is MSA, an approval request is sent to the CFO of your company. Create an approval process for the Agreement header fields.

You can configure a child process for the following objects.

- **Agreement Clauses**: You can also initiate an approval request when any change is made to the clause of an agreement document. This is required when you want to ensure that all the changes which your customer makes to the existing clauses are approved before finalizing an agreement. It might be possible that your customer changes the Agreement Start Date and your CFO wants to approve the change before finalizing and signing the agreement with your customer.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

For example, the agreement document contains a Warranty clause for 6 months and your customer wants to extend the warranty period to 1 year. Once your customer changes the period in the Warranty clause, you can set Approval process for the change in the Agreement Clause record.

An Approval with Agreement Clause is useful when you want to track addition of a new clause, modification of an existing clause or deletion of an existing clause from your agreement document. This can be done by tracking the Number of Clauses field of the Template object.

- **Agreement Line Items**: With the help of Intelligent Approvals and Contract Management, you can also create approval processes to track any changes made to the Agreement Line Items and accordingly initiate an approval request.

For example, when your customer changes the price of a product listed in your agreement document, you might require your manager to approve the change before the agreement is finalized.

Also, if there are addition or deletion of Line Items in your agreement document, and you want the higher authority to approve or reject the changes, Approvals can be used.

- **Agreement Term Exceptions**: It is also possible to initiate an approval request when a clause, associate with a term exception is checked in from X-Author Contracts**.**

An Approval with Term Exception is useful when your customer is requesting a change in an existing clause which requires approval from the CFO of your company, and this clause is specific to a single customer.
Considering the above example, if you renew an agreement for a specific customer and your customer wants to enter a new clause. In this scenario, you want your Legal team to approve the new clause before adding it to the renewed agreement. So, you add the new clause, associate it with a term exception and define an approval step of type child process.

After the Intelligent Workflow and Approvals package has been installed, there are *Setup* configuration options that can be changed.

By default, the package installation sets up the majority of the application to be used as is; however, some organizational specific options can only be configured after the installation. Some post-package installation configuration must be done to best maximize the features available in Intelligent Approvals. There are also default settings that you may want to change, to better suit your business.

This section provides the workflow and the sequence of actions you have to define to enable Custom Object Approvals for Agreement and its child objects.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

To do...	How to define...
Install required packages	Install the latest approvals and dependent packages.
Adding Values to Approval picklists	Add object names to processes, rules, and dimensions.
Approvals System Properties	Create a record in **Approval System Properties** and enter the requisite details
To configure custom object settings	Create a record in **Approval Custom Config** for the primary custom object. Set up the **Context Type** as follows: • *Multiple*: If you are defining an approval process for the header and child object. • *Single*: If you are using approvals only on one object. In our example, enter *Multiple* because we want to setup the approval process on both, Agreement header fields and Agreement Line Items.
Add pick list values for approval fields	• Create Approval Status and Approval Preview Status fields on the header object. • Create Approval Status and Approval Preview Status fields on the child object.
Configure Approval Required Check Settings	• Setup Search Filter (Entry Criteria) for header (e.g. Agreement). • Setup Search Filter (Entry Criteria) for line items (e.g. Agreement Line Items). • Create the Approval Required Check Trigger for the header and line item object. • Invoke the Approval Required Check API within the trigger for the header and line item object and click **Save**.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

To do...	How to define...
	• Set Header and line item approval status based on the Approval Required Check API. • Pass the line items that need to be evaluated for approvals when the line items and header information is created or updated. The 2 APIs you have to invoke are from the ApprovalRequiredCheck global class: ◦ doCheck (Id objId) – returns true if successful, otherwise false. This API is Invoked as follows: ApprovalRequiredCheck checker = new ApprovalRequiredCheck() Checker.doCheck(objId) ◦ doCheck(SObject object) – return a map of approval-status-values keyed by subject IDs. The first entry in the map corresponds to the header context object. This API is Invoked in a trigger before update as follows: ApprovalRequiredCheck checker = new ApprovalRequiredCheck() Checker.doCheck(object) Approval status at the line item as well as header should be set to *Approval Required* for **Preview** or **Submit** to work. Use the above API to create a trigger to invoke Approval Required Check.
Configuring Approvals and My Approvals Page	You can now enable Approvals for your context object by configuring the following 2 buttons and placing them on your object record's page layout. • **Preview & Submit Approvals** - For actions such as **Preview**, **Submit**, **Recall for Submitter**. • **My Approvals** - For actions such as **Approve**, **Reject**, **Add Ad hoc Approver**, **Reassign**.
Setting up Email Templates and Alerts	While Apttus provides default email templates for approval requests, if you want the emails to have attachments or have your own specific content, you must customize the templates.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

To do...	How to define...
Set up Approval Process	Configure Approval Process • Use the Approval Required status as process entry criteria. • Create additional pick list values for Approval Status etc. • Setup approval rules on the child context object to be used for the step of type Child Process. • Setup approval rules on the primary context object to be used for the step of type Subprocess. • Approval rules of type Condition can also be defined if the approval rule entry criteria is complex expression. • Setup the initial and final submission actions.
Setting up Approval Rules	Create Approval Rules for each Sub Process and Child Process if you have multiple approvers for a process. Configure Approval Rule criteria. Select Approval Rule Type as Condition to use Auto Re-approval conditions. For each step in sub-process or child process, create approval rule entry, step label, Approval Condition, Auto Re-approval Condition, and Assignee, and step dependency.
Setting up Backup or Delegate Approvers	Backup approvers are required to 'catch' approval requests whose assignees cannot be identified and ensure approval processes progress as expected.
Setting up the Backup Administrator	The backup admin user is responsible for handling routing issues that may occur during the intelligent approval process, while admin profiles enable you to associate users — via their roles — with admin level access to Intelligent Approvals.
Set up Page Layout for Primary Object	Add Approvals and My Approvals buttons to primary object layout.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Optional Configuration

Auto-escalating Approval Requests	When an approval request is not approved, rejected, or reassigned within the allotted time, it can automatically be reassigned to a new approver so the approval process can continue.
Changing Approval Rule Step Behavior	Typically steps that cannot identify an assignee are sent to the backup administrator; however, you can change that behavior and have the those steps skipped instead.
Changing the Assignee Search page results list	This controls the number of assignees that can be displayed on a single search page. Typically the default value of twenty is suitable for your organization, but you can increase or decrease the value
Creating Approval Matrices	Matrices are used with *Global Discount Policies* to route approvals to users based on system wide default discount percentages.
Approval Request History	When an Apttus approval process is initiated — by submitting or resubmitting an approval — for an agreement, term exception, or opportunity, an approval history record is created. The Approval request history Object comprises information for old approval requests such as, the approval status, the date of the request, who it was assigned to, and who the actual approver was.
Submitting a Request with Attachments	Enables you to submit your approval request with an attachment. To submit a request with attachment, ensure that you have created custom email notification templates and specified the name of each of the templates in the Approval Process of the object.
Approval Submission Comments	Approval submission comments enable you to add personalized comments when you submit an approval request. You can have a single comment at the process level or up to three comments at the step level.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Child Filter Objects	From 7.0 onwards you can use a child process to configure approvals on child objects. However if you wish to create approval steps based on child object fields, you can use custom child object fields. Create an child filter expressions to filter the records based on child object fields.
Reporting on Approval Request Channels	As approval requests can be completed within Salesforce or outside of the system via email, this feature provides a way to identify which of the two is used for each approval request.
Opportunity records and ACM	When Advanced currency management (ACM) is enabled in your org, you cannot have any Opportunity record fields of data type currency in your email templates or approval summary page.

Best Practices

This section comprises the best practices to be considered while defining your approval processes.

Consolidate Notification?	Consolidated Approvals?	Behavior
Yes	No	Requests go on-hold if there are additional requests pending for approval. Once the last request becomes available for approval, all the requests for the assignee get assigned. A user gets only one email notification for approval.
Yes	Yes	Requests go On-Hold if there are more requests pending for approval. Once the last request becomes available for approval, only one of the requests for the assignee is assigned. All other requests remain On-Hold. What ever action user takes on an assigned request is propagated to all other requests. A user gets only one email notification for approval.
No	No	

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Consolidate Notification?	Consolidated Approvals?	Behavior
		Requests never go On-Hold. Requests are assigned to the assignee as and when requests becomes available. A user gets a separate assignment notification for each request.
No	Yes	Not Supported.

Performance and Scalability

Area	Detail
Multiple Approval Processes	When to use multiple approval process? When you have Region Based Approval variations, Business Unit Based Approvals variations, Channel Based Approvals variations. How do I configure multiple approval processes? Define mutually exclusive process entry criteria so that only one process is selected for a given primary object instance. Why do I configure multiple approval processes? Having multiple approval processes reduces number of approval steps / criteria system needs to execute
Approval Rule Entry Criteria	Specify minimum approval conditions in Approval Rule entry criteria for Sub Process or Child Process steps to avoid evaluation of all approval rule entries every time.
Approval Required Check	Provides users visibility to whether approval is needed for header or line items without executing the entire approval process. Provides a mechanism to avoid approval process evaluation for a large number of scenarios.

Types of Approval Steps and when do I use them?

- **Standard** - This is the existing method for creating header level approval steps.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- **Sub Process** - This is used when you want to select approval rules that are associated with the header level context object of the approval process. The assignee types are derived from the Approval Rule. Create a Sub-Process when you have multiple approvers for a set of criteria instead of defining multiple Standard steps for each criteria.
- **Child Process** - This is used when you want to select approval rules that are associated to child objects of the approval process header level context object such as you want to define an approval process for Proposal and Proposal Line Items. The assignee types are derived from the Approval Rule. Use a child process instead of a Subprocess and Standard step type when you want to populate the Approval request with the child object line items to be approved, such as Proposal Line Items.

> **Note**
>
> If you select *Rule* as an **Assignee Type** , t he approval request is sent only to the first user that satisfies the filter criteria in the Approval Rul e . If you have multiple approvers in a sequence, only the first approver is selected and assigned.

It is recommended that you use conditional criteria instead of Approval Dimensions and Approval Matrix while creating your approval rules and processes.

Mandatory Setting for Agreement Objects

This section outlines the mandatory settings to setup Approvals for your objects.

Approval System Properties

Approval System Properties

This section provides a brief description of all the Approval System Properties. Navigate to **Custom Settings > (Manage) Approval System Properties > (Edit) System Properties.**

Table 1.

Setting	Description
Name	System Properties. The default name for the system property settings.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Setting	Description
Backup Admin Profile	Specify the profile of backup administrators who can control the settings and approval profile.
Backup Admin User	Specify the full name or email address of the user who will serve as a backup administrator. ⚠ This is mandatory in the event you deactivate a user from the org. If there is no BackUp Admin User available, the system displays an error. This is also true where the email address being used is active but not the same address for a user in this org.
Enable Email Approval Response	Enables the approvers to approve or reject an approval request through e-mail. The approver can write APPROVE or REJECT in the first line of the email. The approval comments can be added from the second line onwards.
UI Assignee Search Page Size	Specify the number of rows the search result shows when you search for user roles, rules, queues, or users.
UI Custom Assignee Object Types	Specify the API names of the objects you want to use when defining custom assignee expressions.
Enable Approval Request Auto Escalation	Selecting this checkbox enables the system to escalate approval requests to users or queues if an approval action is pending for a specific period of time. The users to whom the request is escalated to and the period after which a request is escalated is specified in the approval process.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Setting	Description
Email Sender Display Name	Specify the origin of the email. If not specified, the value is the requester of the agreements and submitter for all other cases.
Cart Approval Context Type	Specify the context for which an approval process is applicable. The applicable values are cart-triggers an approval process for the entire cart, header-triggers an approval process for the header items of the cart only, and lineItem-triggers an approval process for the line items of the cart.
Admin User	Specify the name of the Admin User who is the default owner of all the activities created by the user.
Cart Approval Preview Page	Specify the name of the custom preview cart page that you want to use if you want to define and use a custom page to preview approvals.
Enable Approval Check On Quote Update	Is run by default for CPQ Approvals. Approval required check is run, whenever the Quote is updated. This flag enables the system to evaluate the approval process and if the entry criteria is satisfied, changes the status to Approval Required.
Enable Ad hoc Approver	Enables you to add the Ad hoc approver feature for an org.
Enable Resubmit	Enables you to define the behavior of the Submit for Approvals button in the Approvals related list of your object. This system property replaces the CancelPendingProcess parameter on the Preview and Submit formula button on your object. When selected, and user clicks Submit for Approvals, current approval requests are cancelled and new approval requests are resubmitted.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Setting	Description
	When deselected, and the and user clicks Submit for Approvals, the user cannot cancel and resubmit and ongoing approval request.
Enable Upload Attachment From Desktop	Enables you to browse and attach external documents from your local machine for **Submit with Attachments** action on Preview approvals page. This eliminates your effort to attach the required documents in Notes & Attachments related list of your object record before submitting the record for approval.

To set the Approval & Config System Properties

1. Go to **Setup > Build > Develop > Custom Settings** and click **Manage** for **Approvals System Properties**.
2. Click **Edit** beside **System Properties**.
3. For Cart Approval Context Type, enter one of the following:
    - **cart** - There will be one approval process for all the items in the cart.
    - **header**- The approval process is triggered only for the header items of the cart.
4. Click **Save**.

Link

Configuring Global Settings

Configuring Global Settings

Approvals custom configuration settings provide the global default values for using Approvals with different objects.

The backup admin user, summary page, and email templates are designated here so that they do not need to be selected each time you create an approval process. You can choose to override them for specific processes, but this ensures approval requests will work correctly regardless.

To configure global settings

You must have created the required custom pages and templates.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

1. Go to **Build > Develop > Custom Settings** and click **Approvals Custom Config**.
2. From the **Custom Setting Definition Detail** section, click **Manage** to display the current objects associated with Intelligent Approvals.
3. If it does not already exist, click **New** and enter API name of the Object in the **Name** field, which is the API name for the object to be used with approvals.
4. In the **Approval Status Field**, enter Approval_Status__c or whatever the API name is for the picklist created for the custom object.
5. The custom summary page and templates you created should be entered in the **Approval Summary Page** and various **Email Template** fields. If you do not enter values, the default system values will be used.
6. Specify the Approval Context Type as Single or Multiple. If you want an approval process to be triggered for Header and the Line items, enter Multiple. If you want to trigger an approval process for the header items only enter type as Single.
7. Specify the Child Object Types if child object types are associated in the approval process.
8. Click **Save**.

The page and templates will be used by default for the next approval process created for the context object.

When creating an approval process you can override these templates if necessary.

Setting up the Admin Profiles

Setting up the Admin Profiles

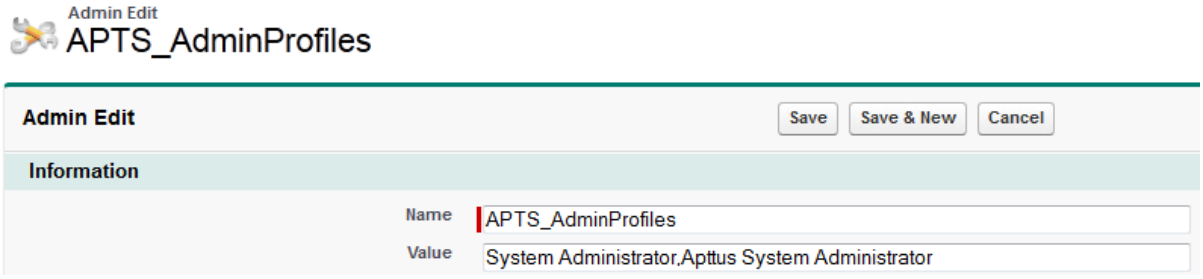
Admin profiles enable you to associate users — via their roles — with admin level access to Intelligent Workflow and Approvals.

To set up Admin Profiles in Approvals,

1. Select the **Admin** tab.
   - or -
   Select ✚ (All tabs) and select **Admin**.
2. Click **Go** to display all of the admin settings.
3. If **APTS_AdminProfiles** is listed, click **Edit**, enter the required profile names, separated by a comma, in the **Value** field and click **Save**.
   - or -
   If the setting is not displayed, click **New Admin**.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

4. Enter the name **APTS_AdminProfiles**, enter the required profile names, separated by a comma, in the **Value** field, and click **Save**.



Users associated with the profiles can now complete administrative tasks for Intelligent Workflow and Approvals.

Configuring Email Templates

Configuring Email Templates

Typically the easiest way to create your own custom template is to clone one of the email templates provided in the unmanaged Apttus samples package and then edit it. After that has been done you can then override the default email templates for all of your approval processes using APTS_ApprovalConfig or on an ad-hoc basis for specific approval requests.

The Apttus Approvals Management (Customization Samples) package provides email template examples for currently supported objects, as well as for Salesforce Cases, which can subsequently be used as the basis for creating email templates for custom objects you've configured yourself. Also note that Opportunity Product is also used to provide templates for further customization.

You have to specify the email templates in the Approval Process and in the Approvals Custom Config custom setting.

As well as providing samples for templates and the summary page, the pages that are used to provide approval functionality on the custom object record page are also included.

Note

As this package is unmanaged, it cannot be upgraded. If you want to move to the newest version, you must uninstall the existing package and then install the new package. It is recommended you uninstall the samples package after you have created your custom

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

templates and pages.
Queue email address cannot be used for notifications. If Queue has "Send Email to Members" box un-checked - email of current user will be used for notifications (not queue email address). This is due to Salesforce limitations which we cannot bypass.

Installing Customization Samples package

The Apttus Approvals Management (Customization Samples) package contains email templates, components, Visualforce pages and Apex controllers which can help you build you templates and approval summary pages for custom context objects.

Note

The samples contained in the package should not be used 'as is' and are only to be used in the development of your own bespoke templates and pages, and should not be installed in production.

Configuring Email Templates

For a process with header and child process steps, use the Apttus Approval Email Templates. Notification templates are used to create the notifications sent to approvers to alert them to pending approvals and to allow them to approve or decline a request without logging in to Salesforce.

The following approval email notification templates are available as a part of the standard Approvals Management package. These are generic email notification templates that can be used for approvals on any standard or custom objects without any change. However, these notification templates can be customized as needed. Clone these templates if you want to customize your own template.

To view the Quote Header name in the My Approvals page, you must change your existing process definitions or custom config settings to use the new templates provided with this release. If you have already customized an email template to use with CPQ Cart Approvals, you need to include the MyCartApprovalsEmail class inside your custom Visualforce template to correctly launch the My Approvals page that shows the quote id and name fields.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Sample	Component Type	Description
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Assignment)	Visualforce Email Template	This template is used to notify users they must decide on an approval request.
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Reassignment)	Visualforce Email Template	This template is used to notify users that an approval request task initially assigned to them has been reassigned to someone else.
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Escalation)	Visualforce Email Template	This template is used for auto-escalation. Configuration is required to activate this feature.
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Cancellation)	Visualforce Email Template	This template is used to notify users that an approval request has been cancelled.
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Notify Only)	Visualforce Email Template	This template is used to notify users only.

- You can select who you want to be displayed in the *From* field, when Intelligent Workflow and Approvals emails are sent.

  You can select to have emails indicate they were sent by an *Approver*, *Requester*, or *Submitter* in the *From* field.

Approver	This value comes from the last person in the chain of approval requests to approve the request. For the initial approval request email - before anyone has actually approved it - the submitter is used.
Requester	This value comes from the Agreement record that is submitted for approval. For example: Requestor Ben Easter Requester is only valid for agreements and agreement term exceptions.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Submitter	This value comes from the user who clicks *Submit* in the *Approvals* related list for the object record that is being approved.

If the setting is not configured, it defaults to the name of the requester for agreements, otherwise it defaults to the name of the submitter.

- To enable approval requests to be decided via email, an email service and Approval System Properties settings for emails must be configured.

  Typically an approval request will be sent to the designated assignee, from where they can access Salesforce to see more details and approve the request; however, by ensuring these settings are configured correctly, an assignee can indicate their decision and progress the approval by simply replying to the request email.

To configure the email service

1. Go to **Build > Develop > Email Services** and click **New Email Service**.
2. For **Email Service Name**, enter ApprovalReplyService and for Apex Class, **select ApprovalEmailHandler**.
3. Select **Active** and for **Route Error Emails to This Email Address** enter the email address of a user with admin level access. The remaining settings are not required, but may be used if necessary.
4. Click **Save** and **New Email Address** and then enter ApprovalReplyService for email address.
5. Select **Active**, select a **Context User** and click **Save**. The email address is automatically generated for your Salesforce org, apart from the text before@which you entered in Step 4. For more details, see Salesforce Help.

This email service can now be used to ensure approval request emails are handled as expected.

Complete the task, *To set the email system properties*.

To set the email system properties

You must have configured your email service, so you can enter the address is Step 2 below.

1. Go to **Build > Develop > Custom Settings** and click **Manage** for **Approvals System Properties**.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

2. Click **Edit** and ensure the **Email Approval Service Address** is the one that was automatically generated by the system when you configured the email service.
3. Select the checkbox for **Enable Email Approval Response** and click **Save**.
4. To enable approval email response ensure that you follow the steps at Enable Email Approval Response.

> Queue email address cannot be used for notifications. If Queue has "Send Email to Members" box un-checked - email of current user will be used for notifications (not queue email address). This is due to Salesforce limitations which we cannot bypass.

When someone replies to an approval request via email, the address their email is sent to is the one set in the Email Approval Service Address field and selecting Enable Email Approval Response means they can enter *Approve*, *Approved*, *Yes*, *Reject*, *Rejected*, or *No* to decide on the approval without logging into Salesforce.

Bounce back emails

If you make a spelling mistake when replying to an approval request email the system can send you a 'bounce back' email to inform you an error has occurred. As long as the previous tasks have been completed for the email service and email system properties, this will occur automatically.

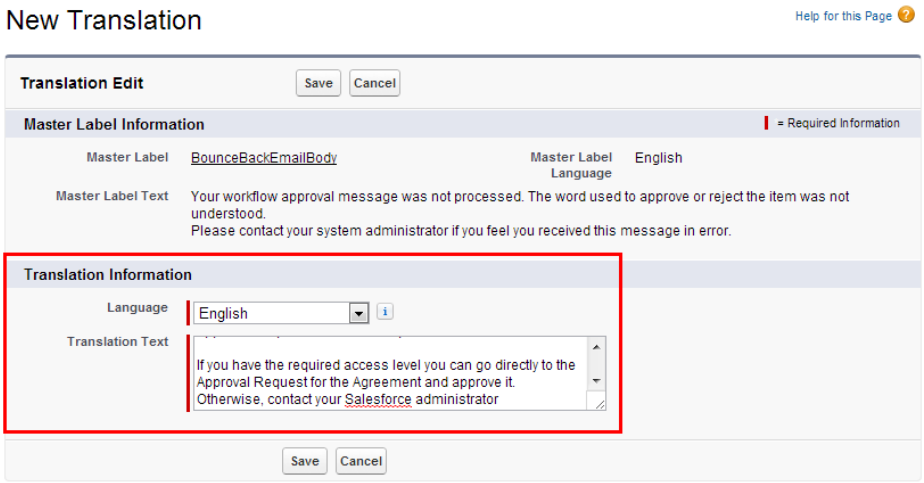
When you reply to an approval request email by typing in one of the supported words (*Approve*, *Approved*, *Yes*, *Reject*, *Rejected*, *No*), the approval request status will be updated accordingly in the system. If you make a typo when you do this, no update can be made. This feature enables you to be informed of the mistake and make the necessary correction to ensure the approval process progresses as intended.The email will be sent to the approver who made the mistake only.If you do not want to use the default text for the email, you can use Salesforce Translation Workbench functionality to customize the text. A custom label is used to provide the content for the body of the email and you can use translation text to override this.

To customize the bounce back email text

You must have enabled the Translation Workbench for your org.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

1. Go to **Build > Create > Custom Labels** and select **BounceBackEmailBody**.
2. Click **New Local Translations / Overrides** to display the New Translation page.
3. Select the **Language** and enter the text you want included in the email and click **Save**.



The next time a bounce back email is sent, the body of the email will use the content in the **Translation Text** field for the corresponding language.

You can edit the text as required and also add different versions for multiple languages.

- Default email templates provide the ability to use Intelligent Approvals out of the box and begin testing approval process workflows quickly; however, if you want to have bespoke emails for your organization or you want to attach documents to approval request emails, you must use custom email templates. Email alerts are triggered by workflow rules and can make use of the same email templates.

  Typically the easiest way to create your own custom template is to clone one of the email templates provided in the unmanaged Apttus samples package and then edit it. You cannot clone the standard email templates included in the *Apttus Approvals Management* package.

  The *Apttus Approvals Management* package provides email template examples for Agreements, Opportunities, and Term Exception Approvals. *Apttus Quote/Proposal Approvals Management* provides examples for Quotes/Proposals and Quote Line Items.

  After that has been done, you can then override the default email templates for all of your approval processes using Approvals Custom Config Custom Settings, APTS_ApprovalConfig Admin Settings, or on an ad-hoc basis for specific approval processes.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Note

Which email template is used works as follows:

- Email templates selected in an Approval Process override templates in Approvals Custom Config.
- Templates in **Approvals Custom Config** override templates in APTS_AppprovalConfig.
- Templates in **APTS_ApprovalConfig** override the system defaults.

To customize email templates

You must have installed the *Apttus Approvals Management* and *Apttus Quote/Proposal Approvals Management* packages.

Go to **Administration Setup > Communication Templates > Email Templates.**

1. From the **Folder** list, select **Apttus Email Templates** and then select the email template you want to use as the basis for your customized template.
2. Click **Clone**, enter the required template details and click **Save**. **Template Unique Name** is the value that must be used when you override the default email templates.
3. Click **Edit Template** to display the Visualforce editor and make the required changes to the template. You should be familiar with Visualforce pages and apex code to complete this step.

Attention

When you edit the text and code in a template you should be sure that the *Approval Request ID* and *Approval User ID* fields are still included in the template. These are required for the approvals engine to route emails correctly and retain the ability to decide on an email by responding to it. When you customize an email template ensure that you retain the Context.recipientSO.Id email markup instead of using Context.requestSO. Apttus_Approval__Assigned_To_Id__c. Not retaining the original markup causes an email notification issue where some of the recipients do not receive an email notification.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

> Ensure that you set the Target Object Id in the template. For more information, refer to TargetObjectId.

4. Click **Save** to return to the main template view page.
5. In the **Standard Attachments** section, select **Attach File** and select a file you want attached to each request.
6. Click **Send Test** and **Verify Merge Fields** to display the Preview Template window.
7. Select a user and an approval request for an object that matches the object the template will be used for, select any email address and click **OK**. The email can be used to verify that all the fields have the expected values and that any attachments are included.
8. To enable approval email response ensure that you follow the steps at Enable Email Approval Response.

Templates that are **Available For Use** can now be used for any subsequent approval requests.

You can make the template a default template or to override the default templates on an ad-hoc basis, you can now use this template when you create an approval process.

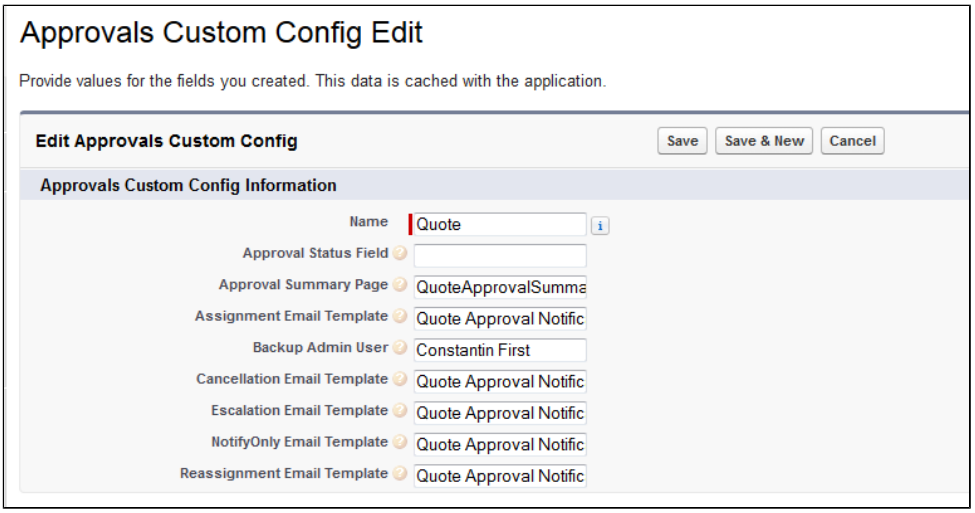
To override default email templates with Custom settings

You must have customized templates you can reference.

1. Go to **Build > Develop > Custom Settings** and click **Approvals Custom Config.**
2. From the **Custom Setting Definition Detail** section, click **Manage** to display the current objects associated with Intelligent Approvals.
3. Click **Edit** beside the object that you want to edit email templates for.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

4. Enter the **Name** of the customized email template in the appropriate field.



5. Click **Save** when complete.

The templates referenced in the template fields will be used as the global Intelligent Approval default email templates for that object. When the Process Definition Notification Templates value fields are left blank, while creating an approval process, these templates will be used.

To override default email templates with Admin settings

You must have customized templates you can reference.

1. Select the **Admin** tab - or - select ➕ and select **Admin**.
2. Click **Go** to display all of the admin settings.
3. If **APTS_ApprovalConfig** is listed, select it, then click **Edit** and proceed to Step 5.
4. If it is not listed click **New Admin**, for **Name** enter APTS_ApprovalConfig and for **Value** enter XML.
5. In the **Code** field enter the references to the custom email templates for each of the objects you are using with Intelligent Approvals.
   See, Appendix B - Email Examples, if you need help with formatting of the XML code.

The templates referenced in the Code field will be used as the global Intelligent Approval default email templates. When the Process Definition **Notification Templates** value fields are left blank, these templates will be used.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

To edit email alerts

Go to **Build > Create > Workflow & Approvals > Email Alerts**

1. Click **Edit** beside **Approval Request Comments Entered**. Since it is a part of the managed package, you cannot change the description or unique name.
2. Click and select the required email template.
3. Select the **Recipient Type** and the related recipients and click **Save**.

Subsequent email alerts that are sent when approval request comments are entered, will use the new email template.

Any other email alerts can be edited in the same manner.

Settings for Email Reply

Create email service: Go to **Setup > Develop > Email Services.**

Accept Email From should contain the domains which we plan to use: For Example: Accept Email From: apttus.com,yahoo.com, gmail.com

In the Email Addresses section, click **New Email Address** and **Accept Email** From: apttus.com,yahoo.com, gmail.com and click **Save**. New email address should be created in the format “approval_email_service@t8l0k46ikux0mfg3lk083tqdn2qetmjc7cosf2m5v92hp70s1.11-fk7eai.cs18.apex.sandbox.salesforce.com”.

Custom Label setting:

Edit the **Custom Label ApttusEMailServiceAddress**. Ensure that the value of the custom label matches that of the Email Address specified in Email Services.

In the **Local Translations / Overrides** section, click **New Local Translations / Overrides**.

Copy the string (Email Address) from Email Service- Email Addresses section and paste it in the Translation Text box.

Click **Save**.

Approvals System Properties:

Email Approval Service Address should contain same string from Email Service- Email Addresses page.

Email Templates:

Should contain the reply to as below:replyTo="{!$Label.Apttus_Approval__ApttusEMailServiceAddress}"

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Whenever a reassigned or a delegate approver approves or rejects a request, the next approver does not recieve an email Notification. If the previous approver has a Yahoo email address, the email is not routed to the next approver. Follow the DMARC guidelines and the steps listed at Google Support and Yahoo Support to ensure email notifications are generated and sent.

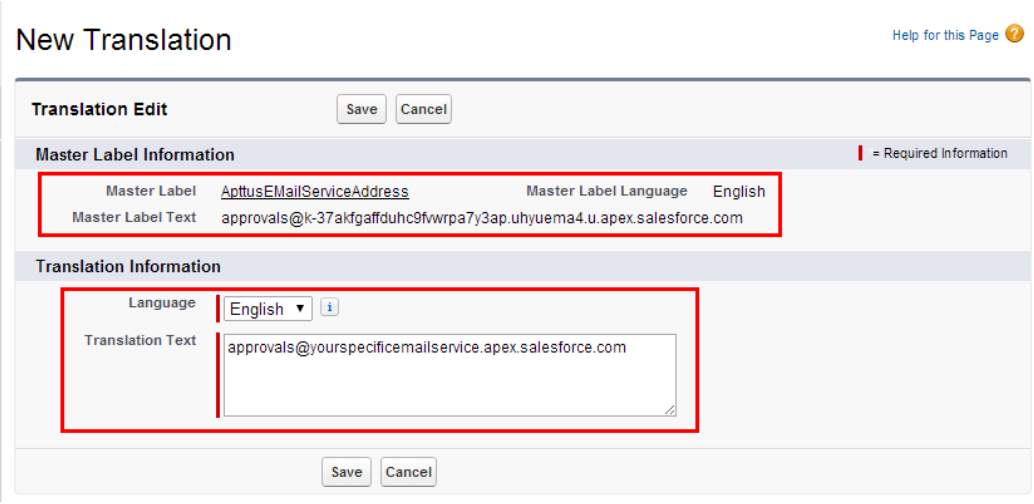
- There are five new email templates used by Consolidated Approvals and to ensure that emails are sent to the correct address, you must configure a custom label used by the emails. Each email template references the same label, so you only need to configure the one custom label as it affects each template.

```
<messaging:emailTemplate subject="{!$Label.ApprovalRequestsFor} '{!relatedTo.Object_Name__c}'
                         recipientType="User"
                         relatedToType="Approval_Request__c"
                         replyTo="{!$Label.ApttusEMailServiceAddress}"
                         language="{!recipient.LanguageLocaleKey}">
```

  You must have already configured your email service.

  1. From **Setup**, go to **Develop > Email Services** and click the **Email Service Name** *ApprovalReplyService.*
  2. Copy the system generated **Email Address**, which is required in the upcoming steps.
  3. From **Setup**, go to **Create > Custom Labels** and select **ApttusEmailServiceAddress**.
  4. Click **New Local Translations / Overrides** to display the Translation Edit page.
  5. The **Master Label Information** section displays the text that is used by default, which points to a dummy email service that you cannot use with your org.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



6. In the **Translation Information section**, select **English** from the **Language** list and in the **Translation Text** field, paste in the email address copied in Step 2.
7. Click **Save**.

The label is now updated with the email address for your org.

When consolidated approval emails are next sent, they will be routed to the correct users.

Setting up Intelligent Approval Flag

Intelligent Approval Flag

If you define an approval process for a specific object and want the process to be initiated on click of a button, navigate to **Create > Objects > <<Object Name>>Quote > <<Field Name>>Configure Products(Field) > Edit** the formula field and add **useAdvancedApproval=true**. For example, IF (LEN(Apttus_QPConfig__PriceListId__c) > 0 , HYPERLINK("/apex/Apttus_QPConfig__ProposalConfiguration?id=" &Id&"& **useAdvancedApproval=true**&useDealOptimizer=true", IMAGE("/resource /Apttus_QPConfig__Button_Configure", "Configure Products"),"_self"), NULL).

Creating Search Filters

Creating Search Filters (Approval)

The two Filter Type options (Child Filter and Entry Criteria) serve two different purposes.

Entry Criteria	

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

	This is required for approvals to be intiated from the Shopping Cart. To improve performance, the system will check if there are any Entry Criteria search filters that match the attributes in the Shopping Cart and set the approval status to Approval Required. You can have the entry criteria at the line item to set the approval status to Approval Required or Approval Triggered.
Child Filter	This is required to have a header level approval step entry criteria that makes use of the line item fields for the products in the Shopping Cart. After you create a child filter, you then need to create step entry criteria using child filters that mirrors the expression used in the child filter.

Configuring Search Filters

Search filters of type Entry Criteria are used to check whether the contents of a shopping cart require approval before it can be finalized.

If you want approvals to be triggered at the *Shopping Cart Header* level, then you need to configure search filters based on the *Product Configuration* context object. If you want approvals to be triggered at a specific Cart Line Item level, then you would configure search filters for the Line Item context object. Additionally if you want consolidated approvals for the whole Cart/Product Configuration, then you would create both.

Configuring Search Filters - this adds Product Configuration to the Search Filter object picklist so you can create search filters that use these objects for their entry criteria

Creating Search Filters - the Search Filters are used to determine if the products in the Shopping Cart require approval.

To configure Search Filters (Approvals)

1. Go to **Setup > Build > Create > Objects** and select **Search Filter (Approvals)**.
2. From the **Custom Fields & Relationships** section, select **Business Object**.
3. From **Picklist Values**, click **New** and enter the API names for the cart and the line items: Apttus_Config2__ProductConfiguration__cfor Header level approvals andApttus_Config2__LineItem__cfor Line Item level approvals.
4. Click **Save**. The values are added to the **Picklist Values** list.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

5. Click **Back to Search Filter (Approvals)** and from the **Custom Fields & Relationships** section, select **Filter Type**.
6. From **Picklist Values**, click **New** and enterChild FilterandEntry Criteria.
7. Click **Save**.

The values are added to the picklists, which are required to create search filters.

You can create *Search Filters (Approvals)* for controlling which carts are checked to see if they need approval.

To create Search Filters (Approvals)

1. Click ✚ and select **Search Filter (Approvals)**.
2. Click **New Search Filter (Approvals)** and select either:
   - **Product Configuration** - select this if you want the filter to be at the Product Configuration/Shopping Cart (Header) context object level.
   - **Line Item** - select this if you want the filter to be at the Line Item context object level, which are the individual line items within the cart.
3. Click **Next** to display the *Configure Filter* page.
4. From **Filter Type**, select one of the following:
   - **Child Filter** - This enables you to have step entry criteria within your approval process that references the child record fields of the main context object. Typically this enables you to use Line Item fields with your *Product Configuration* approval process. The *Line Item Child Filters* you create here, enable you to have them available for approval step entry criteria.
   - **Entry Criteria** - is used to indicate that the search filter will be used for the *Approval Required* check, which checks to see whether the quote or quote line item values require the shopping cart to undergo approval. You are effectively having an additional level of entry criteria for approvals here, before the system searches for matching approval processes. You must have at least one of these for approvals to be available from the shopping cart.
5. Enter a required **Filter Name** and **Sequence**. The sequence is used to determine the order in which the search filters will check if approvals are required.
6. Enter the filter criteria, which is used to determine if the quote requires approval.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

7. Click **Save**.

The Search Filter is now active and if it is a Filter Type of *Entry Criteria* it will be used by the system to determine if a Shopping Cart requires approval.

You must create an approval process that can be used with the Shopping Cart.

Link

Configuring Email Templates for Agreement and its related Objects

Typically the easiest way to create your own custom template is to clone one of the email templates provided in the unmanaged Apttus samples package and then edit it. After that has been done you can then override the default email templates for all of your approval processes using APTS_ApprovalConfig or on an ad-hoc basis for specific approval requests.

The Apttus Approvals Management (Customization Samples) package provides email template examples for currently supported objects, as well as for Salesforce Cases, which can subsequently be used as the basis for creating email templates for custom objects you've configured yourself. Also note that Opportunity Product is also used to provide templates for further customization.

You have to specify the email templates in the Approval Process and in the Approvals Custom Config custom setting.

As well as providing samples for templates and the summary page, the pages that are used to provide approval functionality on the custom object record page are also included.

Note

As this package is unmanaged, it cannot be upgraded. If you want to move to the newest version, you must uninstall the existing package and then install the new package. It is recommended you uninstall the samples package after you have created your custom templates and pages.

The Apttus Approvals Management package contains email templates, components, Visual force pages and Apex controllers which can help you build you templates and approval summary pages for custom context objects.

Note

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

The samples contained in the package should not be used 'as is' and are only to be used in the development of your own bespoke templates and pages, and should not be installed in production.

Configuring Email Templates

For a process with header and child process steps, use the Apttus Approval Email Templates. Notification templates are used to create the notifications sent to approvers to alert them to pending approvals and to allow them to approve or decline a request without logging in to Salesforce.

The following approval email notification templates are available as a part of the standard Approvals Management package. These are generic email notification templates that can be used for approvals on any standard or custom objects without any change. However, these notification templates can be customized as needed. Clone these templates if you want to customize your own template.

Sample	Component Type	Description
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Assignment)	Visualforce Email Template	This template is used to notify users they must decide on an approval request.
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Reassignment)	Visualforce Email Template	This template is used to notify users that an approval request task initially assigned to them has been reassigned to someone else.
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Escalation)	Visualforce Email Template	This template is used for auto-escalation. Configuration is required to activate this feature.
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Cancellation)	Visualforce Email Template	This template is used to notify users that an approval request has been cancelled.
		This template is used to notify users only.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Sample	Component Type	Description
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Notify Only)	Visualforce Email Template	

Configuring Global Settings for Agreement and its related Objects

Approvals custom configuration settings provide the global default values for using Approvals with different objects.

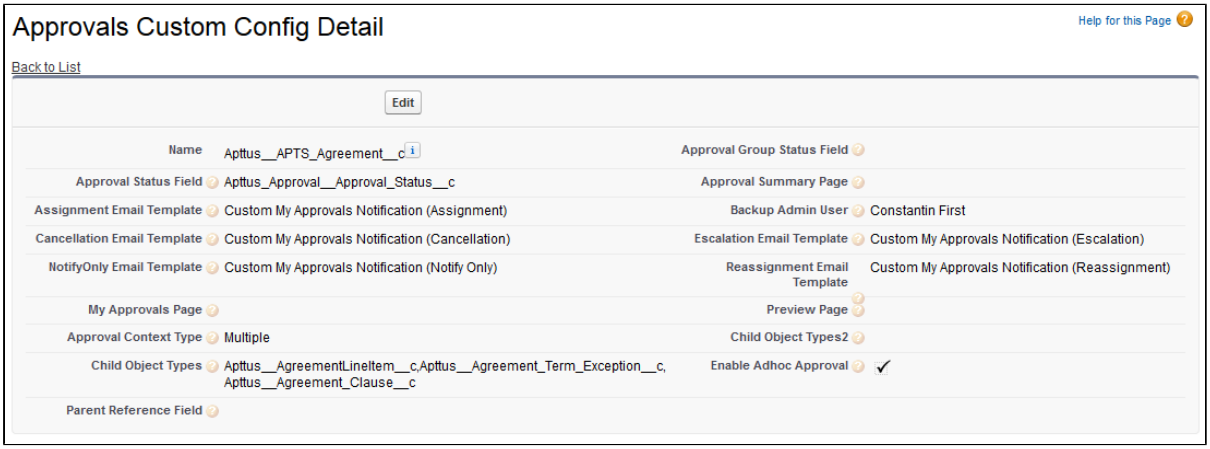
The backup admin user, summary page, and email templates are designated here so that they do not need to be selected each time you create an approval process. You can choose to override them for specific processes, but this ensures approval requests will work correctly regardless.

To configure global settings

You must have created the required custom pages and templates.

1. Go to **Build > Develop > Custom Settings** and click **Approvals Custom Config**.
2. From the **Custom Setting Definition Detail** section, click **Manage** to display the current objects associated with Intelligent Approvals.
3. If it does not already exist, click **New** and enter Apttus__APTS_Agreement__c in the **Name** field, which is the API name for the agreement object to be used with approvals.
4. In the **Approval Status Field**, enter Apttus_Approval__Approval_Status__c or whatever the API name is for the picklist created for the custom object.
5. The custom summary page and templates you created should be entered in the **Approval Summary Page** and various **Email Template** fields. If you do not enter values, the default system values will be used.

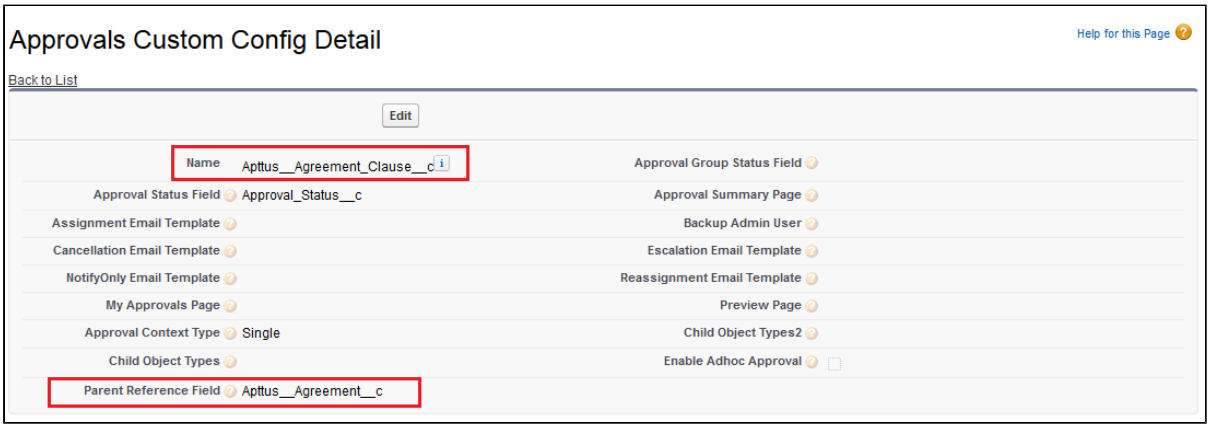
Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



6. Specify the **Approval Context Type** as *Single* or *Multiple.* If you want to use Header and line item approvals, set the **Approval Context Type** to *Multiple*. For header only approvals, set the **Approval Context Type** to *Single.*
   In our example, enter *Multiple* because we want to setup approval process on agreement header and line item level.
7. Specify the Child Object Type. The Child object type is associated with the approval process for a parent object. In our example, enter the API name of the child objects on which you want to setup approval process, such as Agreement Clause and Agreement Line Item.
8. You can enable ad hoc approvals for a custom object by selecting **Enable Ad Hoc Approval** .
9. In the **Parent Reference** field, enter the API name of the object with which you have either a master-detail or a look-up relationship. For example, if for the Agreement Term Exception record of **Approvals Custom Config**, if you want to create approval on Agreement object and it has a master detail relationship with Agreement Term Exception, so enter

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Apttus__Agreement__c in the **Parent Reference Field**.



10. Click **Save**.

The page and templates will be used by default for the next approval process created for the custom context object.

When creating an approval process, you can override these templates if necessary.

Adding Values to the Agreement Picklist

When creating an approval process, to be able to associate it and its various components with a custom object, you must have the custom object available from approval picklists.

Any part of the approval process creation that includes linking approvals to a context business object, needs to have the custom object added to it. This includes the approval process, approval rule dimension, approval rule, and search filter.

To add a new Object to Approval Process picklist

1. Go to **Build > Create > Objects > Approval Process** and click **Object Label**.
2. In the **Picklist Values** section, click **New**.
3. Enter Object Name in the text field and then select **Approval Process**.
4. Click **Save**.

Object is added to the Picklist Values list for the Approval Process.

The custom object API name must be added to the pick list.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

To add API name to Approval Process picklist

1. Go to **Build > Create > Objects > Approval Process** and click **Object Type**.
2. In the **Picklist Values** section, click **New**.
3. Enter Object API name in the text field and then select **Approval Process**.
4. Click **Save**.

The Object is added to the Picklist values and can now be associated with an approval process during the creation process.

To add API name to Approval Rule Dimension picklist

1. Go to **Build > Create > Objects > Approval Rule Dimension**.
2. In the **Custom Fields & Relationships** section, click **Business Object**.
3. In the **Picklist Values** section, click **New**.
4. Enter Object API Name in the text field.
5. Click **Save**.

The Object can now be associated with dimensions during the creation process

To add API name to Approval Rule picklist

1. Go to **Build > Create > Objects > Approval Rule**.
2. In the **Custom Fields & Relationships** section, click **Business Object**.
3. In the **Picklist Values** section, click **New**.
4. Enter Object API name in the text field.
5. Click **Save**.

The Object can now be associated with approval rules.

To add API name to Search Filter picklist

1. Go to **Build > Create > Objects > Search Filter**. In instances when there are multiple options, be sure to select the *Search Filter* associated with *Apttus Approvals Management*.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

2. In the **Custom Fields & Relationships** section, click **Business Object**.
3. In the **Picklist Values** section, click **New**.
4. Enter Object API Name in the text field.
5. Click **Save**.

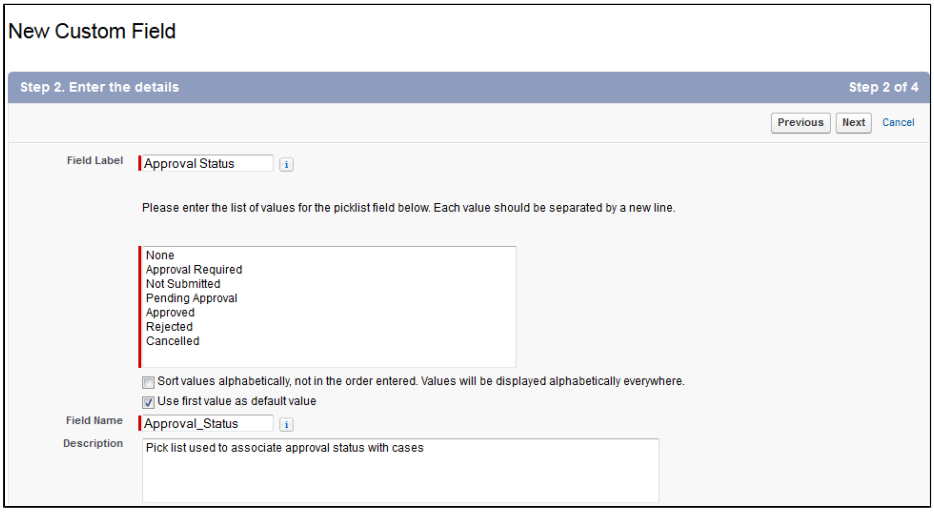
Adding Approval Status to Agreement and its related Objects

After the picklists have been set for objects, it's time to set the object picklist field so that Approval Status is available on the object record.

To add a picklist field for approvals to objects

1. Go to **Build > Customize > Agreement** or its related objects, such as **Agreement Clause** and **Agreement Line Item**.
2. In the **Custom Fields & Relationships** section, click **New**.
3. Select **Picklist** data type and click **Next.**
4. On the Details page, enter the following to ensure approval statuses will be available for the custom object and click **Next**.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



5. Select which users will be able to see the picklist and click **Next**.
6. Select which page layouts will include the picklist and click **Save**.

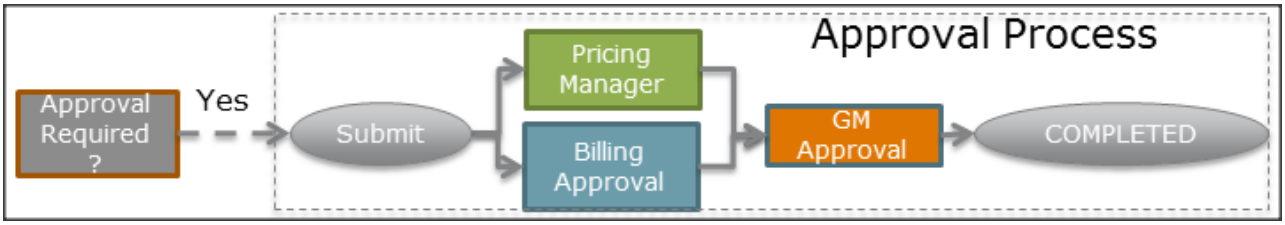
The **Approval Status** picklist is added to the **Custom Fields & Relationships** related list and the API Name *Approval_Status__c* is automatically added to the picklist.

Approval Required Check for Agreement

Approval Required check is performed to determine whether a custom object, Apttus object, standard Salesforce object or its line item requires an approval and if an approval process needs to be executed. Approval Required check sets the approval status of the header or child object to *Approval Required*. Approval Required check does not evaluate the approval process, but rather performs a simple check outside of the approval process definition. Approval Required Check sets the approval status of the header or child objects items to *Approval Required* to make it easy to check whether approval is needed. The purpose of the Approval Required check is to reduce the overhead of performing detailed process evaluation to determine if approval is needed. While defining the Entry criteria of the Approval Process in conjunction with Approval Required check, you should use the *Approval Required* approval status as one of the criteria.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

For example, Approval Required check is invoked prior to the execution or evaluation of the approval process. Approval criteria or conditions are defined using **Search Filters(Approvals)** of type *Entry Criteria*. Approval Required Check is primarily used with CPQ approvals, but can also be used with approval on other objects, such as Agreement and its related objects.



Steps to Set up Approval Required check

- Adding Approval Status fields to an object
- Adding the custom object to the search filter
- Setting up the Approval Required check trigger
- Setting up an entry criteria for the Approval Required check

Workflow Rules: An alternative to Approval Required Check

If you do not wish to configure and use Approval Required Check, you can use the Salesforce functionality of Workflow Rules to set the Approval Status of your header or child object records to *Approval Required.* While defining Workflow rules, you must ensure that every time an update is made to the existing header or child object records, all the eligible entries are set to *Approval Required.*

For details on how to create and configure Workflow Rules to match your business requirements, see Workflow Rules.

To create an approval required check trigger

Approval Status picklist enables triggers in the Approval Required check process. Ensure that you have added Approval Status picklist for your context object by navigating to **Build > Custom object (Object Name) > Fields > New** and adding the values: *Not Submitted (default), Approval Required, Pending Approval, Approved, Rejected, Cancelled, Closed*.

1. Use the following two global methods of the ApprovalRequiredCheck class to create your Approval Trigger or Workflow Rule.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

a. doCheck(Id objId) – This API takes up the IDs of all the records of your context object and checks if these records satisfy the Entry Criteria defined at the Search Filter (Approvals). If the Entry Criteria is satisfied, this API returns true, otherwise false.
For example, if you have approval processes defined for your Agreement header fields and Agreement Line Items, this API checks if your Agreement record and Agreement Line Items satisfy the Entry Criteria (RecordType == NDA) returns True or False, and sets the Approval status of filtered records to *Approval Required*. Also, if there is a change in the value of your Agreement header or Agreement Line Item, and the entire approval request is re-submitted, this API considers all record IDs for Approval Required Check and re-evaluates them.

   If a child object record, such as an Agreement Line Item is already *Approved*, this API does not consider these Line Items. For rest of the Approval Statuses, such as *Cancelled*, *Rejected*, *Not Submitted,* this API is useful.

   This API is invoked as follows:

   Apttus_Approval.ApprovalRequiredCheck checker = new Apttus_Approval.
   ApprovalRequiredCheck()
   Boolean result =checker.doCheck(objId)

b. doCheck(SObject object) – This API returns a map of approval status values keyed by object ids for your context object. The first entry in the map corresponds to the header context object. The Key-Value pair indicates what Approval Status should be set for a specific record of your context object.

   For example, if you make any change in one of the field of Agreement header, such as Agreement End Date and the Approval Status for your Agreement record is *Cancelled.*

   This API is invoked in a trigger before update as follows:

   Apttus_Approval.ApprovalRequiredCheck checker = new Apttus_Approval.
   ApprovalRequiredCheck()

   Boolean result = checker.doCheck(object)

2. Add the custom object to a search filter criteria by clicking **Create Objects > Search Filter (Approvals) > Business Object**. Add the API name of your custom object to the pick list.
3. Create a trigger that sets the Approval Required check for your custom object.
4. Navigate to **Apttus Approvals Management > Search Filters (Approvals)** tab and set up your entry criteria in this section.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

After you setup the Search Filter Criteria for your object, define the Approval Process for it. If the approval criteria is fulfilled, the approval status of the object changes based on the trigger you configure.

Creating Search Filters (Approvals)

The two **Filter Type** options (*Child Filter* and *Entry Criteria*) serve two different purposes.

Entry Criteria	This is required for approvals to be initiated for a custom object. To improve performance, the system will check if there are any Entry Criteria search filters that match the attributes of the custom object and set the approval status to Approval Required. You can have the entry criteria at the line item to set the approval status to Approval Required or Approval Triggered.
Child Filter	This is required to have a header-level approval-step entry criteria that makes use of the line item fields for the header custom object. After you create a child filter, you then need to create step-entry criteria using child filters that mirrors the expression used in the child filter.

Configuring and Creating Search Filters

Search filters of type *Entry-Criteria* are used to check whether the object requires approval before it can be finalized. If you want approvals to be triggered at the *header* level, then you need to configure search filters based on the context object. If you want approvals to be triggered at a Line Item level, then you would configure search filters for the Line Item context object. Additionally, if you want consolidated approvals for the whole object configuration, then you would create both. You must follow the procedure listed in the following section to configure and create search filters.

Configuring Search Filters - this adds custom objects to the Search Filter object picklist so you can create search filters that use these objects for their entry criteria.

Creating Search Filters - the Search Filters are used to determine if the products in the object require approval.

To configure Search Filters for Approvals

1. Go to **Setup > Build > Create > Objects** and select **Search Filter (Approvals)**.
2. From the **Custom Fields & Relationships** section, select **Business Object**.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

3. From **Picklist Values**, click **New** and enter the API names for the Header object and the line items: Header Object API name for Header level approvals and Child Object API namefor Line Item level approvals.
4. Click **Save**. The values are added to the **Picklist Values list**.
5. Click **Back to Search Filter (Approvals)** and from the **Custom Fields & Relationships** section, select **Filter Type**.
6. From **Picklist Values**, click **New** and enter Child Filter and Entry Criteria.
7. Click **Save**.

The values are added to the picklists, which are required to create search filters.

You can create *Search Filters (Approvals)* for controlling which objects are checked to see if they need approval.

To create Search Filters for Approvals

1. Click

and select **Search Filter (Approvals).**
2. Click **New Search Filter (Approvals)** and select one of the following options.
    - **Header Object Name** - select this if you want the filter to be at the context object level.
    - **Child Object Name** - select this if you want the filter to be at the Line Item context object level, which are the individual line items within the Header object.
3. Click **Next**. The Configure Filter page appears.
4. From **Filter Type**, select one of the following options.
    - **Child Filter** - This enables you to have step entry criteria within your approval process that reference the child record fields of the main context object. This enables you to use line item fields with your Header Object Name approval process. The line item child Filters you create here enable you to have them available for approval step entry criteria.
    - **Entry Criteria** - Indicates that the search filter will be used for the Approval Required check, which checks whether the header or header line item values of an object required to undergo an approval. Essentially, you have and an additional level of entry criteria for approvals here, before the system searches for matching approval processes.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

> **Note**
>
> You must have set at least either the Entry Criteria or the Child Filter for approvals to be available from the parent object.

5. Enter a required **Filter Name** and **Sequence**. The sequence is used to determine the order in which the search filters will check if approvals are required.
6. Enter the **Filter criteria**, which is used to determine if the object requires approval.
7. Click **Save**.

The Search Filter is now active. If it is an Entry Criteria filter, the system will determine if a header object requires approval.

You must create an Approval Process that can be used with the header object.

Pre requisite:

Before you start configuring the new buttons on your context object, ensure that you have created a record with the API name of the context object in the **Approvals Custom Config** available at **Setup > Develop > Custom Settings**.

For example, if you want to configure Approvals on Agreement object and its Child objects, create a record for each of the objects in the **Approvals Custom Config** and perform the following steps. So, to configure Approvals for Agreement and Agreement Clause objects, create 2 records with the API names, Apttus__APTS_Agreement__c and Apttus__Agreement_Clause__c respectively. For more details, refer to Configuring Global Settings for Agreement and its related Objects.

To enable Approvals for your context object, you must configure the following 2 buttons and place them on your object record's page layout.

- **Preview & Submit Approval** - For actions such as **Preview**, **Submit**, **Recall for Submitter** .
- **My Approvals** - For actions such as **Approve**, **Reject**, **Add Ad hoc Approver**, **Reassign**.

You can follow any one of the following procedures to configure **Preview & Submit Approvals** button for your context object:

- Creating a custom button for your context object:

1. Go to **Setup > Create > Objects** and search for your object.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

2. In the **Buttons, Links, and Actions** section, click **New Button or Link.**
3. In the Label field, enter **Preview & Submit Approvals**.
4. In the **Display Type**, select *Detail Page Button*.
5. In the **Behavior** drop-down list, select *Display in existing window without sidebar or header*.
6. In the **Content Source** drop-down list, select *URL*.
7. Enter the following formula in the Advanced Formula section, **/apex/Apttus_Approval__PreviewSubmitApprovals?id={!context-object-api-name.Id}**

   Ensure that in the **context-object-api-name,** you enter the API name of your context object.

   In our example for Agreement object, enter *Apttus__APTS_Agreement__c* as **context-object-api-name**.
8. Click **Save**.
9. Go to a record of your object, click the **Edit Layout** link.
10. From the Buttons list, drag and drop the newly created button on your page layout and click **Save.**

- Creating a custom formula field for your context object:

1. Go to **Setup > Create > Objects** and search for your object. In our example, select Agreement object of Contract Management package.
2. In the Custom Fields & Relationships section, click **New.**
3. Select **Formula** as the field type and click **Next**.
4. In the Field Label, enter **Preview & Submit Approvals**, select *Text* as **Formula Return Type** and click **Next**.
5. In the Advanced Formula text box, enter the following formula: **IF(AND(NOT(ISPICKVAL(Approval_Status__c,"Pending Approval")), NOT(ISPICKVAL (Approval_Status__c,"Approved"))), HYPERLINK("/apex /Apttus_Approval__PreviewSubmitApprovals?Id="&Id, IMAGE("/resource/[button-image]", "Preview & Submit Approvals"),"_self"),NULL)**

   Ensure that you enter the API name of the field you use for Approval Status of your context object, which you defined before configuring this button.
   Along with **ID** as a mandatory parameter, you can also append the following optional parameters to capture more details by a button click. The following parameters are applicable only for CPQ approvals

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Parameter name	Datatype	Use of the parameter
ctxChildSObjectId	ID of the child context object	To view subset of approvals required for the specified child context object.
returnId	ID of the object	To return to detail view of the object referred to by this identifier.
returnPage	string	To return to the specified page.
returnButtonLabel	string	To use the specified label for the return button. This is useful when this page is invoked from multiple locations or pages.
autoPreviewIndicator	boolean	To force the system to perform Preview before displaying approval requests.
hideSubmitWithAttachments	boolean	Indicator to instruct the system to hide **Submit with Attachments** button.
headerSObjectId	Id of the standard object	The ID to be rendered as a link in the header of the page, if different from the context object. This is used to display the Quote link instead of Cart or Product Configuration link.
headerSObjectTitle	string	The title or label to display as a link in the header next to the ID, if one wants to display a value other than the **Name** field value of the context object.

6. After checking the syntax of your formula field, click **Next**.
7. Select visibility for your required profiles and click **Next**.
8. Select appropriate page layouts on which you want to display the new field and click **Save**.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Similarly for configuring **My Approvals** button for your context object, follow any one of the following procedures:

- Creating a custom button for your context object

1. Go to **Setup > Create > Objects** and search for your object.
2. In the **Buttons, Links, and Actions** section, click **New Button or Link.**
3. In the Label field, enter **My Approvals**.
4. In the **Display Type**, select *Detail Page Button*.
5. In the **Behavior** drop-down list, select *Display in existing window without sidebar or header*.
6. In the **Content Source** drop-down list, select *URL*.
7. Enter the following formula in the Advanced Formula section, **/apex/Apttus_Approval__MyApprovals?id={!context-object-api-name.Id}**

   Ensure that in the **context-object-api-name**, you enter the API name of your context object. In our example for Agreement object, enter Apttus__APTS_Agreement__c as context-object-api-name.
8. Click **Save**.
9. Go to a record of your object, click the **Edit Layout** link.
10. From the Buttons list, drag and drop the newly created button on your page layout and click **Save.**

- Creating a custom formula field for your context object

1. Go to **Setup > Create > Objects** and search for your object. In our example, select Agreement object of Contract Management package.
2. In the Custom Fields & Relationships section, click **New.**
3. Select **Formula** as the field type and click **Next**.
4. In the Field Label, enter **My Approvals**, select *Text* as **Formula Return Type** and click **Next** .
5. In the Advanced Formula text box, enter the following formula: **IF(OR((ISPICKVAL(Approval_Status__c,"Pending Approval")), (ISPICKVAL (Approval_Status__c,"Approved"))), HYPERLINK("/apex /Apttus_Approval__MyApprovals?Id="&Id, IMAGE("/resource/[button-image]", "My Approvals"),"_self"),NULL)**

 Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Ensure that you enter the API name of the field you use for Approval Status of your context object, which you defined before configuring this button.

6. After checking the syntax of your formula field, click **Next**.
7. Select visibility for your required profiles and click **Next**.
8. Select appropriate page layouts on which you want to display the new field and click **Save**.

Approval Process for Agreements and its Related Objects

Apttus Intelligent Workflow and Approvals offers the ability to setup approval processes that are currently not supported by Salesforce.com. It allows the customer to configure their various approval processes with greater flexibility and visibility, helping in overall compliance.

Approval steps assign approval requests to various users and define the chain of approval for a particular approval process. Each approval step specifies the attributes a record must have to advance to that approval step, the user who can approve requests for those records, and whether to allow backup assignees of the approver to approve the requests. Regardless of their complexity, when anyone in the process rejects an item, the entire process is considered rejected.

- Creating the Process Definition
  The process definition serves as the framework for your intelligent approval process, providing options for setting up key objects like Entry Criteria, Email Templates, and Approval Summary Pages.
- Checking the Approval Status of the Document
  Approval required check is performed to determine whether a document requires approval and if approval process needs to be executed.
- Creating Initial Submission Actions
  Initial actions update object record fields when the approval process begins for that record.
- Creating Final Actions
  Final actions enable you to update record fields in the object according to whether the intelligent approval process was completed successfully or it was rejected.
- Creating Approval Steps
  Approval steps provide the logic for routing object record approvals to the correct people based on specific criteria.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- Setting up Auto-escalation
  Enabling auto-escalation in an approval process occurs at the approval step level. While the email templates apply to the entire approval process, you can have different auto-escalation settings for each approval step or you can use the global escalation options.
- Creating Expressions
  Intelligent approval process expressions provide a method for qualifying whether an object record should be routed through specific approval steps.

Performance and Scalability

Area	Detail
Multiple Approval Processes	**When to use multiple approval process?** When you have Region Based Approval variations, Business Unit Based Approvals variations, Channel Based Approvals variations. **How do I configure multiple approval processes?** Define mutually exclusive process entry criteria so that only one process is selected for a given primary object instance. **Why do I configure multiple approval processes?** Having multiple approval processes reduces number of approval steps / criteria system needs to execute
Approval Rule Entry Criteria	Specify minimum approval conditions in Approval Rule entry criteria for Sub Process or Child Process steps to avoid evaluation of all approval rule entries every time.
Approval Required Check	Provides users visibility to whether approval is needed for header or line items without executing the entire approval process. Provides a mechanism to avoid approval process evaluation for a large number of scenarios.

Types of Approval Steps and when do I use them?

- **Standard** - This is the existing method for creating header level approval steps.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- **Sub Process** - This is used when you want to select approval rules that are associated with the header level context object of the approval process. The assignee types are derived from the Approval Rule. Create a Sub-Process when you have multiple approvers for a set of criteria instead of defining multiple Standard steps for each criteria.
- **Child Process** - This is used when you want to select approval rules that are associated to child objects of the approval process header level context object such as you want to define an approval process for Proposal and Proposal Line Items. The assignee types are derived from the Approval Rule. Use a child process instead of a Subprocess and Standard step type when you want to populate the Approval request with the child object line items to be approved, such as proposal line items.

It is recommended that you use conditional criteria instead of Approval Dimensions and Approval Matrix while creating your approval rules and processes.

Create Process Definition

The process definition serves as the framework for your intelligent approval process, providing options for setting up key objects like entry criteria, email templates, and approval summary pages.

Entry criteria is used to define the conditions that must be met before an object record is routed through the intelligent approval process. For instance, you may want to specify that a certain approval process for agreements is only used when there is a discount given of greater than 10%.

While everyone may have a Salesforce dashboard set up to display outstanding tasks, having email templates associated with the approval process ensures that people are notified outside of Salesforce when they are required to approve an item, helping ensure the approval process does not stall.

Approval summary pages contain the information and action items that enable a record to be reviewed and approval actions to be taken. The default summary pages provide sufficient information for Agreements, Opportunities, Quote/Proposals, Proposal Line Items, and Term exceptions; however, the pages can be configured to provide whatever details are needed.

Consolidating Approvals and Notifying Users

Consolidation applies to scenarios when a user is responsible for multiple approval items for a single document. In this scenario, you can use the Consolidated Notification and Approvals options to avoid sending separate approval notifications to the approver for each approval item.

Consolidated Notification is the capability to send single approval email notifications to the approver for all the header or line item approvals, when all the approval items become available for approval. This enables approvers to review all their approval items for a document as a whole,

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

rather than revisiting the same document multiple times. When all the items become available, the system changes the status of all the approval items to *Assigned* and then you are allowed to independently **Approve** or **Reject** the assigned approval items.

You can navigate to the **My Approvals** page (provides the list of all the approval items for the user for that document) in the application to take approval actions. From **My Approvals** page**,** you can selectively approve or reject assigned approval items.

The **Consolidate Notifications** check box when selected, enables the assignee to receive single consolidated assignment notification for all approval items. An approver then has flexibility to approve or reject all or subset of the assigned requests.

Also from the May Patch release onwards, an assignee will also receive consolidated e-mail notifications for cancellation and notify only requests.

If an approver is defined for notify only steps, a consolidated notification email is sent once all the notify only steps are available.

If an approval is cancelled, and the user is an assignee for multiple steps, the user receives a consolidated cancellation notification.

Email Approvals: In case of email approvals for consolidated notifications, when you approve or reject an approval using email, all the items that require approval are Approved or Rejected simultaneously. Email approval does not enable you to approve or reject individual approval items. You can then either respond to the email approval notification to approve or reject all the items assigned to the user or can navigate to the "My Approvals" page (provide the list of all the approval items for the user for that document) in the application to take approval actions. Within the application, from "My Approvals" page, user can selectively approve or reject assigned approval items. System will consolidate the approval requests as per the behavior specified above and send single notification for all the approval items that require approval from a given user when all the items become available, rather than sending separate notification for each approval item.

The **Consolidate Approvals** check box when selected, enables the assignee to receive single consolidated assignment notification for all approval items. An approver can then either Approve All or Reject All the requests that require their approval.

From the May Patch release onwards, you can use the **Consolidate Approvals** feature only with the **Consolidate Notifications** and not independently. When you select **Consolidate Approvals,** accordingly, **Consolidated Notifications** is selected by default. However, **Consolidated Notifications** can be used by itself without **Consolidated Approvals**.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

To create a process definition

1. Click the **Approval Processes** tab or click and click **Approval Processes**.
2. Use **Manage Approval Processes** to select the required object and click **Create New Approval Process**. Currently *Opportunities*, *Agreements*, *Quote/Proposal*, *Proposal Line Item*, and *Agreement Term Exceptions* can be associated with Intelligent Approvals.
3. Enter a process name and description and click **Next**.
4. Select the Entry Criteria, which indicates in which circumstances the approval process should be initiated, and click **Next**. Any field can be used. You must ensure you select an appropriate operator for the field value, as there is no validation of operator-value combinations. If no criteria is selected, all records will require approval once the approval process has been activated. You can used Advanced Options if want the criteria to be linked by more than just *AND*.
5. Based on your requirements, do the following,:
    a. Select **Consolidate Approvals** if you want to bundle multiple approvals into a single approval action.
    b. Select **Consolidate Notifications** if you want to bundle multiple notifications into a single notification both via email and in Salesforce.
    c. Select **Continue Pending Approvals on a Reject** if you want to continue the approval process even when the approver rejects an approval request.

    Consolidated Approvals only works when Consolidated Notifications is selected. Consolidated Notifications can work independently. See Consolidated Approvals, for more details.
6. Click **Next**.
7. Select the Notification Templates you want to use for the process or leave the fields empty to use the default templates and click **Next**:

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Option	Description
Assignment Email Template	This is used for emails that are sent to someone who has been assigned a task, based on the approval workflow process. The default is *Apttus Agreement Approval Notification (Assignment)*.
Reassignment Email Template	When an existing task is reassigned to someone else, this is used for the email sent to that person.. The default is *Apttus Agreement Approval Notification (Reassignment)*.
Escalation Email Template	This is used when auto-escalation is enabled and an outstanding approval task has reached the point where it is auto-escalated. The default is *Apttus Agreement Approval Notification (Escalation)*.
Cancellation Email Template	This is used to notify people when an approval process has been cancelled. The default is *Apttus Agreement Approval Notification (Cancellation)*.
NotifyOnly Email Template	This is used when the Notify Only option is selected in one of the steps. The recipient of this email does not have any action items. The default is *Apttus Agreement Approval Notification (Notify Only)*.
Reminder Email Template	This is used when reminders are set up. The default is *Apttus Agreement Approval Notification (Reminder)*.

Note

If approvals will be submitted with attachments, the email templates you use need to be custom templates.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

8. To override the default, enter the **Approval Summary Page** name where the approver indicates whether they approve or reject the item and click **Next**. You can leave this field blank and the default pages will be used automatically. There is no auto-lookup available for this, you must enter the exact name of the page to change the setting. The default pages are *OpportunityApprovalSummary*, *AgreementApprovalSummary*, *QuoteApprovalSummary*, *QuoteLineItemApprovalSummary*, and *AgreementTermExApprovalSummary*.
9. Click to display a list of users who can act as the backup admin user for this specific process. If you do not select one, the global backup admin user will be used.
10. To add a customized comment that applies to the approval process or step when the request is submitted for approval , select **Submission Comments Enabled**.
11. To make Approval Comments and Rejection Comments mandatory, select **Approval Comments Mandatory** and **Rejection Comments Mandatory**.
12. Click **Save**.

The Intelligent approval process has been created and saved in Salesforce.

You can now proceed to creating approval steps, which are required to activate an approval process, by selecting **Yes, I'd like to create an approval step now**. You can select one of the **No...** options to go to work on other parts of the intelligent approvals configuration process.

Checking the Approval Status

Approval required check is performed to determine whether a document requires approval and if approval process needs to be executed.

CPQ Approvals: For CPQ Approvals, **Approval Required check** is a default system behavior and an approval process is not evaluated unless the Approval status is set to Approval Required by the approval required check. Preview, Submit for Approval / Request Approval actions are only enabled when approval status is set to Approval Required. For CPQ Approvals, entry criteria filters need to be defined on Product Configuration object at minimum. In addition, the entry criteria filters can also be defined on the Line Item object if approval is needed based on line item parameters.

Approval Required Check on Pricing: For CPQ Approvals, system auto executes Approval Required check on Reprice, if Apttus Intelligent Approvals is used.

Approval Required Check on Quote Update: For CPQ approvals, system can also execute Approval Required Check on Quote update if Quote Header parameters are used in Approval Required criteria. You can use Quote Header parameters in CPQ Approval Required check using **Formula Fields (Approvals)** in Entry Criteria Search Filters.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Approval Required check does not evaluate the approval process, but checks the entry criteria of the approval process. The purpose of the approval required check is to reduce the performance overhead of performing detailed process evaluation to determine whether approval is required.

Approval criteria or conditions are defined using Search Filters (Approvals) of type Entry Criteria.

Approval Required Check is primarily used with CPQ approvals, but can also be used with approval on other objects.

Use the following guidelines while defining entry criteria filters:

Entry Criteria Filters: Search Filters (Approvals) of type Entry Criteria are used in Approval Required Check.

Entry Criteria filters on the Primary object: These entry criteria filters are defined for the approval process context object. For example, if approval process is defined for Quote/Proposal then Entry Criteria filters need to be defined on Quote/Proposal object.

Entry Criteria filters on the Child Object: If the approval conditions are also based on the parameters from the child objects of the approval context object then entry criteria filters are also defined on the related child context object. For example, if an approval process is defined Quote /Proposal, but the approval conditions are also based on the proposal line item object then Entry Criteria filters needs to be defined on Quote/Proposal line items object also.

Entry Criteria using parameters related Parent Object: Entry criteria filters can also be defined on a given object using reference fields from the related parent object. For example if an approval process is defined on Quote/Proposal then Entry Criteria filters need to be defined on Quote /Proposal object. However, if approval conditions are also based on fields from Opportunity object (parent of Quote/Proposal) then you can define **Entry Criteria** fields using Formula Fields (Approvals). In the above example, you will define Formula Fields (Approvals) on Quote/Proposal object using fields from Opportunity object. Once these Formula Fields (Approvals) are defined, the fields appear in field selection list for defining Entry Criteria filters on the Quote/Proposal object.

Guidelines for Defining Entry Criteria Filters: You can define multiple Search Filters (Approvals) of type Entry Criteria on a given object. System will evaluate all these entry criteria filters.

Creating Initial Submission Actions

Initial actions update object record fields when the approval process begins for that record.

 Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

The only conditions considered before the initial actions occur is the entry criteria for the process definition, which starts the intelligent approval process. There is no additional logic involved. Therefore it is best to create initial submission actions for the fields that will always require updating when the approval process begins. This ensures that all fields are handled programatically and do not require someone to manually change them.

Note

As with all fields that can be updated as part of the intelligent approvals process, there is no validation that the values entered for the *Field Value* are correct while you are creating actions and approval steps. You must know what the field type is and should thoroughly test your process before using it in a live environment.

To create initial submission actions

There must be an approval process.

1. Click **Add New** in the **Initial Submissions Actions** section.
2. Select **Field Update (Constant)** from the **Field Action Type** list and select the field name. Enter the **Field Value**, ensuring it is an appropriate value type for the field. - or - Select **Field Update (Value)** and select the user lookup field for the object record you want to update with the Current User ID. The current user is the person who is logged into Salesforce and makes a change to the object record that initiates the intelligent approval process.
3. Click **Save** to complete the task - or - Click **Save & New** to add another action.

The item is added to the **Initial Submission Actions** section.

Creating Final Actions

Final actions enable you to update record fields in the object according to whether the intelligent approval process was completed successfully or it was rejected.

As final actions can only be used to update fields, the order in which they are created is unimportant.

Note

There is a single reject policy embedded in the system. If there is at least one rejection during the approval process, the entire process is rejected.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

To create final actions

1. Click **Add New** in either the **Final Approval Actions** or **Final Rejection Actions** section of the approval process. To use Auto Re-approvals, set the cart status to **Ready for Finalization** in the final submission actions rather than Finalized to ensure that a new cart is not created every time.
2. Select the **Field Name** for the field in the object record you want to update.
3. Enter a valid **Field Value** for the field and include a description. If the field is a pick list, the **Specify New Field Value** list is displayed, to select from.
4. Click **Save** to add the action and return to the main approval process page. - or - Click **Save & New** to add the action and create another action of the same type.

The items are added to the appropriate final actions section. The actions will update those object record fields upon the last approval or rejection action for that approval process.

Creating Approval Steps

Approval steps provide the logic for routing object record approvals to the correct people based on specific criteria.

A minimum of one approval step is required to activate an intelligent approval process; however, a process can contain many steps. When you create steps it is important to understand the approval workflow you want to have. Along with the step criteria, step dependencies should be used when organizing your approval workflow. Any steps that are not dependent on another step will be executed in parallel.

Approval Step Enhancements

Approval steps have been enhanced to offer three different step types to the user, as well as new description fields, and the ability to select which context object fields should be displayed when an approval request or preview is sent.

Approval Step Types	There are three step types you can choose from when creating an approval step: • **Standard** - This is the existing method for creating approval steps. • **Sub Process** - This is used when you want to select approval rules that are associated with the context object of the approval process, which also replace the assignee types that are used with a Standard step.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

	• **Child Process** - This is used when you want to select approval rules that are associated to child objects of the approval process context object, which also replace the assignee types that are used with a Standard step. It enables the *Context Object* and *Approval Rule* list.
Description Fields	There are description text fields available for adding information about a step, as well as for conditions of the step entry criteria. These fields enable you to provide useful information to the approvers about these items.
Display Fields	The fields enables you to select the header level fields of the context object you want to show to users when previewing an approval or when an approval request has been sent and the approver is reviewing the request information. Any Related Fields you create for the context object is available as display fields.

To create approval steps

There must be an approval process.

1. From the Approval Process page, click **New Approval Step** in the **Approval Steps** section.
   - or -
   At the end of creating a process definition, select **Yes, I'd like to create an approval step now** and click **Go**.
2. Enter a **Step Name, Step Label** and **Description** for the step.
3. Specify the appropriate **Step Type** and click **Next**.
4. Select the **Entry Criteria** for the step and click **Next**. See Creating Expressions for details on setting the criteria.
5. Specify the conditions for setting up Auto-Reapproval. When these conditions are satisfied, the current step will be automatically re-approved.
6. Select **Step Dependencies**, if necessary, by highlighting steps in **Unselected Items** and click to add them to the **Selected Items**. Reorder the steps as required and click **Next**. Step dependency is based on their order in **Selected Items**.
7. Select **Step Auto Complete** if you want this step to automatically be approved when it is assigned to the approver. For auto complete to work as expected, ensure that the step you set Set Auto Complete for is independent from another step. You can set up any or all standard steps in an Approval Process for auto-completion. Entry Criteria is still enforced for

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

the selection of the step, but will be marked as auto-completed if flagged. Approval Comments are not enforced even if the comments are flagged as mandatory. Fact that the Step is auto-completed is captured in the audit trail.

8. Select the process approvers, by selecting from **Assigned Approver > Assignee Type.**

Option	Description
Approval Matrix	Use this to dynamically assign an approval request to a user who has the given approval level in the approval matrix for the user submitting the request. For example, approver authority may change based on the discount being offered on a sales contract. So different levels of approvers can be assigned based on approval authority for a given item.
Custom Queue	This points to a field which contains a queue name in any custom object with a filter to narrow it down to a single row. This can be specified in two ways: • Select the custom field in the custom object you want to use for the custom filter expression and manually enter a constant value it will be compared to. • Select the custom field in the custom object, but select Bind Value, which enables you to select a field in the associated business object to compare to.
Custom Role	This is a field which contains a role name in any custom object with a filter to narrow down to a single row. The behavior is the same as Custom Queue.
Custom User	This is a user lookup reference field in any custom object with a filter to narrow down to a single row. The behavior is the same as Custom Queue.
Queue	Use this to dynamically assign an approval request to a queue. If email notifications are set for the queue, notifications will be sent to all members of the queue, otherwise, a single notification will be sent to the queue email.
Related User	This is a user lookup reference field in the associated business object (i.e. Agreement or Opportunity).
Role	

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Option	Description
	A role can be based on your company's hierarchy and can have one or more users assigned to it.
Rule	Use this assignee type when you want to dynamically assign an approval request based on an approval rule. If you select this option , t he approval request is sent only to the first user that satisfies the filter criteria in the Approval Rul e . If you have multiple approvers in a sequence, only the first approver is selected and assigned.
User	Use this assignee type when you want to dynamically assign an approval request to a user.

9. Select **Send Email** to notify the assignee by email that they must approve or reject the object record and select **Notify Only** to only inform the assignee by email that the approval process has reached this step, without any actions to take.
10. Select **Skip Unresolved Assignee** to optionally skip an unresolved approver from the list of sequential approvers.
11. Choose **Step Auto Escalate** if you want to escalate the current step if no action is taken on the approval request within a specified period. Enter the number of days in **Step Expected Days To Complete and** the number of hours in **Step Expected Hours To Complete** by which you want to escalate the approval request.
12. Select a mandatory **Assignee Type** where you can escalate the approval request to a User, Role or any of the assignee type mentioned in Step 8. Click **Next**.
13. Create Reminders for approval requests that send a reminder notification to the assignee at the specified duration unit and intervals. For example, you can remind the assignee to take action on the request 7 days after it was assigned, and then again a week later. To activate reminders, select **Step Reminders Active**.
14. If you have enabled submission comments at the process level, at each step, you must enable submission comments.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

15. Select the Header and Display Fields which will appear at each approval step, by highlighting steps in **Unselected Items** and click to add them to the **Selected Items**. Reorder the steps as required and click **Next**. Step dependency is based on their order in **Selected Items**. For example, the selected Display fields appear on the Approvals page if you have configured Approvals for CPQ.
16. Click **Save**.

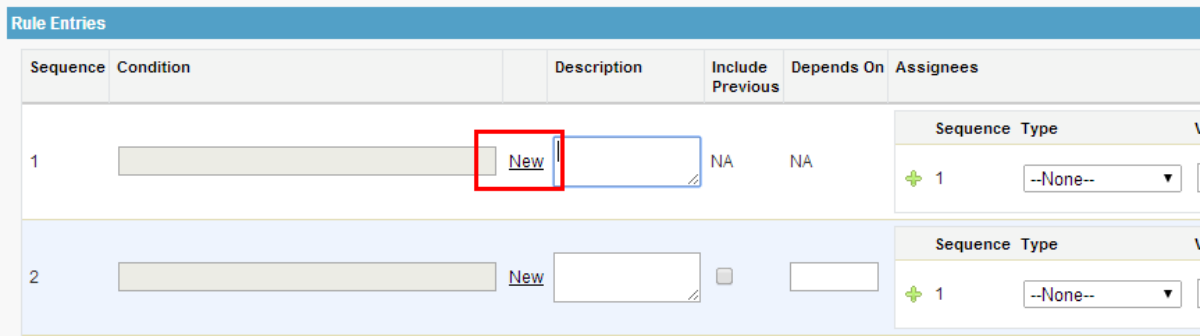
The step is added to the **Approval Steps** section for the Intelligent Approval Process. You can now **Activate** the approval process.

To create an Approval Rule to use with a Sub-process or Child processes

Condition must be added to the *Rule Type* picklist.

Go to **Setup > Create > Objects > Approval Rule**, scroll to **Custom Fields & Relationships** and click **Rule Type**. From **Picklist Values** section, click **New**. Enter Condition and click **Save**.

1. Go to **Approval Rules** and click **New**.
2. Select the Business Object and click **Next**. To use the approval rule with a sub-process it must match the context object of the approval process. To use it with a child process, it must match the child object associated with the approval process.
3. Enter a **Rule Name, Sequence,** and from **Rule Type**, select **Condition**.
4. Click **Save** and then click **Manage Entries** from the *Approval Rule Detail* page.
5. From Rule Entries, click **New**.



6. Enter the condition you want to use to route an approval request to the assignee and click **OK**.
7. Now you can fill out the rest of the rule entry as normal, including descriptions for both the condition and the assignee.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

8. When selecting assignees, the **Type** you select impacts what you need to enter for the **Value**:
    - *User*, *Role*, *Queue* - Enter the *Label* for the specific object record you are referring to.
    - *Related User* - For custom fields enter the *API Name*, such asQuoteOwner___c. This needs to be the *User Lookup* field on the *Line Item* or *Product Configuration* object record. If it is a standard field, addIdto the field name and use that. For instance, with the Line Item field *CreatedBy*, you would enterCreatedById.
    - *Custom User*, *Custom Queue*, *Custom Role* - This can be a formula, using a format as follows:Custom Object (Custom Object Field 01 = "Value" AND Custom Object Field 02 = "Value") User. For more details, see Custom Assignee Example.
9. Add additional conditions and assignees as desired and click **Save**.

> **Note**
>
> The *Assignee Type* is *Subprocess* regardless of whether you created a Subprocess or Child process type.

When the approval rule is *Active* it can be used with an approval process and depending on the context object of the approval process, the approval rule will be available when you select a *Step Type* of *sub-process* or *child process*.

You can create additional approval rules as needed.

Using Date Criteria in Approval Rule Entry

If you use date based criteria in an approval rule entry, you must YYYY-MM-DD 00:00:00 format for the date. For example, you want to trigger an approval rule on Proposal Line Item with Create Date greater or equal to April 5, 2018.

Use the following and do not delete anything:2018-04-05 00:00:00

This is useful when you want to set an approval rule or entry to take effect on or after a certain date. If you do not use the right format, the system displays an error when you try to submit for approval OR the system will simply ignore the criteria and trigger the rule regardless of the date.

Setting up Auto-Escalation

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

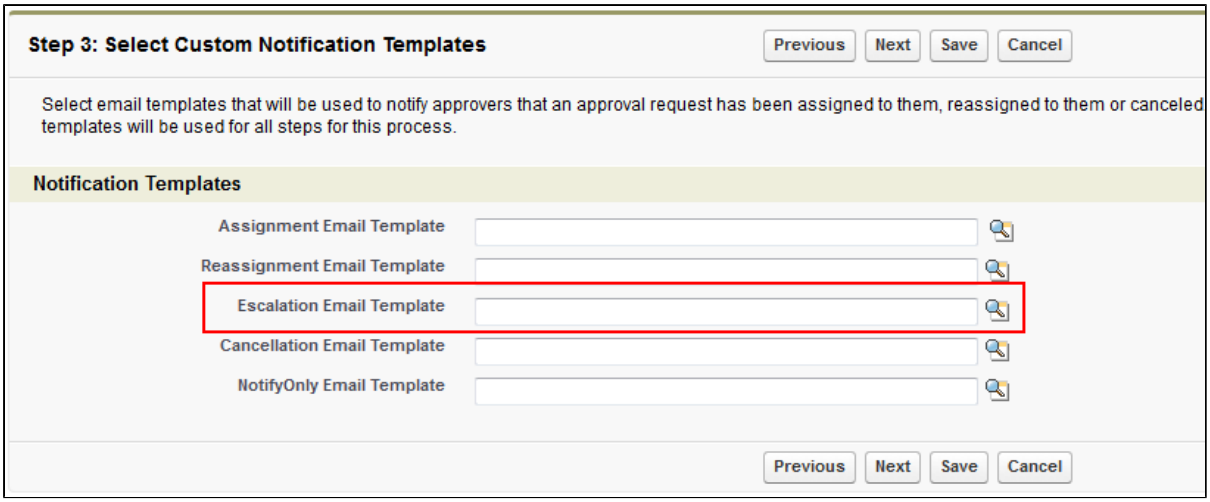
Enabling auto-escalation in an approval process occurs at the approval step level. While the email templates apply to the entire approval process, you can have different auto-escalation settings for each approval step or you can use the global escalation options.

Once an approval process has started, you can choose to manually escalate an approval request from the *Approval Request* related list for the object record currently under approval.

To configure auto-escalation for an approval process

You must have completed the configuration tasks to enable auto-escalation functionality.

1. Create a new approval process or edit an existing one.
2. When you come to the Notification Templates page, you can leave the **Escalation Email Template** field empty and it will use the default template or you can override it with a custom template.



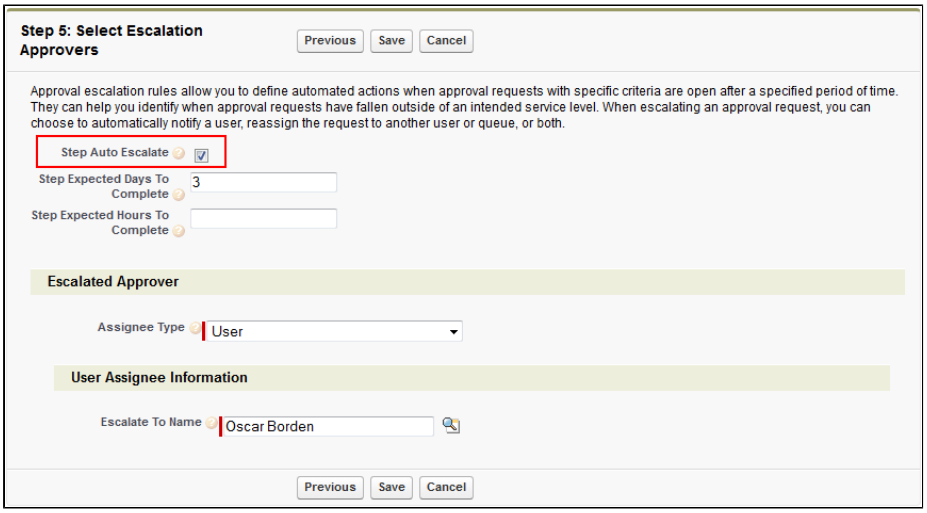
3. Finish creating the approval process and then create or edit an approval step for it.
4. When you come to the Select Escalation Actions page you must select **Step Auto Escalate**. Configure the settings as follows:

Option	Description
Expected *nn* To Complete	These values are used to trigger the auto-escalation. Once an approval request has been created, the system uses the value of expected time to complete to determine when the request should be auto-escalated.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Option	Description
Assignee Type	While you could include any assignee type, the following behavior should be noted. If you select *Related User*, the assignee name can only be a single word otherwise it cannot be reassigned correctly. Also be aware of the differences between selecting a single-step and multi-step assignee type.
Assignee Name	This value is dependent on the assignee type.

> **Note**
>
> This page is displayed regardless of whether the auto-escalation feature is enabled.



5. Save the approval process step to complete the procedure.

When approval requests for that specific approval step exceed the **To Complete** values, they will be auto-escalated per the escalation settings.

To manually escalate an approval request

The configuration tasks must have been completed.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

1. Go to an object record that you have submitted for approval. Only the user who initially submitted the approval, or system administrators, can manually escalate a request.
2. From the **Approvals** related list, select **Escalate**.

The request is immediately escalated, according to the auto-escalation settings.

Creating Expressions

Intelligent approval process expressions provide a method for qualifying whether an object record should be routed through specific approval steps.

To connect individual expressions together using *OR*, as well as *AND*, you must use Advanced Options. For details, see Creating Advanced Options.

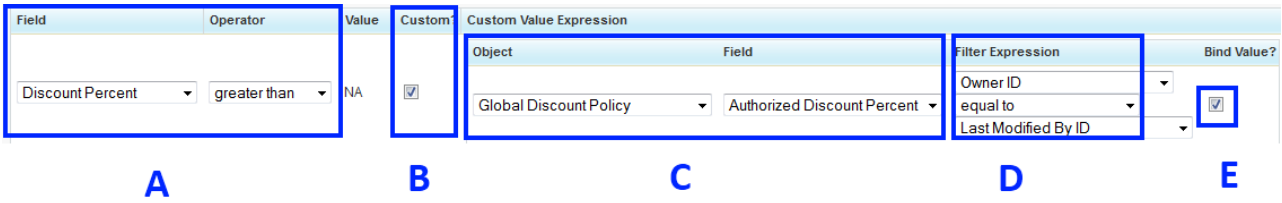
There are three types of expressions: standard, advanced and bound.

Expression	Description
Standard	This uses a field from the object record in the approval process, along with an operator, to compare to a single value to see if the process should enter a certain approval step. The value can be a constant value, whether entered manually or selected from a picklist, depending on the field type.
Advanced	This builds upon the simple expression, by enabling the value to come from a custom value expression. The custom value is derived from building another equation using a custom field in a custom table.
Bound	The same as advanced, except that the filter expression can use a field from the business object record in the approval process.

Your criteria can contain a simple field, operator, and value, or the value can be composed of a "custom" expression evaluated at runtime which includes resolving a value from a custom table, a custom field in that table, and an optional filter expression to narrow the rows down in that table. Custom filter expressions can also use bind variables that substitute the value of a field from the context object at runtime.

Bound Expression

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



A	The field comes from the business object associated with the approval process. Along with the operator, this forms the typical first two thirds of an equation.
B	Selecting **Custom** enables the **Custom Value Expression** section for creating advanced and bound expressions. It also sets **Value** to a read-only *N/A*.
C	The **Object** is a custom Salesforce object containing the available fields. The value selected for **Field** is what is compared to the field in part *A*. At its most basic form it is those two fields and the operator that form the expression. The expression will be evaluated for each row in the custom object.
D	The **Filter Expression** can be used to limit the number of rows in the custom object which are used as part of the overall expression. Any of the fields in the custom object can be used to create a filter expression, independent of the overall expression being evaluated.
E	Selecting **Bind Value?** creates a bound expression and makes the second field used in the Filter Expression come from the same business object as the field in part *A*. The **Bind Value** check box identifies the following: • A specific field on the custom object and compares it to a field on the context object. • A unique record on the custom object that needs to be used in the step entry criteria.

Attention

When building your expressions — both the Custom Value and Filter Expression — you must ensure the data types for the values in the fields being compared match. If they do not match, an error will occur when you preview the process or submit a request.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

To create standard expressions

Must be in *Step 2: Specify Step Entry Criteria* when creating or editing an Approval Process Step.

1. From the **Field** list, select the required object record field you want to compare.
2. Select the **Operator** and enter a valid **Value**.
3. Click ✚ or ➖ to add and remove additional field expressions. By default, each line is linked with *AND*, click **Advanced Options** to use *AND*, *OR*, and parenthesis. See Creating Advanced Options for details.
4. Click **Save** once all the expressions have been added.

To create advanced and bound expressions

Must be in *Step 2: Specify Step Entry Criteria* when creating or editing an Approval Process Step.

1. From the **Field** list, select the required object record field you want to compare and select the **Operator**.
2. Select **Custom** to display the **Custom Value Expression** options.
3. Select the required options:

Option	Description
Object	This is the custom Salesforce object that is a table containing fields that are used for the expression. **Note** These must have been added via Approvals System Properties. See Setting up Custom Assignee Value Expression Objects for details.
Field	This is the field in the custom object which will be compared against the field and operator selected in step 1.
Filter Expression	These two fields and operator act as an independent expression within the larger overall expression.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

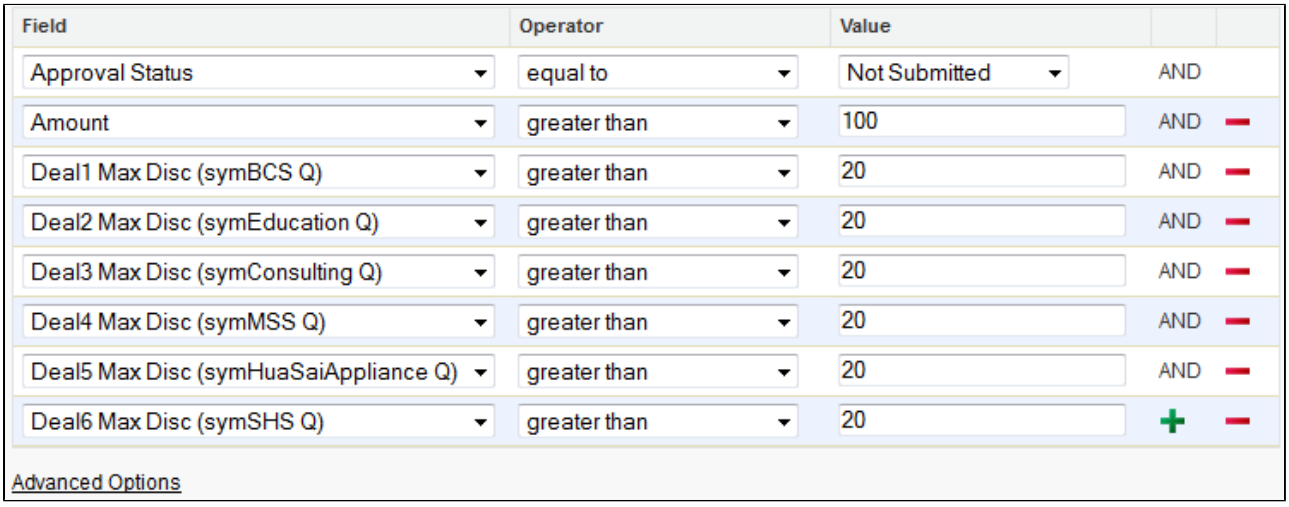
Option	Description
Bind Value	This enables the third **Filter Expression** picklist to be populated with values from the same object record that is being used in the main Field picklist.

4. Click ✚ to add another line.
   - Or -
   Click **Next** or **Save** to leave the page.

Creating Advanced Options

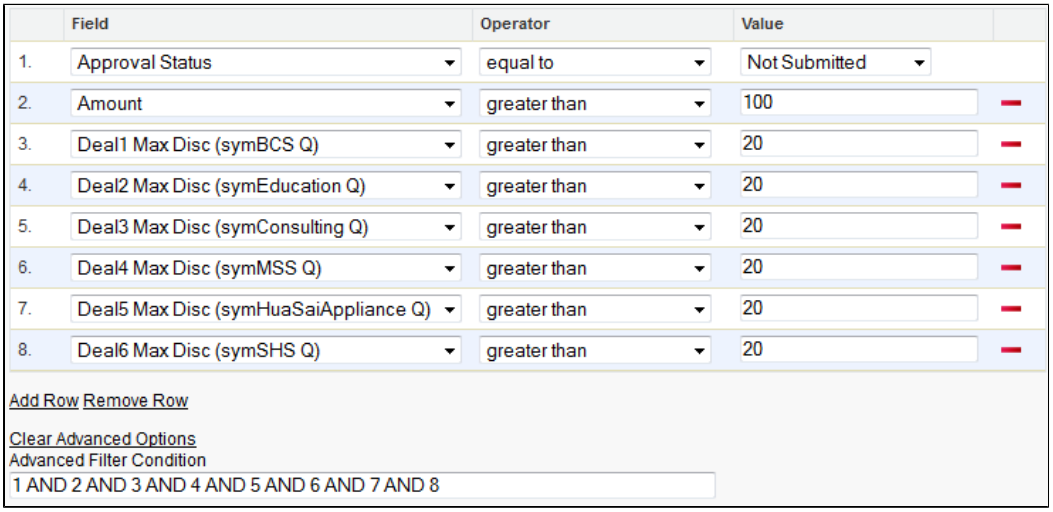
By default, when you create expressions each of them is associated by *AND*. This means the criteria for each expression must be met before the approval process will be routed according to the entry criteria, approval step criteria, or term exception approval conditions.

The **AND** column is read-only and cannot be changed. You must select **Advanced Options**.



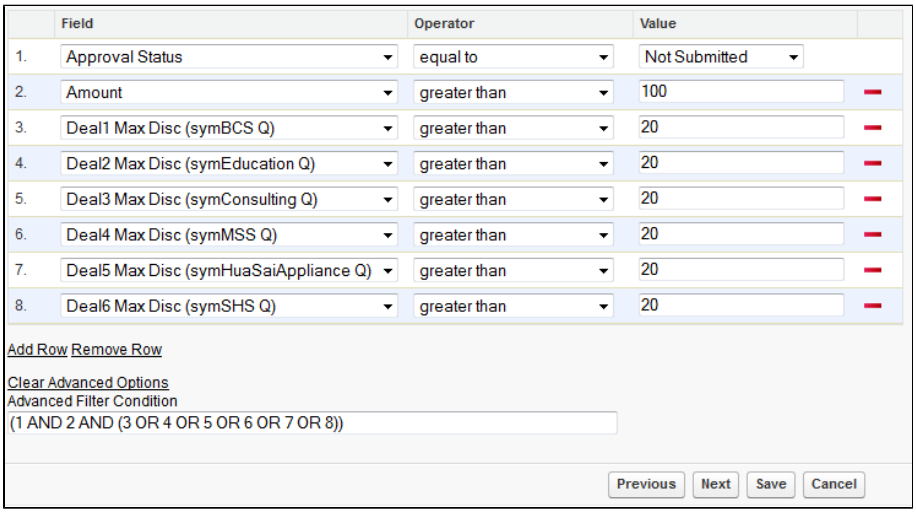
When you select **Advanced Options** the **AND** column is removed, a number is prepended to each expression, and the **Advanced Filter Condition** field is displayed. It displays each of the expressions – identified by their number – joined by the default *AND*.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



In the **Advanced Filter Condition** field you can use any combination of *AND*, *OR*, parenthesis, and numbers representing the expressions. These are the only values that can be used. Using other values may cause unexpected behavior.

As it is a free text field, there is no validation on the characters you can enter in the field. You can use up to 255 characters in the field.



To set advanced options

You must be in one of the following custom object sections:

- **Approval Process > Entry Criteria**
- **Approval Process > Approval Steps > Step Entry Criteria**

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

1. After you have created the required expressions, select **Advanced Options**. The **Advanced Filter Condition** field is displayed with the expressions listed in sequence, linked by *AND*.
2. In the **Advanced Filter Condition** field, create the equation using only the numbers representing the expressions, *AND*, *OR*, and parenthesis.

Option	Description
Valid example	((1 OR 2) AND 4) OR 3
Invalid example	((1 > 2) & (three or 4)) AND 5

3. Click **Next** or **Save** depending on which custom object you are in.

The expressions are linked and evaluated according to the formula in the **Advanced Filter Condition** field. There is no auto-validation on the formula. You should test the resulting criteria before using it in a live environment.To remove the advanced options and return to expressions that are all linked by *AND*, click **Clear Advanced Options**.

Initiating an Approval Request

If the object for which you have defined the approval process fulfils the search entry criteria and the step entry defined in the approval process, an approval request is initiated. All line items that require an approval, show up with an approval required label. To view the object and line items that require an approval you can use the Approval button on the object, to view a list of approvals required along with the approvers.

Setting up Approval Rules

Approval rules and dimensions enable you to package approval routing criteria together and use them for handling the *Assigned Approvers* step in the Approval Steps of your Intelligent Approval Process.

Typically if you choose to assign approval responsibilities to a specific user or role, there is no further logic or criteria that can be put into that assignment. The only real criteria available for the approval step is the *Step Entry Criteria*. By associating rules at the assignee step, via approval rules, you can dynamically assign approvers based on the same object records information used for the entry criteria.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- Dimensions
  Dimensions enable you to map fields from a variety of business objects including, but not limited to, Opportunity, Quote/Proposal, and Agreement Term Exception.
- Approval Rules
  Approval rules are used to associate Salesforce business objects, approval rule dimensions, and entry criteria for deciding which assignees are required during the Intelligent approval workflow.

Dimensions

Dimensions enable you to map fields from a variety of business objects including, but not limited to, Opportunity, Quote/Proposal, and Agreement Term Exception.

Once a dimension has been created, you can create an approval rule and associate it with the dimension.

To create approval rule dimensions

1. Click the **Approval Rule Dimensions** tab or click + and then select **Approval Rule Dimensions**.
2. Click **New** and then enter the dimension information:

Option	Description
Dimension Name	Enter a meaningful name, which will make it easy to identify and select in the intelligent approval process.
Business Object	This should match the object in the Intelligent approval process, that you plan to use the approval rule with. The objects you can select from are dependent on the packages you have installed.
Dimension Type	Field is a field associated with the business object. Formula is a type which can be extended through the associated business object.
Field	

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Option	Description
	The fields associated with the business object are available if the Dimension Type is Field. If the Dimension Type is Formula, then enter a formula with a reference field syntax (nnn__r.area__c), such as *Approval_Submitter__r.Area__c*.
Description	Description for the approval rule dimension.

3. Click **Save** to go to the Approval Rule Dimensions details page - or - Click **Save & New** to add another dimension.

The dimension is added to the list on the Approval Rule Dimensions page.

You can now create approval rules and associate them with the dimension. Either from the dimension details page or from the Approval Rules tab.

Approval Rules

Approval rules are used to associate Salesforce business objects, approval rule dimensions, and entry criteria for deciding which assignees are required during the Intelligent approval workflow.

To create approval rules

Dimensions must exist, so that the approval rule can be associated with one.

1. From the Approval Rule Dimension page, click **New Approval Rule** in one of the **Approval Rules (Dimension)** sections. - or - Click ✚ and then select **Approval Rules** and click **New**.
2. Select the **Business Object** that is the same as the one associated with the Intelligent approval process this rule will be used with and click **Next**.
3. In the **Configure Rule** section, enter the minimum required settings for the rule:

Option	Description
Business Object	This is the value selected in Step 2 and cannot be edited here.
Rule Name	Mandatory name for the rule.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Sequence	Mandatory number indicating in which sequence the rule will be evaluated.
Rule Type	Select **Dimension** or **Condition** for this mandatory setting.
Description	Description of the rule.
Dimensions	Select the dimensions you want the rule to be used with. The available dimensions are based on the business object selected in Step 2. There can be a maximum of six dimensions.
Dimension Types	Select **Discrete** or **Range**. Discrete must be a specific value, such as a number or a value for a category. The value *Rejected* in the category *Approval Status* would be discrete. Range is continuous data, where a value can be measured to multiple degrees. For example the number of units for a product could fall into a range of 1-99, 100-199, 200-499 and 500 or more.

> **Note**
>
> You should not use the Rule Criteria section, as this kind of logic is typically handled by Approval Step logic.

4. Select **Active** so the rule can be used with Intelligent approval processes.
5. Click **Save** to go to the Approval Rule details page - or - Click **Save & New** to add another rule.

The rule is added to the list on the Approval Rules page.

From the Approval Rules detail page, you should add assignees, using the **Manage Entries** option.

Approval Rule Assignees

The Manage Entries section of an Approval Rule designates assignees who will receive approval requests, based on the associated dimension and where they are called within an approval step.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

You can have a user, role, queue, custom version of those, related user, or auto approval as an assignee. Like configuring assignees in the approval step, you can indicate whether they should only be notified or sent an email informing them they must decide on the approval.

If you want to automatically progress an item, you can select Auto Approval as an assignee and associate the rule with a *Subprocess* in an Approval Step. In instances where approval routing is based on thresholds, an Auto Approval assignee can ensure the process is handled correctly.

In instances where approval routing is based on thresholds, an Auto Approval assignee can ensure the process is handled correctly. For instance, if approval routing is based on discount percentages and no approval is required for the 0-20% range, the approval step for that range could go to an Auto Approval assignee.

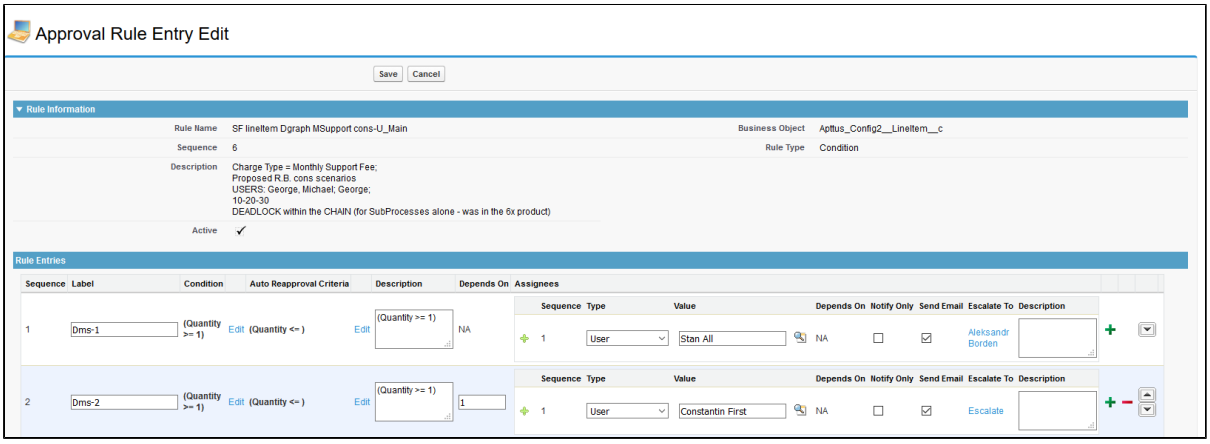
Note

You must ensure valid values are entered or the expected assignees may not get notified as expected. While you can enter someone's name, username, or email address, it is recommended that you either use the username (that they login to the system with) or the email address associated with their account. As these should be unique, you can best ensure you have selected the correct user.

To set the assignees

There must be an Approval Rule.

1. From the Approval Rule Detail page, click **Manage Entries**.
2. Select the criteria, based on the previously selected dimensions.



3. Enter the assignee details:

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Option	Description
Sequence	If you are going to use this rule with a *Subprocess* in an Approval Step, you can select to add another assignee, otherwise do not add more.
Type	Choose from **User, Role, Queue, Related User, Custom User, Custom Role, Custom Queue** or **Auto Approval**.
Value	You need to enter a valid Salesforce value for the assignee, based on the Type selection.
Label	Enter a label to associate with the Value.
Depends On	If you have multiple assignees for the rule entry, enter the number corresponding to the assignee who you want to make the current assignee dependent on.
Notify Only	An email is sent to the assignee, without any action items.
Send Email	An email is sent to the assignee, informing them they must make an approval decision.
Skip Unresolved Assignee	Select to optionally skip an unresolved approver from the list of sequential approvers.
Escalate To	If the assignee does not approve or reject a request within a stipulated frame of time, the request is escalated to the specific assignee.
Description	Description for the assignee.

4. Click ✚ to add another rule entry - or - Click **Save** to go to the Approval Rule Detail page.

The rule entries are now in use by the approval rule.

Now that the approval rule has assignees, you can create an Intelligent approval process and reference the approval rule and it will use values entered here to route the approval.

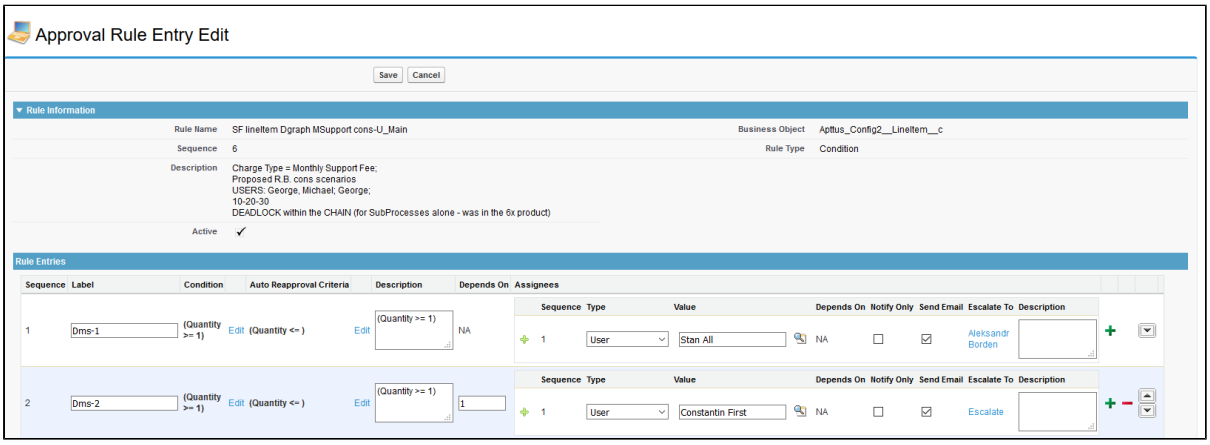
Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Setting up Auto-escalation for Rule Assignees

> **Important**
>
> Auto Escalation should be set-up on approval rules that will be used as sub-process (context header object) ONLY. Auto escalation should not be setup on child process (child records or line items).

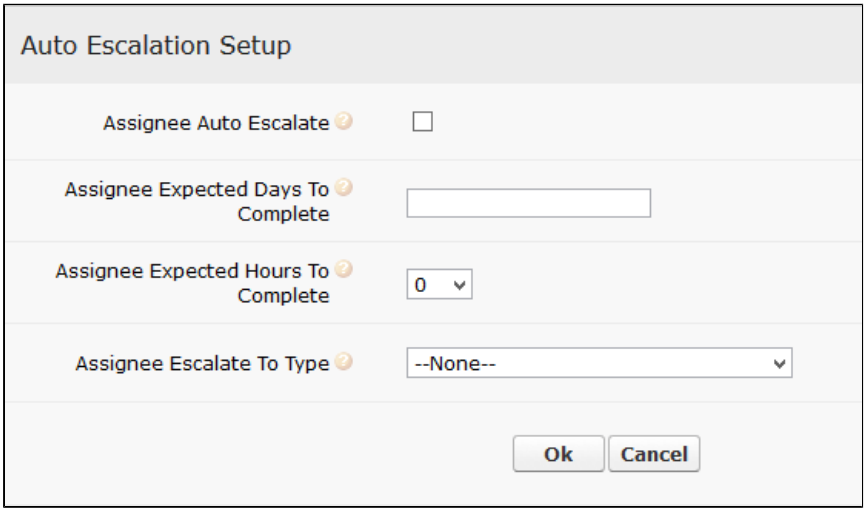
To setup auto-escalation for assignees, there must be an Approval Rule.

1. From the Approval Rule Detail page, click **Manage Entries**.
2. Select the criteria, based on the previously selected dimensions.



3. Enter the assignee details.
4. Click **Escalate To**. The Auto Escalation Setup dialog appears.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



5. Enter the escalation details:

Option	Description
Assignee Auto Escalate	Select this check box to enable auto escalation for the specific assignee. If the Assignee does not approve or reject the request within the specified days or hours, the request is escalated.
Assignee Expected Days/Hours To Complete	Specify the days or hours within which the assignee should approve or reject the request. If no action is taken on the request, it is escalated to the assignee specified in the Assignee Escalate To Type field.
Assignee Escalate To Type	Specify the assignee you want to escalate the request to. The Assignee type can be user, role, queue, backup admin, user manager, delegated user, related user, User Approval Matrix Next Approver

Approval Policies

Approval policies enable you to set the number of approved requests required for a process to be considered approved, based on unanimity, majority, or percentage. This is done by selecting a policy type for an approval rule and associating it with an approval process through a subprocess assignee.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

When there are multiple approvers for a sub-process, as the approvers complete their requests the system uses the policy to determine when the approval process is finished. When an approval process reaches the approval or rejection threshold, any remaining approval requests do not need to be completed.

For example, if you have a majority policy with five approvers and the first three approvers approve the approval request, there is no need for the remaining two approvers to answer the request. 3 out of 5 have approved it to reach a majority and the Approval Status for the object is set to Approved. Even if a single approver rejects the request, the approval status for the object is set as Rejected.

There are four policy types:

Unanimous	All approvers must approve their requests for it to be approved. This is the same as the default Intelligent Approvals behavior.
Majority	Majority of approvers must approve the request for it to be approved. To ensure this policy evaluates as expected, you should ensure you have an odd number of approvers. If you have an even number of approvers and you end up with the same number of approvals and rejections, the request is rejected.
Percent	The designated percentage must be met or exceeded for the request to be approved.
Quorum	The designated number must be met or exceeded for the request to be approved in the **Approval Count** field. For example, if you set up **Approval Count** as 2, and you have 4 approval requests, out of which 2 of your approval requests are approved, then the Approval Status is set to *Approved*. If any 2 of your approval requests are rejected, the system waits for the next 2 approvers to take the decision. If the remaining 2 approvers approve the request, the Approval Status is set to *Approved.* **Note** The above system behaviour is functional when you have selected the **Continue Policy Approval on a Reject** check box.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Note

You cannot use approval policies and consolidated approvals together. You can only use one or the other in an approval process.

From the May Patch 1 release onwards, once an assignee rejects an approval request, you can choose to proceed to send approval requests to the rest of the assignees in the policy despite a rejection. In the earlier releases, the policy status would be set to **Rejected** even if a single assignee in the rule rejected a request.

The Approval policy (supported for Sub Process or Child Process steps) supports a new feature to **Continue Policy Approval on a Reject** when a policy is enabled.

- When checked, this feature allows the user to approve their assigned approval requests, as long as the policy criteria can still be met, even though one or more approval requests within the Sub process or Child process are already rejected.
- When unchecked, all the approval requests with status other than Approved, within the Sub Process or Child Process will be cancelled, whenever any request is rejected. Policy approval for that approval Sub Process or Child Process will stop immediately.

The **Continue Approval Policy After Rejection** check box takes precedence over the **Continue Pending Approvals on a Reject** check box, which is set at the process level.

The table highlights the behavior for the **Continue Approval Policy After Rejection** check box**.**

Policy Type	Behavior
Unanimous	All the assignees must approve the request for the status to be approved. Even if a single approver rejects the request, the Approval Status is Rejected. Continue Approval Policy after Reject (selected): All the assignees are routed the approval request, the approval request cycle continues even after a rejection. Continue Approval Policy after Reject (de-selected): The approval request cycle stops after a rejection. The Policy status is set to Rejected.
Majority	Continue Approval Policy after Reject (selected): All the assignees are routed the approval request, the approval request cycle continues even after a rejection. If the majority of the approvers have approved the request, the status is Approved.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Policy Type	Behavior
	Continue Approval Policy after Reject (de-selected): The approval request cycle stops after a rejection. The Policy status is set to Rejected.
Quorum	Continue Approval Policy after Reject (selected): All the assignees are routed the approval request, the approval request cycle continues even after a rejection. If the specified quorum of the approvers have approved the request, the status is Approved. Continue Approval Policy after Reject (de-selected): The approval request cycle stops after a rejection. The Policy status is set to Rejected.
Percent	Continue Approval Policy after Reject (selected): All the assignees are routed the approval request, the approval request cycle continues even after a rejection. If the specified percentage of the approvers have approved the request, the status is Approved. The approval request cycle stops after a rejection. The Policy status is set to Rejected.

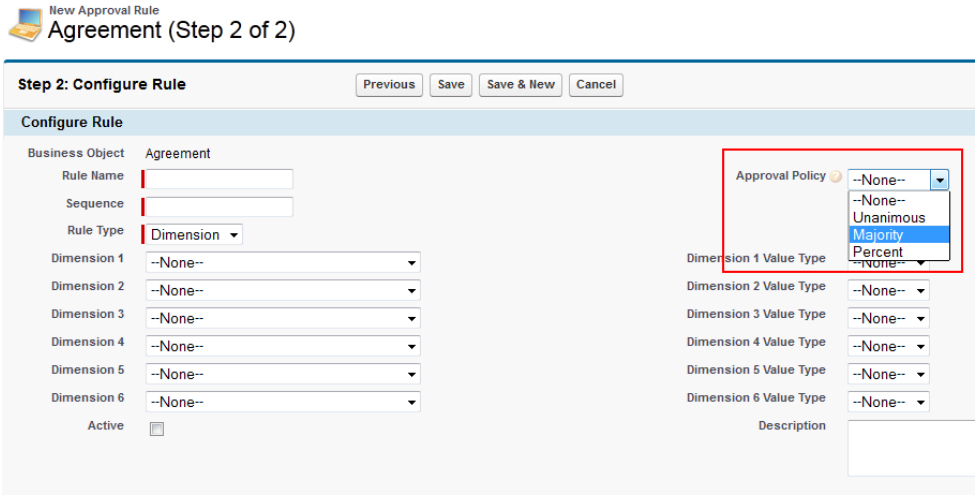
To create an approval policy

1. Go to the **Approval Rule Dimensions** tab and create a dimension.
2. Go to the **Approval Rules** tab and create a rule. Create a rule per usual, but from the **Approval Policy** list, select from **Unanimous**, **Majority**, **Quorum** or **Percent**.

   If you select *Percent*, an additional field is displayed for entering the percentage threshold for requests, to have the Approval Status reach Approved.
   If you select *Quorum*, 2 additional fields are displayed.

   Approval Count for entering the designated number of approval requests to set the Approval Status to Approved. **Continue Policy Approval on a Reject** check box enables you to let the approvers decide even when the designated number of approvers have approved or rejected an approval request.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



3. Go to the **Approval Process** tab and create a process. When you create an Approval Step, in *Step 4: Select Assigned Approvers*, from **Assignee Type** select **Subprocess** and from **Assignee Value**, select the approval rule created earlier.

The approval process is in place to make use of the policy the next time an approval request for an object meets the entry criteria is initiated.

If you select Percent, an additional field is displayed for entering the percentage threshold for requests, to have the Approval Status reach Approved.If you select Quorum, 2 additional fields are displayed. Approval Count for entering the designated number of approval requests to set the Approval Status to Approved. Continue Policy Approval on a Reject enables you to let the approvers decide even when the designated number of approvers have approved or rejected an approval request.

Optional Configuration

Intelligent Approvals provides a wizard-like set of pages that guide you through the process of creating approval processes and term exception approvals; however, if for some reason you do not want the benefits of this it can be disabled.

Changing this setting does not affect the object values, but the ability to be guided through the creation and editing process is lost when you change to the basic Salesforce.com page.

To change the default Intelligent Approvals Process UI

Build > Create > Objects > Approval Process

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

1. Go to **Standard Buttons and Links** and click **Edit** beside **Approval Processes** Tab. By default, *ApprovalProcessDefnList (Visualforce Page, Package: Apttus Approvals Management)* is selected.
2. Select **Override With Standard** Salesforce.com **Page** and click **Save**.
3. Go back to **Standard Buttons and Links** and click **Edit** beside **View**. By default, *ApprovalProcessDefn (Visualforce Page, Package: Apttus Approvals Management)* is selected.
4. Select **Override With Standard** Salesforce.com **Page** and click **Save**. Repeat step 3 and step 4 for **Edit** and **New**.

When someone next accesses the **Approval Processes** tab and creates a new item or views or edits an existing item, the pages look rubbish.

To return to the default Approval Processes UI, settings back to *ApprovalProcessDefnList (Visualforce Page, Package: Apttus Approvals Management)* and *ApprovalProcessDefn (Visualforce Page, Package: Apttus Approvals Management)*.

To change the default Term Exception Approvals UI

Build > Create > Objects > Term Exception Approval

1. Go to **Standard Buttons and Links** and click **Edit** beside **Edit**. By default, *TermExApproval (Visualforce Page, Package: Apttus Approvals Management)* is selected.
2. Select **Override With Standard** Salesforce.com **Page** and click **Save**.
3. Go back to S**tandard Buttons and Links** and click **Edit** beside **New**.
4. Select **Override With Standard** Salesforce.com **Page** and click **Save**.

When someone next accesses the Term Exception Approvals tab and clicks New, or Edit for an existing item, the pages look rubbish.

To return to the default Term Exception Approvals UI, change the Edit and New settings back to *TermExApproval (Visualforce Page, Package: Apttus Approvals Management)*.

By default, when searching for a step assignee type of *Queue*, *Role*, *Rule*, *Subprocess* or *User*, the results are displayed twenty per page.

The number can be changed; however, it is important to understand how changing the value can impact performance. If the number is too high, it can take additional time for the search page to load the results. When no value is designated, the default twenty is used.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

To set the assignees search page

Build > Develop > Custom Settings

1. Click **Manage** beside **Approvals System Properties**.
2. Click **Edit** beside **System Properties**.
3. In the **UI Assignee Search Page Size** field, enter the maximum number of rows to display on each search page.
4. Click **Save**.

The next time someone is configuring an approval step and selects an Assignee Type of *Queue*, *Role*, *Rule*, *Subprocess* or *User*, the resulting search page will reflect this setting.

Advanced currency management (ACM) is optional Salesforce functionality that must be enabled directly by Salesforce, to allow you to manage dated exchange rates on opportunity records.

When ACM is enabled in your org and being used on opportunities, you cannot use any *Opportunity* object fields that are of a *Data Type* of *Currency* in your intelligent approval emails or on the approval summary page. This includes the standard *Amount* field and any custom fields using the currency type.

If you want to have currency type field information in your emails, you cannot have the values within the content of the email. You would need to have links back to the opportunity record itself in the email and users would have to view the date within Salesforce.

Approvals are now supported for Partner Managed Quotes and Contracts using Salesforce Communities. Your channel partners can not only create quotes and contracts, but can also access all the approval functions that are available to your internal employees. For a community page setup, enable the following functions as community user:

- Preview Overall from Cart
- Return to Cart from Cart Preview Page
- Preview Overall from Quote Header
- Line Item Preview from Cart
- Submit for Approval from Cart Preview
- Return to Quote from Cart Submit for Approval confirmation page
- Submit for Approval from Quote Preview Page
- Return to Quote from Submit for Approval from Quote Header Preview page

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- Approvals History page from Quote Header for Submitted Quote
- My Approvals Page (When no approvals needed)
- My Approvals Page (When approvals needed)
- Approve from My Approvals Page
- Reject from My Approvals Page
- Take Queue Ownership from My Approvals Page
- Cancel Submitted Approval as community user

Do the following to provide community access for a community user:

1. Assign all the Approval packages to the Community User.
2. Create a permission set for the community users.
3. Assign Apex Pages/Classes access to the permission set for community users.
4. Manage User Assignments for the Community User.
5. Provide fields and object level permissions.
6. For Objects, set the Field Level accessibility by profile - Hidden/Visible/Editable
7. Navigate to Object > Page layouts > Page Layout assignment. Associate profiles to the layout.
8. Go to Permission set > Object Setting, provide Create, Read, Edit, and Delete permissions for the community user.
9. Navigate to Permission Set > Object Settings > Proposals > Provide permission to the Configure Products (Approvals) link or button .

   If any error is appears pertaining the Read permissions of account locations, navigate to Object Settings > Account Locations > and provide all 4 Create, Read, Edit, and Delete permissions.

10. Go to Setup > All Communities > Administration > Settings and make the tabs visible to your community user.

Errors you may face during IWA community setup :

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- After clicking the Configure Products (Approvals) button, Error: SObject row was retrieved via SOQL without querying the requested field: Apttus_Proposal_Proposalc. Apttus_QPConfigLocationId_c.
  Resolution : > You might have missed point 9.
- After clicking the Configure Products (Approvals) button, Error : Assigned to : Assigned To ID : Owner
  Resolution : > Go To Custom Settings -> Go To Config System Properties > Assign Admin User
- When you click Submit For Approvals, error : Backup Admin Not Assigned error appears, navigate to Setup-> Custom Settings -> Approvals Custom Config > Click ProductConfiguration__c > Backup Admin User and provide a Backup Admin user name.

To configure buttons and fields for approvals in communities

Ensure that you have set the requisite permissions for community users for apex classes, objects, and VF pages.

1. Navigate to the **Approval** object and create a custom field for approval actions with datatype as formula. The formula field for the custom field remains the same as that of the Approval Action field except for the hyperlink.
2. Add the site prefix specific to the community setting, to the hyperlink. For example, HYPERLINK("/developer/Apttus_Approval__ApprovalRequestEscalate?id="&Id,"Escalate","_top"), here developer is the site prefix for the community org.
3. Ensure that you add the custom fields to the appropriate page layout of the pages the community user has access to.

After you add the button to the community page layout, the button is visible to the community user having access to the page.

For each community page which has a specific hyperlink, configure separate custom buttons and fields for the community and associate the site prefix in the hyperlink of the particular custom button or field.

By default, if an approval rule step cannot find an assignee to send an approval to, it will get routed to the backup approver. The *APTS_EnableRuleCriteriaForStep* admin property setting can override the default behavior, and skip the step, instead of sending it to the backup approver.

If this property is set to *True*, when a rule has no assignees the step is skipped. This has the same effect as a step filter that evaluates to false.

 Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

To set the admin property setting

1. Select the **Admin** tab - or - select and select **Admin**.
2. Click **Go** to display all of the admin settings.
3. If **APTS_EnableRuleCriteriaForStep** is listed, click **Edit**, enter **True** or **False** in the **Value** field, and click **Save**. - or - if the setting is not displayed, click **New Admin**.
4. Enter the name **APTS_EnableRuleCriteriaForStep**, enter **True** or **False** in the **Value** field, and click **Save**.

Subsequent approval processes that are routed to a step where an assignee cannot be found will be impacted by this setting.

To have values available in the Object picklist, when creating a Custom Value Expression for determining assignees, those custom objects must be added to Approval System Properties. For more details on where these objects are used in Intelligent Approvals, see Creating Expressions.

Note

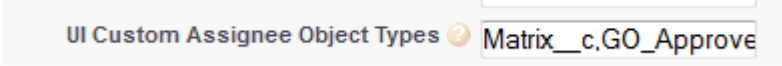
The custom Salesforce objects are configured as normal.

To set up Custom Value Expression Objects

The custom objects you want to add must have been created already.

Build > Develop > Custom Settings

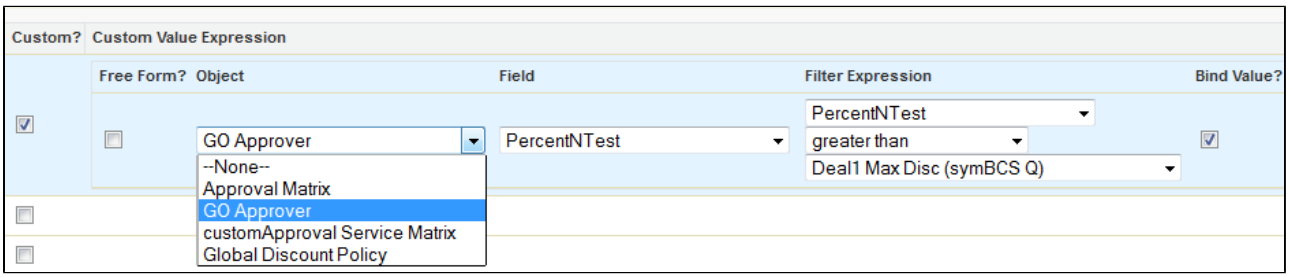
1. Click **Manage** for **Approvals System Properties**.
2. Click **Edit** for **System Properties**.
3. In the **UI Custom Assignee Objects Types** field, enter API names for the custom objects you want to use, separated by commas. The format should be CustomObjectname1__c, CustomObjectname2___c, CustomObjectname3__c.



4. Click **Save** when complete.

The custom objects are now available for selection in the *Object* picklist in the *Custom Value Expression* section, when you are selecting approval request assignees.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

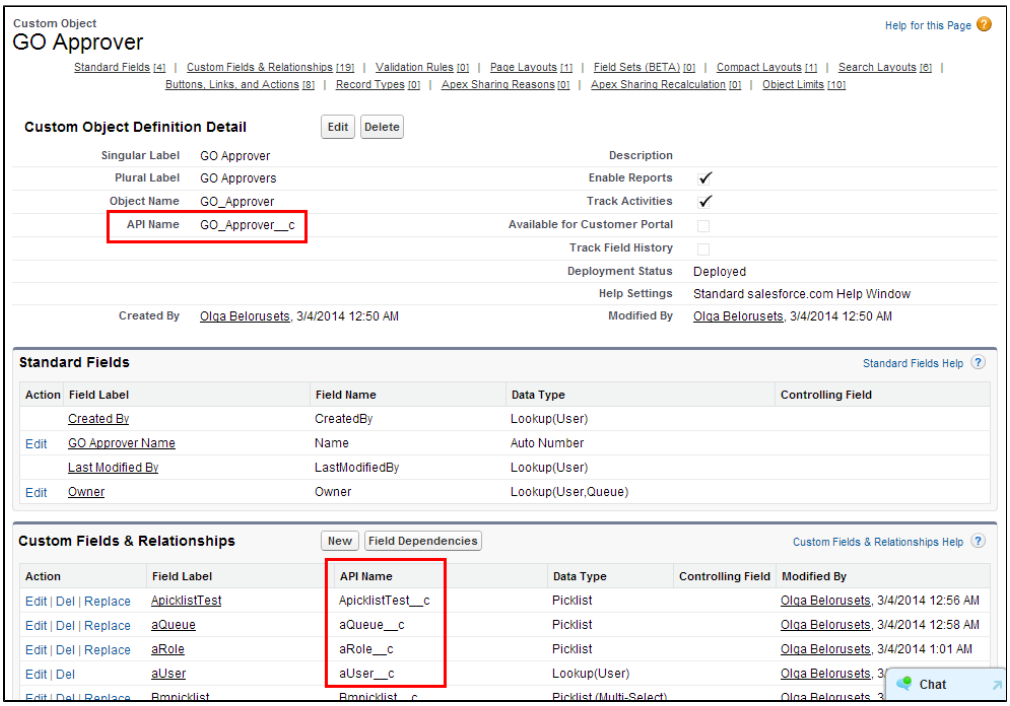


Custom Assignee Example

You can create custom objects to be used with custom assignee types in approval rules. This example will take a custom object called *GO Approver* and show how it is used to provide assignees when creating an approval rule.

Step 1: Create your custom object.

From **Setup**, go to **Create > Objects** and click **New Custom Object**. Create your custom object, adding the necessary fields to enable you to create a formula for selecting assignees. The API name for the custom object and its fields are what are used to create the custom formula in the approval rule.

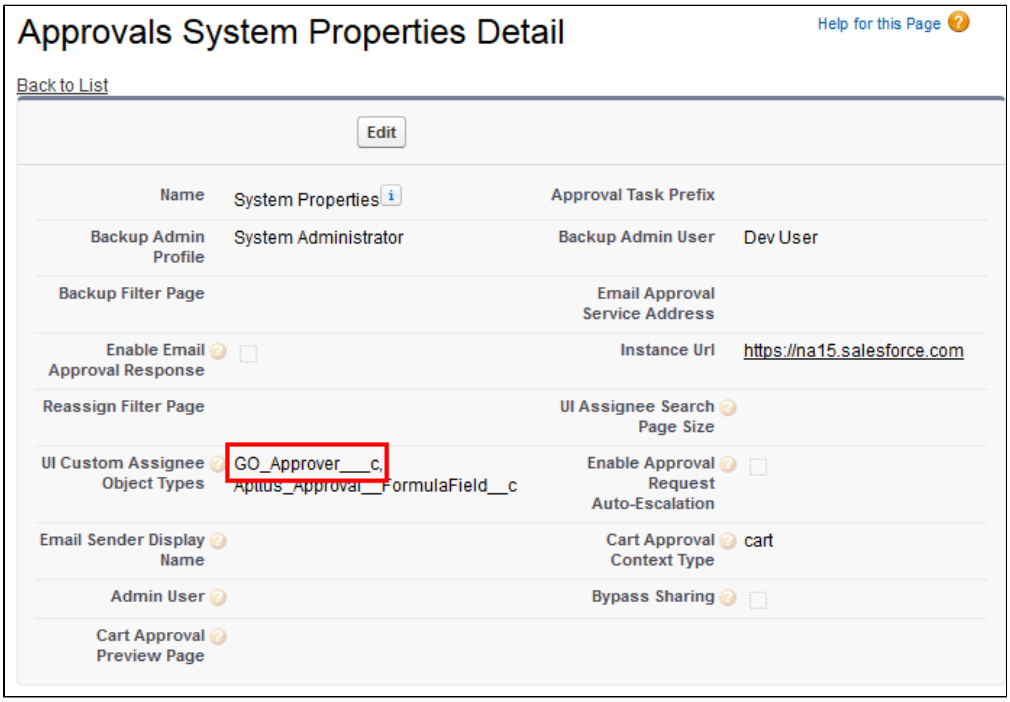


Step 2: Make the custom object available to Intelligent Approvals via a custom setting.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

From **Setup**, go to **Develop > Custom Settings** and click **Manage** for **Approval Systems Properties**. Click **Edit** and for **UI Custom Assignee Object Types** enter the name of the custom objects you want to use with custom assignees.

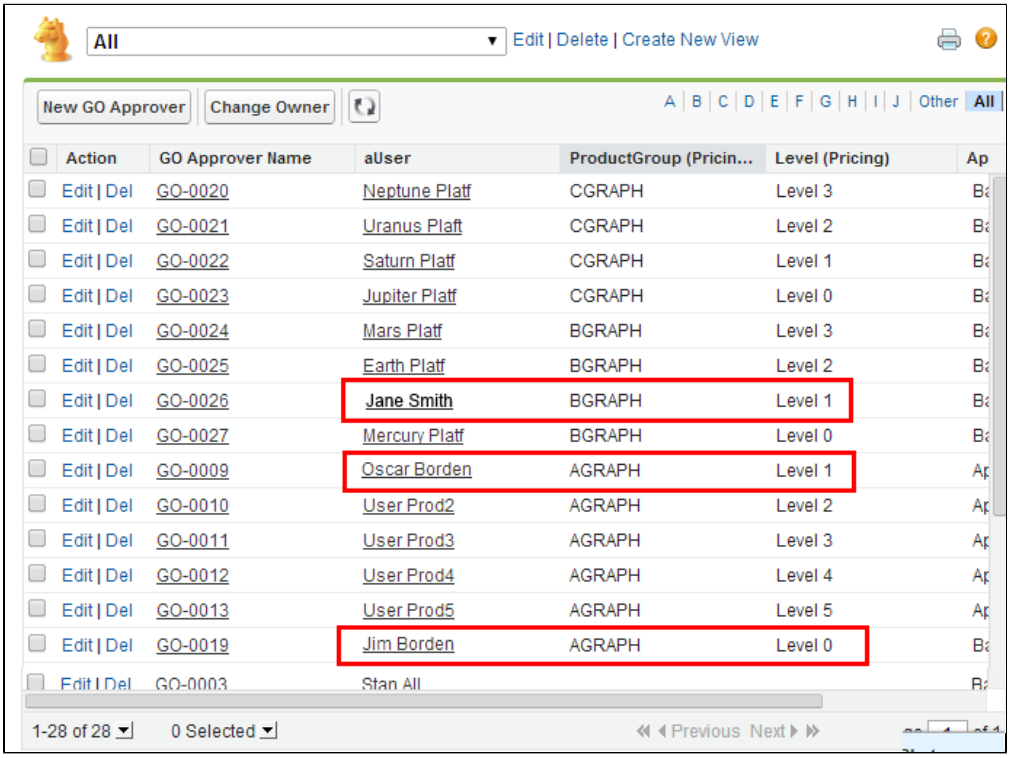
The Approval Systems Property must include the API name of the custom object:



Step 3: Create users for the custom object.

Go to the *GO Approver* tab to display the page and create all the users you want to approve requests. The values you enter in the fields for each user is what is used when you create formulas for selecting assignees.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

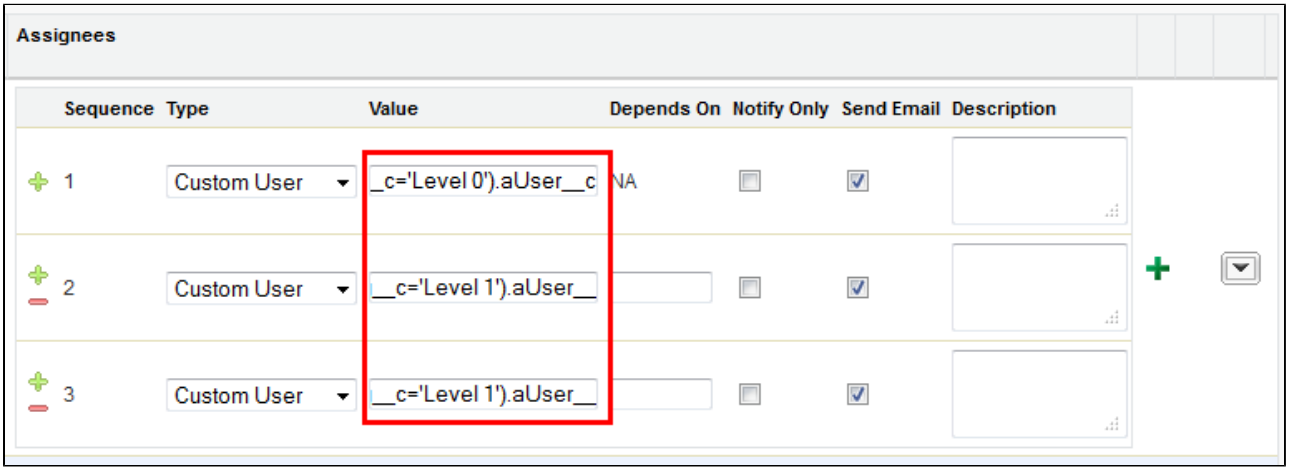


Step 4: Create your approval rules, using formula expressions to select assignees.

Go to an Approval Rule of Type *Condition* and create assignees by selecting *Custom User* and then enter a formula in the *Value* field. For instance the following formulas would route an approval to the following assignees, based on the users you created for the custom object.

GO_Approver__c(ProductGroup_Pricing__c='AGRAPH' AND Level_Pricing__c='Level 0').aUser__c	Jim Borden
GO_Approver__c(ProductGroup_Pricing__c='AGRAPH' AND Level_Pricing__c='Level 1').aUser__c	Oscar Borden
GO_Approver__c(ProductGroup_Pricing__c='BGRAPH' AND Level_Pricing__c='Level 1').aUser__c	Jane Smith

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



Approval matrices enable you to dynamically assign an approval request to someone selected from a list of a maximum of six potential approvers. An approval matrix can be selected as an assignee type when creating an approval step.

The potential approvers are assigned an approval level, which is associated with a percentage discount. Those discount values are based on the *Authorized Discount Percents* set up in Global Discount Policies. You must have these policies set up for an approval matrix to route approvals to the correct level.

The Global Discount Policy values set the default discount percentage levels that will typically require approval and also designate who the approver should be for each level. Matrices enable you to have approvals start at any of the policy levels. For instance, if the policy's *Authorized Discount Percent* for *Approval Level 1* is 15% and no approval is required until the discount on certain items reaches 35%, an approval matrix can be created that does not start until the approval level 2.

To create Global Discount Policies

1. Select the **Global Discount Policies** tab or click ? Unknown Attachment and then select **Global Discount Policies**.
2. Click **New** and enter a whole number for the **Authorized Discount Percent**. This represents the percentage discount at which an approval will be routed to the associated approval level.
3. Enter a description and then select the **Approval Level** for the discount policy entry. This value will be used in the approval matrix to associate a user with the approval level.
4. Click **Save** to return to the Global Discount Policy list - or - click **Save & New** and create another policy entry.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Once you have created the required policies, you can create an Approval Matrix that will make use of the Global Discount Policy levels.

To create an approval matrix

There must be Global Discount Policy levels for each level you want to use in the matrix.

1. Click the **Approval Matrix** tab or click

and then select **Approval Matrix**.
2. Click **New** to display the Approval Matrix Edit page.
3. Enter the required values for the following:

Option	Description
Matrix Owner	This is the Salesforce.com user account associated with the matrix. This means the matrix can also be accessed from the *Custom Links* section on that user's account page. The owner and the user do not need to be the same user account.
User	This is used to find the correct approval matrix, for when an object enters the intelligent approval process. For instance, if an opportunity enters the approval process and an approval step assignee type is an approval matrix
Is Active	Select this option to have the matrix available for inclusion in an approval process. **Note** **Is Valid** is an internal Salesforce.com setting that can be ignored.
Approval Level	This is the level the approval matrix will start at, which corresponds to the same level for global discount policies.
Next Level Approver	This approver is typically the same as *Approver 2*.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

4. Select the Approver, Authorized Discount, and Approver Level values for each approver you want to include in the matrix. The Authorized Discount value should match those of the Global Discount Policies.
5. Click **Save** to return to the Approval Matrix list - or - click **Save & New** and create another matrix.

If it is active, the approval matrix can now be selected when configuring approval process steps.

After you create an Approval Matrix record, you can see the following links when you edit the Approval Matrix record:

- Generate Approval Matrix: When you create a new approval matrix for a single user, you can simply click the Generate Approval Matrix link. This creates the matrix for a new user and adjusts any other matrices that have dependencies on the created batch job.
- Generate Approval Matrix for All: Click the Generate Approval Matrix for All if you have changed values in the Global Approver Settings (the threshold percentages) which requires that all matrices be regenerated and use a batch job mechanism as well.
- Set Next Level Approver: Enables you to change the next level approver specified in the matrix. For example, you can change Approver 2 to Approver 5.

Expected Behavior

The suggested way to use these matrices is as follows:

- For a single user, create a new approval matrix record and enter the minimum information such as User, isActive, isValid, (both true) and Approval Level. Click Generate Approvals Matrix to fill in the rest of the values of the matrix automatically.
- For multiple users, create a new approval matrix record for each user and enter the minimum information such as User, isActive, isValid, (both true) and Approval Level. Click Generate Approvals Matrix to fill in the rest of the values of the matrix automatically. Click Generate Matrix for All to do the same (this runs more jobs and updates to matrices for all users).
- For a bunch of users or whenever global discounts have been adjusted, pick any matrix record and click Generate Approval Matrices for All. Ensure that you specify the first and last matrix records so every single record gets updated.

Related fields can be used to add custom formula fields to Intelligent Approval criteria.

Specifically you can use related fields with:

- Approval Process Entry Criteria

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- Approval Step Entry Criteria
- Re-Approval Criteria
- Child and Search Filters
- Approval Rules Criteria - Both Dimension and Condition
- Approval Rule Entry Criteria - Approval conditions and Auto Reapproval conditions

When you configure a formula field to be used as a related field, it is automatically available with each of the criterias listed above.

To add business objects to Formula Field picklist

1. From Setup, select **Create > Objects > Formula Field (Approvals)**.
2. From **Custom Fields & Relationships**, click **Business Object**.
3. From **Picklist Values**, click **New**.
4. Enter the API Name for the objects you want to include, such as Apttus_Config2__ProductConfiguration__c and Apttus_Config2__LineItem__c.
5. Click **Save**.

The API names are now added to the picklist values.

The next time you create or edit a Formula Field (Approvals), based on the values in Step 4, *Product Configuration* and *Line Item* are available from the *Business Object* picklist.

To set up Formula Fields (Approvals)

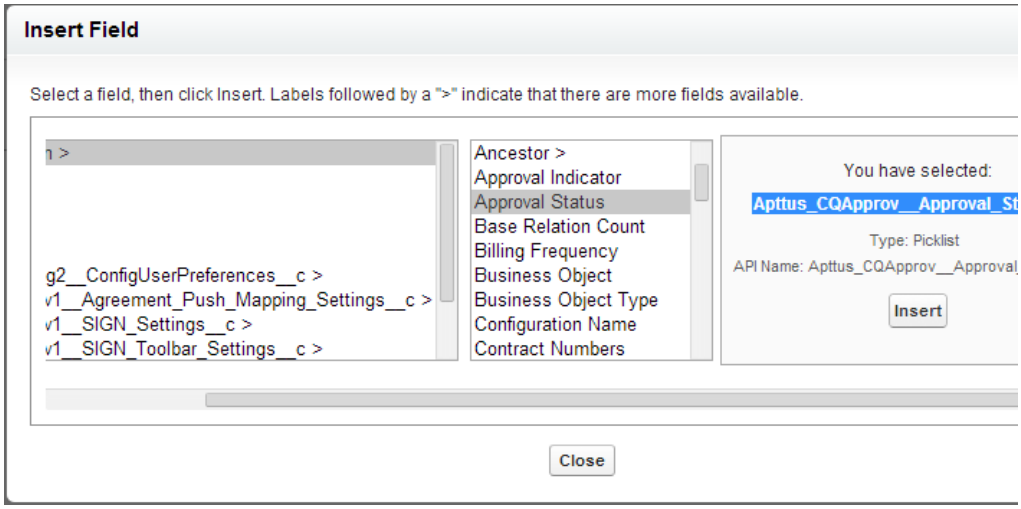
If you want additional Business Object options other than the default values, they must be added to the *Formula Field* (Approvals) business object picklist.

1. Click

and select **Formula Fields (Approvals)**.
2. Click **New** and enter the following:

Option	Description
Field Name	Name displayed in the Field list when setting entry criteria for a process, step f conditions, or re-approval criteria.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Option	Description
Type	Currently this value can only be *Relationship*.
Business Object	This is the business context object that relates to the context object of the appı process or approval step. The field will only be available in a process or step, v value matches that of the process or step. The available default values are *Sta Agreement*, *Agreement Line Item*, and *Opportunity*.
Formula	Contains fields from the business object, such asApttus_Config2__PriceListId_ Price List field on the Configuration object. It can also be used for fields that are associated with the business object via a field. For this you must use__rto indicate there is a relationship between the fie the object. For instance,Apttus_Config2__ConfigurationId__r.Apttus_QPConfig _Proposald__r.Payment_Term__cenables the Payment Term field to be used Product Configuration is the business object. You can use Salesforce Insert Field dialog to build your formula and then copy paste it into the Formula field. You can access the formula by creating a new fi appropriate business object. In this example the *Approval Status* for the *Produ Configuration* object. 
Description	Enter information to state the purpose of the formula field is.

3. Click **Save**.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

The new field is added to the Formula Field (Approvals) list and can be included in an approval process.

When you go to add criteria in approvals, the Field list will display the related field, with the format *Related(Field Name): Formula Field Label*. For example *Related(Price List): Price List*.

When you create step entry criteria for your approval process, you can now use custom child object fields with the expressions. Previously you were limited to the fields of the main context object.

When creating an approval step you can choose to use a child filter. Here you can select from a list of search filters that are related to child objects. This enables you to then select any of that child object's fields. That field value can be compared with another child object field, a static value, or a custom expression.

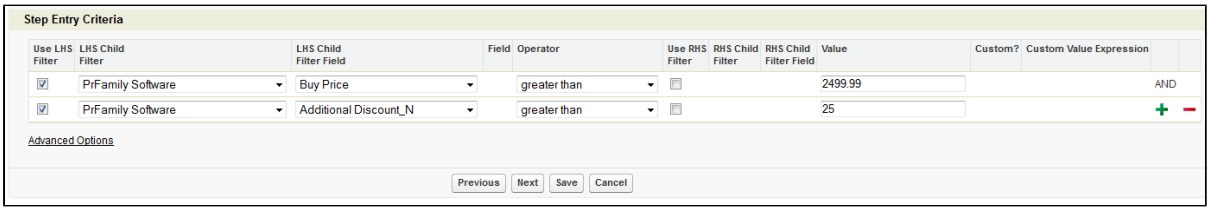
As with any expression, you must ensure that the operators you choose are applicable to the data type of the fields you are comparing. For instance, when using a percentage field you can use operators such as *less than* and *greater than*, but not *contains* or *starts with*. As well the value you are comparing against would need to be another percentage field or a static value such as the number *75*.

Configuring the Search Filters

You must have created any custom child objects you want to use the filters.

1. Go to **Build > Installed Packages > Apttus Approvals Management** and under **Package Components** select **Business Object** for the **Search Filter** parent object.
2. Under **Picklist Values** click **New** and enter the API name for the child object you want to use with child filters. Repeat the step for each child object.
3. Go to the **Search Filters** tab or click

and then **Search Filters**.
4. Click **New**, select the **Business Object** you want to use the filters with and click **Next**. This can include child objects of objects associated with an approval process.
5. Enter a **Filter Name** and **Description**.



Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

6. Enter the required **Filter Criteria**, which will be used in the step entry criteria for the approval process. It is this expression that forms the basis of the child filter expression in the step entry criteria, for determining if an approval step is used.
7. Click **Save**.

The child object will be available when you select *Use LHS Filter* or *USE RHS Filter*, when creating an approval process for its parent object.

Walkthrough

Filters must have been created already via the Search Filters tab.

1. For an approval process, click **New Approval Step**.
2. Enter a name for the step and click **Next**.
3. Click **Use LHS Filter** and the **LHS Child Filter** and **LHS Child Filter Field** drop-down lists are displayed. All search filters created for the child object of the approval process are available from the **LHS Child Filter** list.
4. Select the child object from the **LHS Child Filter** and select one of its fields from **LHS Child Filter Field**.
5. Select a valid operator for the field type and then select another filter or fixed value to compare it to.
6. Add further filters if necessary and then click **Next** to finish creating the step.

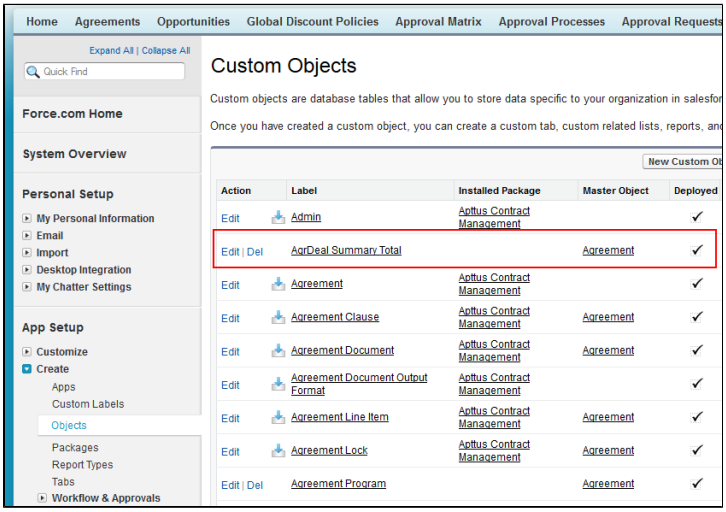
When an object record submitted for approval matches the step entry criteria, the approval process will be routed to that step's assignee.

Example: Child Object Filters

Using Agreements as an example, previously you could only use Agreement fields, such as Total Agreement Value, Category, and Status for entry criteria. With this feature you could create a new custom object and associate it with the Agreement object, enabling it to be used for step entry criteria.

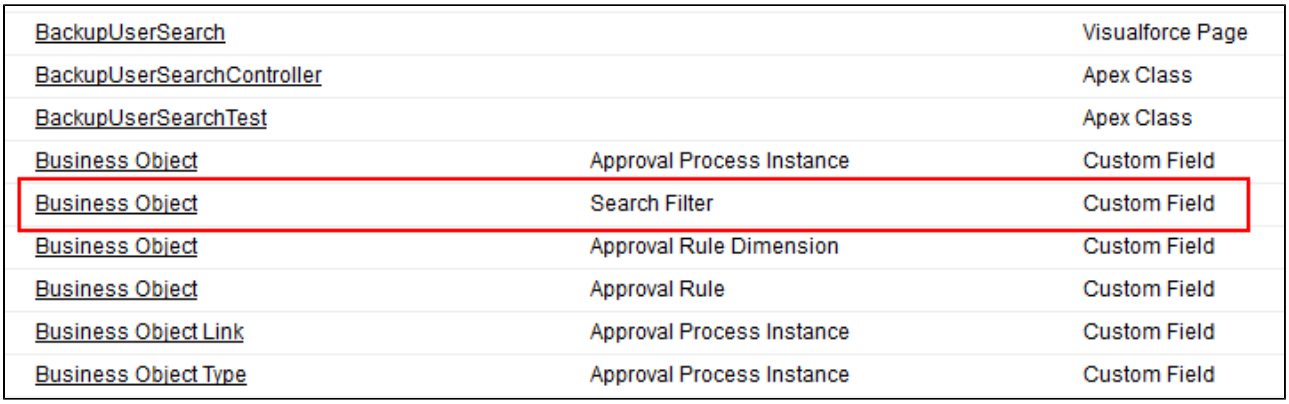
Step 1: Create the custom child object for the Agreement object. In this instance that will be *AgrDeal Summary Total*. This will include fields used for indicating additional discounts for products included in an agreement.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



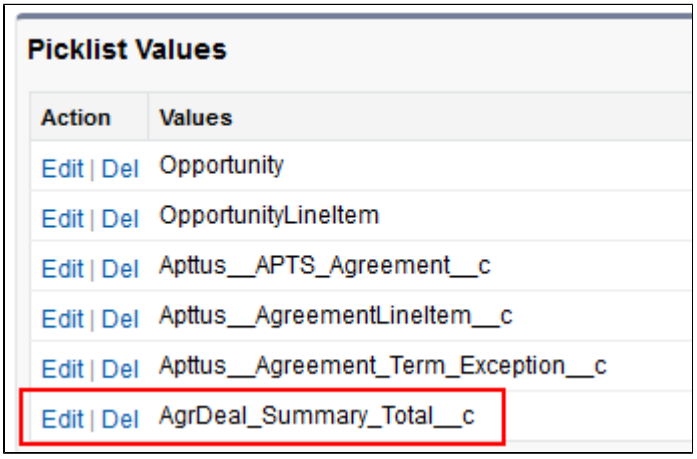
Step 2: After the new custom object has been created for Agreements, the *AgrDeal Summary Total* related list needs to be added to the *Agreements* page layout.

Step 3: Add *AgrDeal Summary Total* to the picklist for the Search Filter Object. This is required to have it available when you set up a Search Filter in the next step. You got to *Build > Installed Packages > Apttus Approvals Management > View Components* and select *Business Object* (Search Filter).

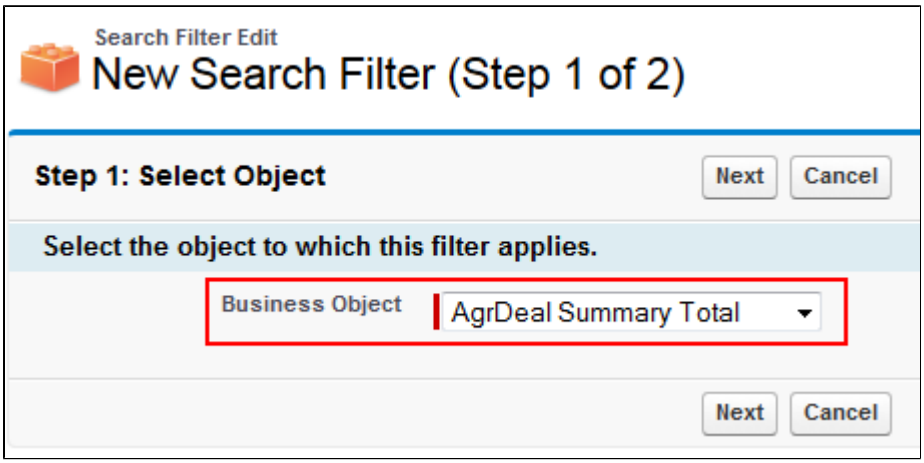


The *AgrDeal Summary Total* API name needs to be entered into the picklist.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

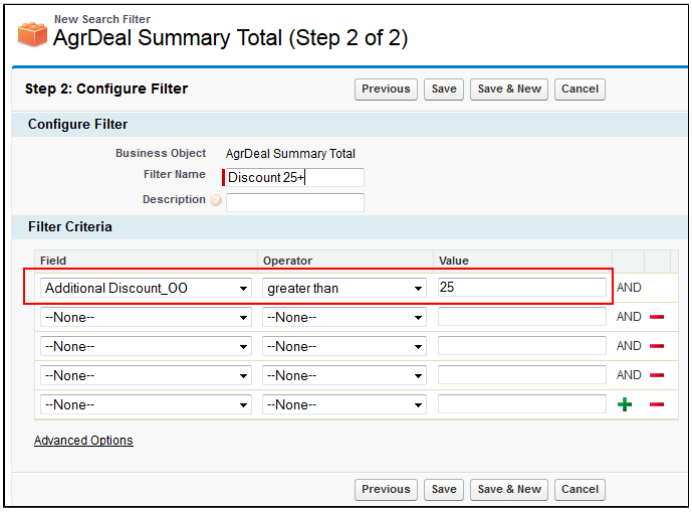


Step 4: Now that AgrDeal Summary Total had been added to the picklist values, a search filter can be created that references it. This is then referenced in the approval step entry criteria. Click ? Unknown Attachment and then *Search Filters*, to begin creating the new filter called *Discount 25+*.

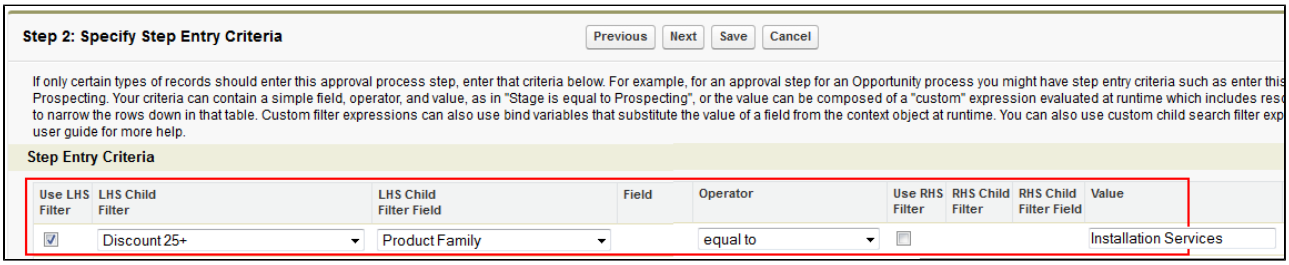


The expression you create for the search filter will be used to build the step entry criteria expression. Then when the *Additional Discount* value for an *AgrDeal Summary Total* record is greater than *25%*, the step entry criteria expression will be checked.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

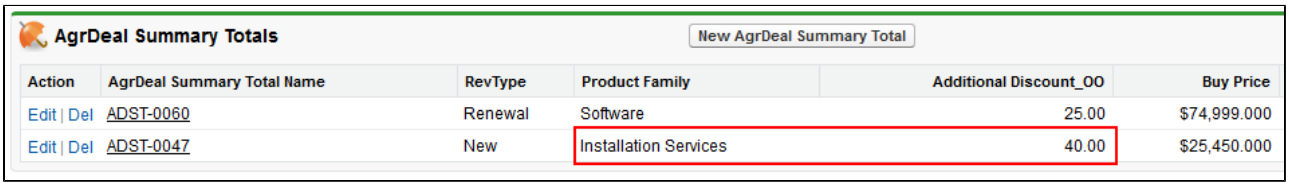


Step 5: Now an approval process step needs to be created which references that search filter. Go to the approval process for an Agreement and create a new step. In *Step 2*, click *Use LHS Filter* and from the *LHS Child Filter* list, select *Discount 25+*. This means only agreement records with an *AgrDeal Summary Total* record that has an *Additional Discount* greater than 25% may enter that step.



Because this step is to route approvals to users who are responsible for the Acme Data product, as well as having a discount of greater than 25%, the AgrDeal Summary Total record's *Product Family* field, must have a value of *Acme Data*. Select an assignee for the step and then save and activate the approval process.

Step 6: Now that the approval process and approval step have been activated, submit an agreement for approval that evaluates as true when compared with the step entry criteria. Here *ADST-0047* has a *40%* discount for the *Installation Services* product family.



Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

This meets the entry criteria as configured above and an approval request email is sent to the assignee for this step.

1. Go to **Setup > Develop > Apex Classes** and click **New**.
2. Copy and paste the code below and ensure the name of the new class is *CartViewController* .

```
/**
 *    Apttus CPQ Approval
 *    CartViewController
 *
 *  @2012-2013 Apttus Inc. All rights reserved.
 */
public with sharing class CartViewController  {
    // context id
    private ID contextId = null;
    // approval type
    private String approvalType = null;
    /**
     * Class Constructor
     * @param stdController the standard controller
     */
    public CartViewController(ApexPages.StandardController
stdController) {
        // get context id
        contextId = stdController.getId();
        // get default approval context type
        //approvalType = SystemUtil.getDefaultApprovalCtxType();
        approvalType = 'cart';
    }
    /**
     * Gets context object Id
     */
    public ID getCtxObjectId() {
        return contextId;
    }
    /**
     * Gets cart approval context type
     */
    public String getCtxApprovalType() {
        return approvalType;
    }
}
```


Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

3. Save the class and then go to **Pages** and click **New**.
4. Copy and paste the following code into the Visualforce Markup window

```
<apex:page standardController="Apttus_Proposal__Proposal__c"
    extensions="CartViewController">
    <apex:form >
        <apex:pageMessages id="errorPage" />
        <apex:outputPanel id="idApprovalContextPanel">
            <Apttus_CQApprov:ApprovalContextView contexSOId="{!
ctxObjectId}"
                contextApprovalType="{!ctxApprovalType}"/>
        </apex:outputPanel>
    </apex:form>
</apex:page>
```

5. Ensure that the **Name** is *CartView* and click **Save**.
6. Go to **Create > Objects** and click **Quote/Proposal**.
7. Scroll to **Page Layouts** and click **Edit** for the page layout you want to add Cart Approvals to.
8. From the **Visualforce Pages** window, drag and drop **CartView** onto the page.
9. Display the VisualForce Page Properties for CartView and select **Show scrollbars**.
10. Save the changes to the page.

The CartView page acts like a related list for displaying the Cart Approvals, so the next time you go to a Quote/Proposal record that has been submitted for approval from the Cart, the approval steps and associated approvers will be displayed.

You must finish configuring the other objects before the feature will work as expected.

Licensing Intelligent Approvals for Agreement and its related Objects

For each user that needs to preview or submit approvals for a custom context object, they must have a license. This is handled through the *Apttus Custom Approvals Management* package.

To license users

You must have installed the license package.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

1. Go to **Build > Installed Packages** and click **Manage Licenses for Apttus Custom Approvals Management**.
2. Click **Add Users** and search for who you want to license to use approvals with custom objects.

All users in the Licensed Users list can use Approvals with Custom Objects.

Creating Term Exception Approval Processes

Term Exception Approvals are unique to Term Exceptions and cannot be used with other objects, unlike a standard Approval Process that can be used with objects like Agreements, Opportunities, or Quote/Proposals.

An Approval with Term Exception is useful when your customer is requesting a change in an existing clause which requires approval from the CFO of your company, and this clause is specific to a single customer.
Considering the above example, if you renew an agreement for a specific customer and your customer wants to enter a new clause. In this scenario, you want your Legal team to approve the new clause before adding it to the renewed agreement. So, you add the new clause, associate it with a term exception and define a term exception approval for it.

A Term Exception can have multiple clauses and correspondingly multiple approval requests associated to it. These approval requests are configured using the Term Exception Approval records and are triggered when the user clicks Submit or Preview on the Agreement Term Exception record under an agreement.

The normal flow to trigger an approval request for an agreement term exception is:

1. Create a Term Exception Approval record and specify Term Exception Approval Conditions (optional).
2. For your agreement record, create Agreement Term Exception records for the Term Exception used in Step 1.
3. Submit or Preview the Agreement Term Exception record for approval.

Term exception approvals are made up of a main approval object, which can contain multiple approval conditions. The table below provides the agreement and the corresponding term status for term exceptions approval requests.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Agreement Status	Term Status
Approved	All terms are approved.
Rejected	One term is rejected.Note: If a user clicks Submit for Approval after a term is rejected, the Rejected term and new additions to terms are routed for an approval and status changes to Pending Approval.
Not Submitted	All terms are Not Submitted.Note: If a Valid To Date changes, or a new Term is added to a request in progress, the Agreement Status becomes Not Submitted. Only new terms should be routed for approval. If a user wants to re-submit all terms, they should Cancel and then click Submit for Approval again.
Cancelled	All terms are cancelled.Note: If a user clicks Cancel, status of all terms changes to Cancelled. If the user then clicks Submit for Approval, all terms should move to Pending Approval.
Pending Approval	Status of one or more term is Pending Approval (none are Rejected).
Closed	Order Operations will move the Agreement Status to Closed once orders are being booked. It should then no longer be possible for anyone to add or change terms.
Expired	An automated Agent will change the Agreement Status to Expired when a Valid To Date is passed. If there are changes to the Valid To Date, the Agreement Status should change to Not Submitted. If the user then clicks Submit for Approval, the Agreement Status and status of all terms is Pending Approval.

To create a Term Exception Approval

There must be an existing Term Exception to associate the approval with. Refer Contract Management Admin Guide to learn how to create Term Exception records.

1. Select the **Term Exception Approvals** tab or click ? Unknown Attachment and select **Term Exception Approvals**.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

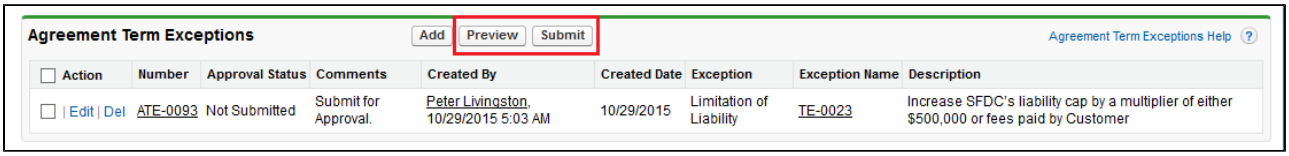
2. Click **New** to display the Edit Term Exception Approval page.
3. Use the lookup to select the Term Exception and any dependencies.
4. Select the process approvers, by selecting from **Assigned Approver > Assignee Type**.

> **Note**
>
> If you select *Rule* as an **Assignee Type**, the approval request is sent only to the first user that satisfies the filter criteria in the Approval Rule . If you have multiple approvers in a sequence, only the first approver is selected and assigned.

5. Select **Send Email** to notify the assignee by email that they must approve or reject the object record and select **Notify Only** to only inform the assignee by email that the approval process has reached this step, without any actions to take.
6. Select **Active** to enable the approval to be used with the Term Exception
7. Click **Save**.

An approval process is now in place for the Term Exception. If needed, you can create Term Exception Approval Conditions; however, they are not a required part of a Term Exception Approval.

Now, you must create an Agreement Term Exception record under your Agreement, choose the specific Term Exception for which you configured Term Exception Approval and click **Submit.** The approval process will begin.



To create a Term Exception Approval Condition

1. Select a **Term Exception Approval** and click **New Term Exception Approval Condition**. By default, the condition is active and already has the Term Exception Approval field populated.
2. Enter values for the following:

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Option	Description
Number	This is the sequence number. Conditions are evaluated in the order specified by this field. When a condition evaluates to *false*, remaining conditions are ignored.
Object Qualifier	This is required to qualify the object and associate it with the condition.
Object	This is the object the condition applies to. The API name of the field should be used.
Field	This is the field associated with the object, that is used to evaluate whether the condition is true or false. The API name of the field should be used.
Operator	This is used to compare *Field* and *Value*.
Value	These values are compared with *Field*. Multiple values can be included by separating them with a comma, such asvalue1, value2, value3. This creates an OR relationship between the values.

3. Set the Join field to AND or OR to establish its relationship with subsequent conditions.
4. Enter a **Description** and click **Save**.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Optional Configuration

The following configurations are optional and common for CPQ Approvals and Intelligent Approvals for Custom Objects.

- Changing the default Intelligent Approvals Process User Interface

  This allows you to change the wizard-like set of pages that guide you through the process of creating approval processes and term exception approvals.

- Changing the Assignee Search page results list

  By default, when searching for a step assignee type of *Queue*, *Role*, *Rule*, *Subprocess* or *User*, the results are displayed twenty per page. This number can be changed; however, it is important to understand how changing the value can impact performance.

- Opportunity record fields and Advanced Currency Management

  Advanced currency management (ACM) is optional Salesforce functionality that must be enabled directly by Salesforce, to allow you to manage dated exchange rates on opportunity records.

- Support for Apttus Intelligent Approvals from Communities

  Approvals are now supported for Partner Managed Quotes and Contracts using Salesforce Communities. Your channel partners can not only create quotes and contracts, but can also access all the approval functions that are available to your internal employees.

- Reporting on Approval Request Channels

  As approval requests can be completed within Salesforce or outside of the system via email, this feature provides a way to identify which of the two is used for each approval request.

- Changing Approval Rule Step Behavior

  By default, if an approval rule step cannot find an assignee to send an approval to, it will get routed to the backup approver. The *APTS_EnableRuleCriteriaForStep* admin property setting can override the default behavior, and skip the step, instead of sending it to the backup approver.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Changing the Default Approvals Process User Interface

Intelligent Approvals provides a wizard-like set of pages that guide you through the process of creating approval processes and term exception approvals; however, if for some reason you do not want the benefits of this it can be disabled.

Changing this setting does not affect the object values, but the ability to be guided through the creation and editing process is lost when you change to the basic Salesforce.com page.

To change the default Intelligent Approvals Process UI

Build > Create > Objects > Approval Process

1. Go to **Standard Buttons and Links** and click **Edit** beside **Approval Processes** Tab. By default, *ApprovalProcessDefnList (Visualforce Page, Package: Apttus Approvals Management)* is selected.
2. Select **Override With Standard** Salesforce.com **Page** and click **Save**.
3. Go back to **Standard Buttons and Links** and click **Edit** beside **View**. By default, *ApprovalProcessDefn (Visualforce Page, Package: Apttus Approvals Management)* is selected.
4. Select **Override With Standard** Salesforce.com **Page** and click **Save**. Repeat step 3 and step 4 for **Edit** and **New**.

When someone next accesses the **Approval Processes** tab and creates a new item or views or edits an existing item, the pages look rubbish.

To return to the default Approval Processes UI, settings back to *ApprovalProcessDefnList (Visualforce Page, Package: Apttus Approvals Management)* and *ApprovalProcessDefn (Visualforce Page, Package: Apttus Approvals Management)*.

To change the default Term Exception Approvals UI

Build > Create > Objects > Term Exception Approval

1. Go to **Standard Buttons and Links** and click **Edit** beside **Edit**. By default, *TermExApproval (Visualforce Page, Package: Apttus Approvals Management)* is selected.
2. Select **Override With Standard** Salesforce.com **Page** and click **Save**.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

3. Go back to S**tandard Buttons and Links** and click **Edit** beside **New**.
4. Select **Override With Standard** Salesforce.com **Page** and click **Save**.

When someone next accesses the Term Exception Approvals tab and clicks New, or Edit for an existing item, the pages look rubbish.

To return to the default Term Exception Approvals UI, change the Edit and New settings back to *TermExApproval (Visualforce Page, Package: Apttus Approvals Management)*.

Changing the Assignee Search page results list

By default, when searching for a step assignee type of *Queue*, *Role*, *Rule*, *Subprocess* or *User*, the results are displayed twenty per page.

The number can be changed; however, it is important to understand how changing the value can impact performance. If the number is too high, it can take additional time for the search page to load the results. When no value is designated, the default twenty is used.

To set the assignees search page

Build > Develop > Custom Settings

1. Click **Manage** beside **Approvals System Properties**.
2. Click **Edit** beside **System Properties**.
3. In the **UI Assignee Search Page Size** field, enter the maximum number of rows to display on each search page.
4. Click **Save**.

The next time someone is configuring an approval step and selects an Assignee Type of *Queue*, *Role*, *Rule*, *Subprocess* or *User*, the resulting search page will reflect this setting.

Opportunity record fields and Advanced Currency Management

Advanced currency management (ACM) is optional Salesforce functionality that must be enabled directly by Salesforce, to allow you to manage dated exchange rates on opportunity records.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

When ACM is enabled in your org and being used on opportunities, you cannot use any *Opportunity* object fields that are of a *Data Type* of *Currency* in your intelligent approval emails or on the approval summary page. This includes the standard *Amount* field and any custom fields using the currency type.

If you want to have currency type field information in your emails, you cannot have the values within the content of the email. You would need to have links back to the opportunity record itself in the email and users would have to view the date within Salesforce.

Support for Apttus Intelligent Approvals from Communities

Approvals are now supported for Partner Managed Quotes and Contracts using Salesforce Communities. Your channel partners can not only create quotes and contracts, but can also access all the approval functions that are available to your internal employees. For a community page setup, enable the following functions as community user:

- Preview Overall from Cart
- Return to Cart from Cart Preview Page
- Preview Overall from Quote Header
- Line Item Preview from Cart
- Submit for Approval from Cart Preview
- Return to Quote from Cart Submit for Approval confirmation page
- Submit for Approval from Quote Preview Page
- Return to Quote from Submit for Approval from Quote Header Preview page
- Approvals History page from Quote Header for Submitted Quote
- My Approvals Page (When no approvals needed)
- My Approvals Page (When approvals needed)
- Approve from My Approvals Page
- Reject from My Approvals Page
- Take Queue Ownership from My Approvals Page
- Cancel Submitted Approval as community user

Do the following to provide community access for a community user:

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

1. Assign all the Approval packages to the Community User.
2. Create a permission set for the community users.
3. Assign Apex Pages/Classes access to the permission set for community users.
4. Manage User Assignments for the Community User.
5. Provide fields and object level permissions.
6. For Objects, set the Field Level accessibility by profile - Hidden/Visible/Editable
7. Navigate to Object > Page layouts > Page Layout assignment. Associate profiles to the layout.
8. Go to Permission set > Object Setting, provide Create, Read, Edit, and Delete permissions for the community user.
9. Navigate to Permission Set > Object Settings > Proposals > Provide permission to the Configure Products (Approvals) link or button .

   > If any error is appears pertaining the Read permissions of account locations, navigate to Object Settings > Account Locations > and provide all 4 Create, Read, Edit, and Delete permissions.

10. Go to Setup > All Communities > Administration > Settings and make the tabs visible to your community user.

Errors you may face during IWA community setup :

- After clicking the Configure Products (Approvals) button, Error: SObject row was retrieved via SOQL without querying the requested field: Apttus_Proposal_Proposalc. Apttus_QPConfigLocationId_c.
  Resolution : > You might have missed point 9.
- After clicking the Configure Products (Approvals) button, Error : Assigned to : Assigned To ID : Owner
  Resolution : > Go To Custom Settings -> Go To Config System Properties > Assign Admin User
- When you click Submit For Approvals, error : Backup Admin Not Assigned error appears, navigate to Setup-> Custom Settings -> Approvals Custom Config > Click ProductConfiguration__c > Backup Admin User and provide a Backup Admin user name.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

To configure buttons and fields for approvals in communities

Ensure that you have set the requisite permissions for community users for apex classes, objects, and VF pages.

1. Navigate to the **Approval** object and create a custom field for approval actions with datatype as formula. The formula field for the custom field remains the same as that of the Approval Action field except for the hyperlink.
2. Add the site prefix specific to the community setting, to the hyperlink. For example, HYPERLINK("/developer/Apttus_Approval__ApprovalRequestEscalate?id="&Id,"Escalate","_top"), here developer is the site prefix for the community org.
3. Ensure that you add the custom fields to the appropriate page layout of the pages the community user has access to.

After you add the button to the community page layout, the button is visible to the community user having access to the page.

For each community page which has a specific hyperlink, configure separate custom buttons and fields for the community and associate the site prefix in the hyperlink of the particular custom button or field.

Reporting on Approval Request Channels

As approval requests can be completed within Salesforce or outside of the system via email, this feature provides a way to identify which of the two is used for each approval request.

By adding the new Approval From Email field to a report, based on the Approval Request custom object, you are able to see whether someone actioned an approval request via email. This means they replied to an approval request email by entering the word *APPROVE*, *APPROVED*, *YES*, *REJECT*, *REJECTED*, or *NO* in the first line of their email response. Any other method of deciding on an approval request is considered as approving it via Salesforce.

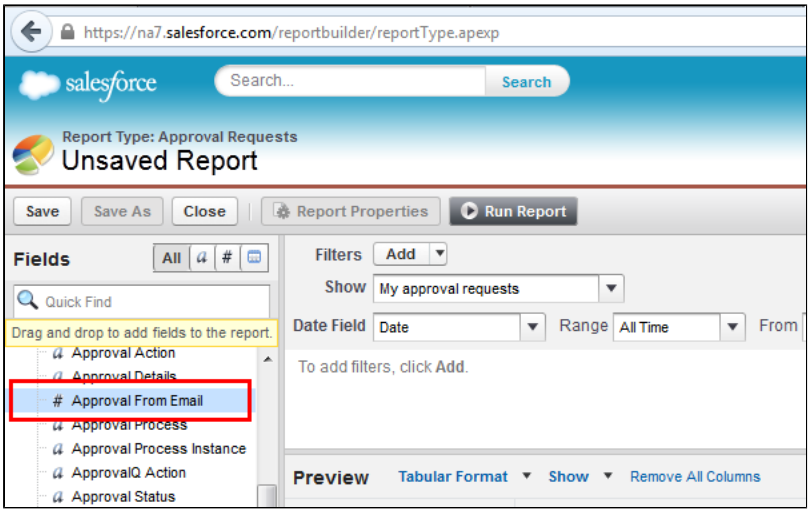
To create a custom report

1. Click

to display all tabs and then select **Reports**.
2. Click **New Report** and from the **Select Report Type** list, expand the **Other Reports** folder.
3. Select **Approval Requests** and click **Create**.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

4. From the **Fields** list, drag and drop **Approval From Email** and any other fields you want to include in the report.



5. Click **Save** to display the Save Report dialog, enter the required details, and click **Save**.

The report is saved in Salesforce.

After a number of approval requests have been decided on, you can run the report and see which requests were approved via email.

You must also ensure that the Enable Email Approval Response custom setting for Approvals System Properties is enabled. This is required for approvers to be able to approve approval requests directly in the email, outside of Salesforce.

Changing Approval Rule Step Behavior

By default, if an approval rule step cannot find an assignee to send an approval to, it will get routed to the backup approver. The *APTS_EnableRuleCriteriaForStep* admin property setting can override the default behavior, and skip the step, instead of sending it to the backup approver.

If this property is set to *True*, when a rule has no assignees the step is skipped. This has the same effect as a step filter that evaluates to false.

To set the admin property setting

1. Select the **Admin** tab - or - select and select **Admin**.
2. Click **Go** to display all of the admin settings.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

3. If **APTS_EnableRuleCriteriaForStep** is listed, click **Edit**, enter **True** or **False** in the **Value** field, and click **Save**. - or - if the setting is not displayed, click **New Admin**.
4. Enter the name **APTS_EnableRuleCriteriaForStep**, enter **True** or **False** in the **Value** field, and click **Save**.

Subsequent approval processes that are routed to a step where an assignee cannot be found will be impacted by this setting.

Setting up Custom Assignee Value Expression Objects

To have values available in the Object picklist, when creating a Custom Value Expression for determining assignees, those custom objects must be added to Approval System Properties. For more details on where these objects are used in Intelligent Approvals, see Creating Expressions.

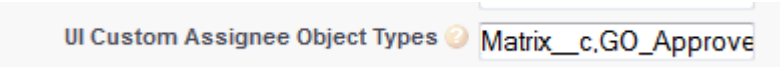
> **Note**
>
> The custom Salesforce objects are configured as normal.

To set up Custom Value Expression Objects

The custom objects you want to add must have been created already.

Build > Develop > Custom Settings

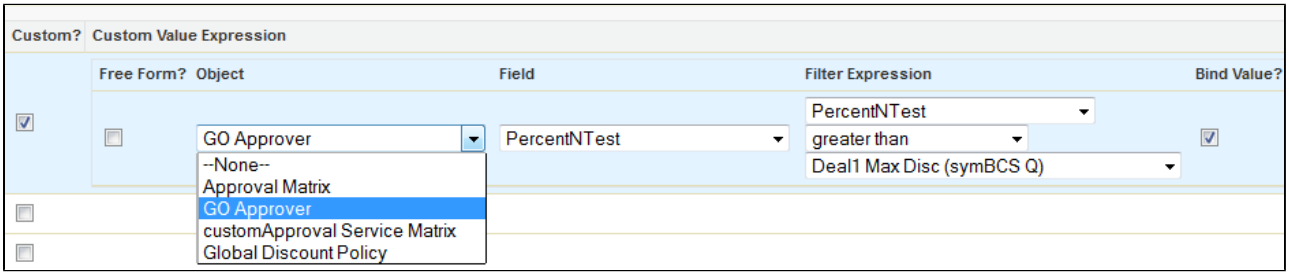
1. Click **Manage** for **Approvals System Properties**.
2. Click **Edit** for **System Properties**.
3. In the **UI Custom Assignee Objects Types** field, enter API names for the custom objects you want to use, separated by commas. The format should be CustomObjectname1__c, CustomObjectname2___c, CustomObjectname3__c.



4. Click **Save** when complete.

The custom objects are now available for selection in the *Object* picklist in the *Custom Value Expression* section, when you are selecting approval request assignees.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

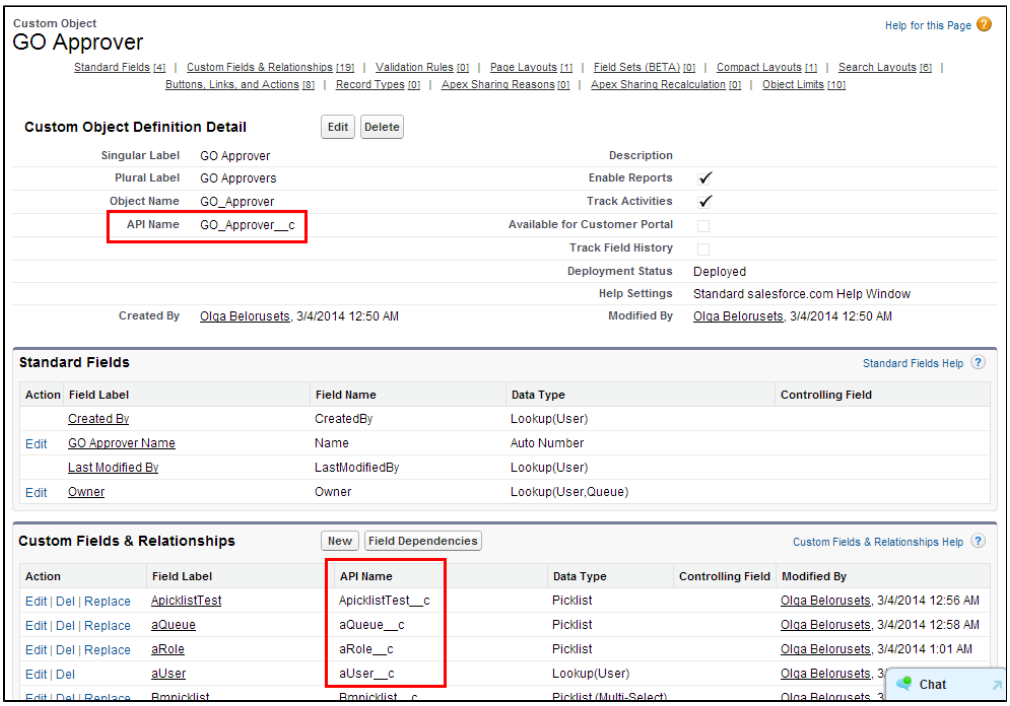


Custom Assignee Example

You can create custom objects to be used with custom assignee types in approval rules. This example will take a custom object called *GO Approver* and show how it is used to provide assignees when creating an approval rule.

Step 1: Create your custom object.

From **Setup**, go to **Create > Objects** and click **New Custom Object**. Create your custom object, adding the necessary fields to enable you to create a formula for selecting assignees. The API name for the custom object and its fields are what are used to create the custom formula in the approval rule.

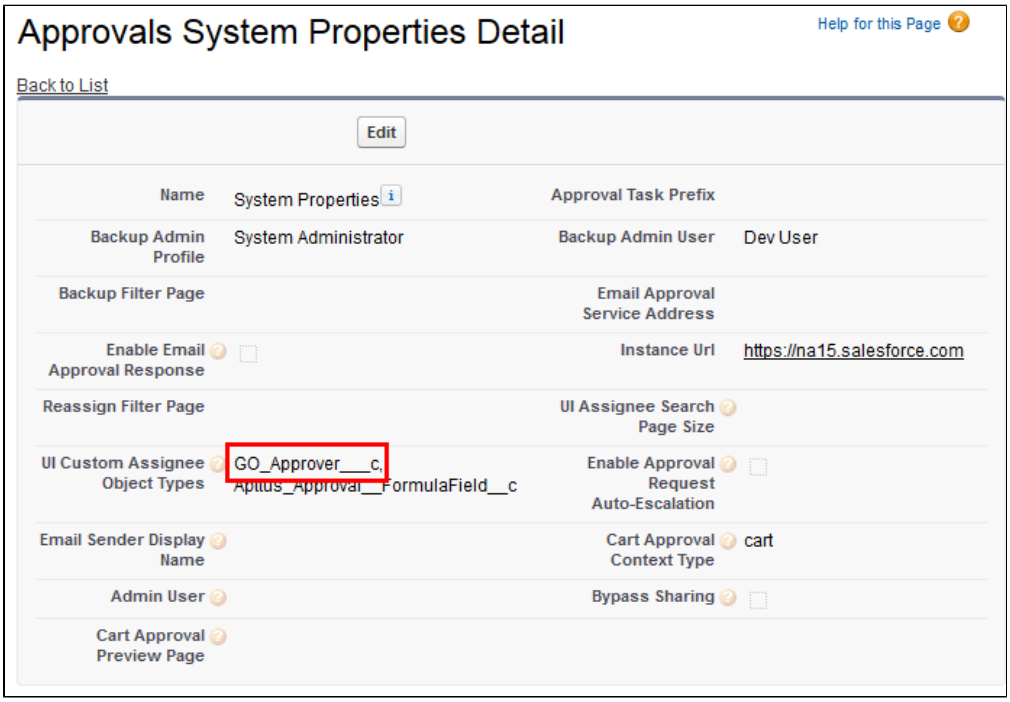


Step 2: Make the custom object available to Intelligent Approvals via a custom setting.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

From **Setup**, go to **Develop > Custom Settings** and click **Manage** for **Approval Systems Properties**. Click **Edit** and for **UI Custom Assignee Object Types** enter the name of the custom objects you want to use with custom assignees.

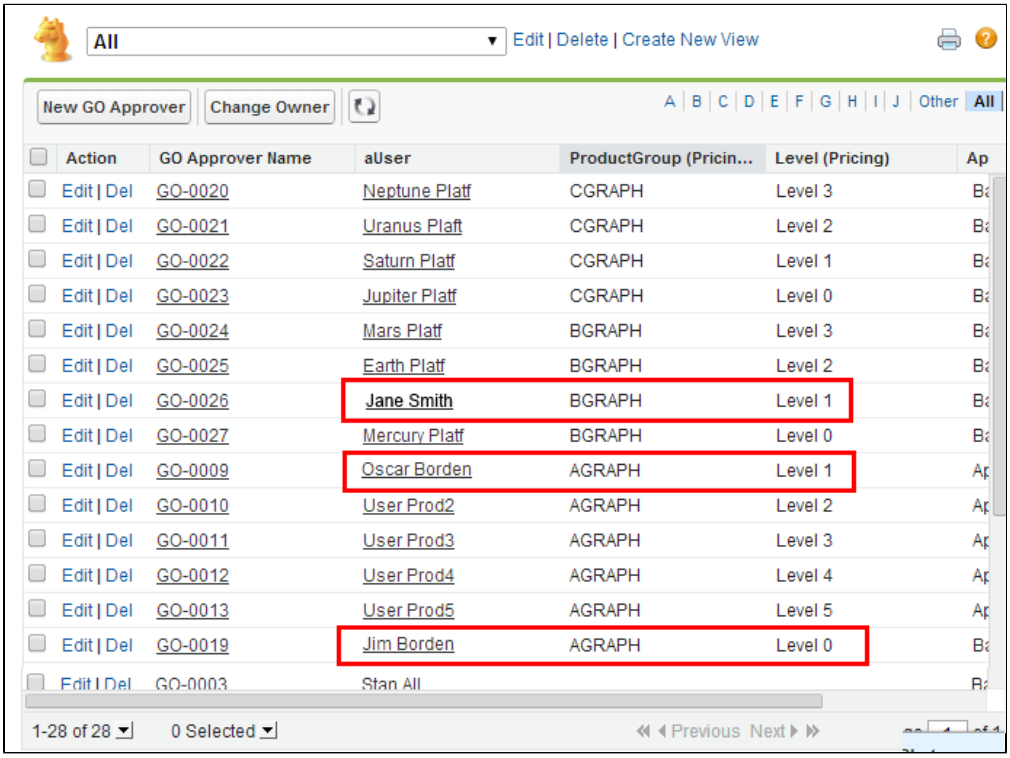
The Approval Systems Property must include the API name of the custom object:



Step 3: Create users for the custom object.

Go to the *GO Approver* tab to display the page and create all the users you want to approve requests. The values you enter in the fields for each user is what is used when you create formulas for selecting assignees.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

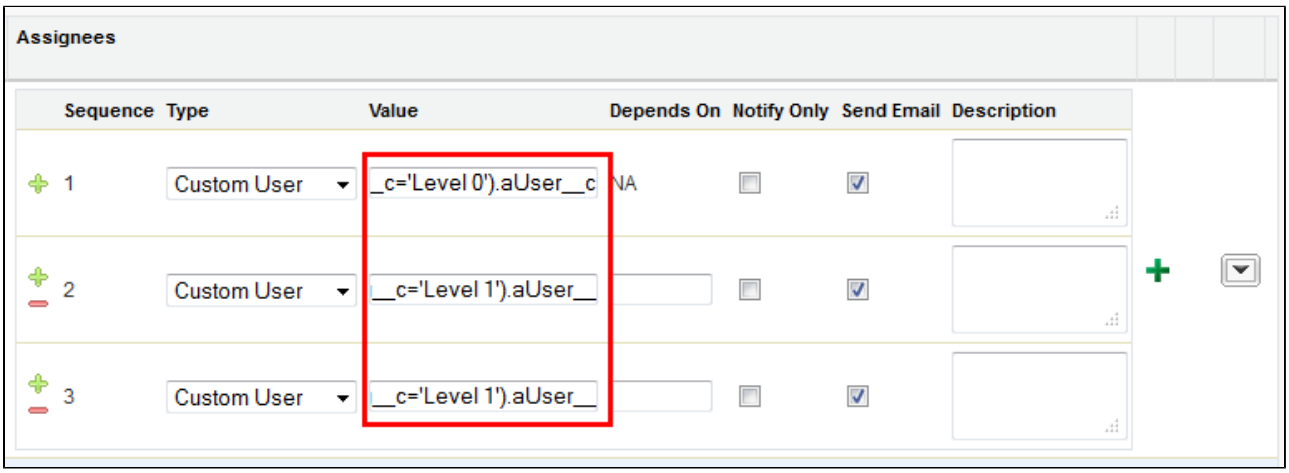


Step 4: Create your approval rules, using formula expressions to select assignees.

Go to an Approval Rule of Type *Condition* and create assignees by selecting *Custom User* and then enter a formula in the *Value* field. For instance the following formulas would route an approval to the following assignees, based on the users you created for the custom object.

GO_Approver__c(ProductGroup_Pricing__c='AGRAPH' AND Level_Pricing__c='Level 0').aUser__c	Jim Borden
GO_Approver__c(ProductGroup_Pricing__c='AGRAPH' AND Level_Pricing__c='Level 1').aUser__c	Oscar Borden
GO_Approver__c(ProductGroup_Pricing__c='BGRAPH' AND Level_Pricing__c='Level 1').aUser__c	Jane Smith

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



Creating Approval Matrices

Approval matrices enable you to dynamically assign an approval request to someone selected from a list of a maximum of six potential approvers. An approval matrix can be selected as an assignee type when creating an approval step.

The potential approvers are assigned an approval level, which is associated with a percentage discount. Those discount values are based on the *Authorized Discount Percents* set up in Global Discount Policies. You must have these policies set up for an approval matrix to route approvals to the correct level.

The Global Discount Policy values set the default discount percentage levels that will typically require approval and also designate who the approver should be for each level. Matrices enable you to have approvals start at any of the policy levels. For instance, if the policy's *Authorized Discount Percent* for *Approval Level 1* is 15% and no approval is required until the discount on certain items reaches 35%, an approval matrix can be created that does not start until the approval level 2.

To create Global Discount Policies

1. Select the **Global Discount Policies** tab or click ? Unknown Attachment and then select **Global Discount Policies**.
2. Click **New** and enter a whole number for the **Authorized Discount Percent**. This represents the percentage discount at which an approval will be routed to the associated approval level.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

3. Enter a description and then select the **Approval Level** for the discount policy entry. This value will be used in the approval matrix to associate a user with the approval level.
4. Click **Save** to return to the Global Discount Policy list - or - click **Save & New** and create another policy entry.

Once you have created the required policies, you can create an Approval Matrix that will make use of the Global Discount Policy levels.

To create an approval matrix

There must be Global Discount Policy levels for each level you want to use in the matrix.

1. Click the **Approval Matrix** tab or click

and then select **Approval Matrix**.
2. Click **New** to display the Approval Matrix Edit page.
3. Enter the required values for the following:

Option	Description
Matrix Owner	This is the Salesforce.com user account associated with the matrix. This means the matrix can also be accessed from the *Custom Links* section on that user's account page. The owner and the user do not need to be the same user account.
User	This is used to find the correct approval matrix, for when an object enters the intelligent approval process. For instance, if an opportunity enters the approval process and an approval step assignee type is an approval matrix
Is Active	Select this option to have the matrix available for inclusion in an approval process. **Note** **Is Valid** is an internal Salesforce.com setting that can be ignored.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Option	Description
Approval Level	This is the level the approval matrix will start at, which corresponds to the same level for global discount policies.
Next Level Approver	This approver is typically the same as *Approver 2*.

4. Select the Approver, Authorized Discount, and Approver Level values for each approver you want to include in the matrix. The Authorized Discount value should match those of the Global Discount Policies.
5. Click **Save** to return to the Approval Matrix list - or - click **Save & New** and create another matrix.

If it is active, the approval matrix can now be selected when configuring approval process steps.

After you create an Approval Matrix record, you can see the following links when you edit the Approval Matrix record:

- Generate Approval Matrix: When you create a new approval matrix for a single user, you can simply click the Generate Approval Matrix link. This creates the matrix for a new user and adjusts any other matrices that have dependencies on the created batch job.
- Generate Approval Matrix for All: Click the Generate Approval Matrix for All if you have changed values in the Global Approver Settings (the threshold percentages) which requires that all matrices be regenerated and use a batch job mechanism as well.
- Set Next Level Approver: Enables you to change the next level approver specified in the matrix. For example, you can change Approver 2 to Approver 5.

Expected Behavior

The suggested way to use these matrices is as follows:

- For a single user, create a new approval matrix record and enter the minimum information such as User, isActive, isValid, (both true) and Approval Level. Click Generate Approvals Matrix to fill in the rest of the values of the matrix automatically.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

- For multiple users, create a new approval matrix record for each user and enter the minimum information such as User, isActive, isValid, (both true) and Approval Level. Click Generate Approvals Matrix to fill in the rest of the values of the matrix automatically. Click Generate Matrix for All to do the same (this runs more jobs and updates to matrices for all users).
- For a bunch of users or whenever global discounts have been adjusted, pick any matrix record and click Generate Approval Matrices for All. Ensure that you specify the first and last matrix records so every single record gets updated.

Adding Related fields to a Criteria

Related fields can be used to add custom formula fields to Intelligent Approval criteria.

Specifically you can use related fields with:

- Approval Process Entry Criteria
- Approval Step Entry Criteria
- Re-Approval Criteria
- Child and Search Filters
- Approval Rules Criteria - Both Dimension and Condition
- Approval Rule Entry Criteria - Approval conditions and Auto Reapproval conditions

When you configure a formula field to be used as a related field, it is automatically available with each of the criterias listed above.

To add business objects to Formula Field picklist

1. From Setup, select **Create > Objects > Formula Field (Approvals)**.
2. From **Custom Fields & Relationships**, click **Business Object**.
3. From **Picklist Values**, click **New**.
4. Enter the API Name for the objects you want to include, such as Apttus_Config2__ProductConfiguration__c and Apttus_Config2__LineItem__c.
5. Click **Save**.

The API names are now added to the picklist values.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

The next time you create or edit a Formula Field (Approvals), based on the values in Step 4, *Product Configuration* and *Line Item* are available from the *Business Object* picklist.

To set up Formula Fields (Approvals)

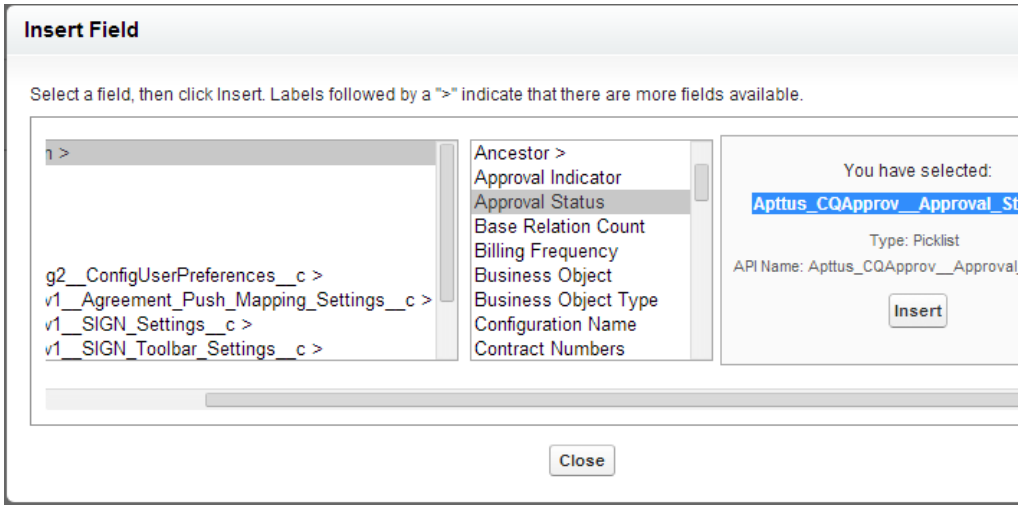
If you want additional Business Object options other than the default values, they must be added to the *Formula Field* (Approvals) business object picklist.

1. Click

and select **Formula Fields (Approvals)**.
2. Click **New** and enter the following:

Option	Description
Field Name	Name displayed in the Field list when setting entry criteria for a process, step f conditions, or re-approval criteria.
Type	Currently this value can only be *Relationship*.
Business Object	This is the business context object that relates to the context object of the appı process or approval step. The field will only be available in a process or step, v value matches that of the process or step. The available default values are *Sta Agreement*, *Agreement Line Item*, and *Opportunity*.
Formula	Contains fields from the business object, such asApttus_Config2__PriceListId_ Price List field on the Configuration object. It can also be used for fields that are associated with the business object via a field. For this you must use__rto indicate there is a relationship between the fie the object. For instance,Apttus_Config2__ConfigurationId__r.Apttus_QPConfig _Proposald__r.Payment_Term__cenables the Payment Term field to be used Product Configuration is the business object. You can use Salesforce Insert Field dialog to build your formula and then copy paste it into the Formula field. You can access the formula by creating a new fi appropriate business object. In this example the *Approval Status* for the *Produ Configuration* object.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Option	Description
	
Description	Enter information to state the purpose of the formula field is.

3. Click **Save**.

The new field is added to the Formula Field (Approvals) list and can be included in an approval process.

When you go to add criteria in approvals, the Field list will display the related field, with the format *Related(Field Name): Formula Field Label*. For example *Related(Price List): Price List*.

Child Object Filters for Step Entry Criteria

When you create step entry criteria for your approval process, you can now use custom child object fields with the expressions. Previously you were limited to the fields of the main context object.

When creating an approval step you can choose to use a child filter. Here you can select from a list of search filters that are related to child objects. This enables you to then select any of that child object's fields. That field value can be compared with another child object field, a static value, or a custom expression.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

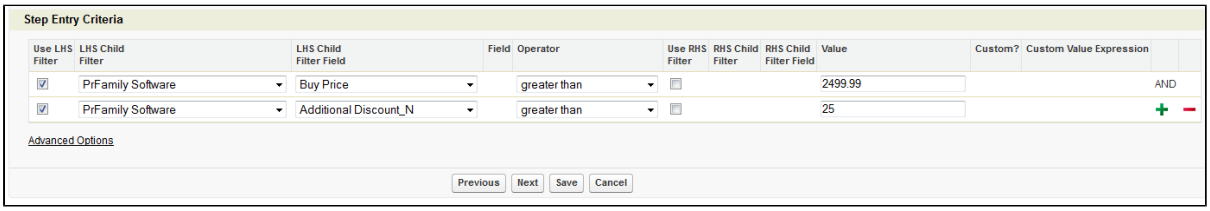
As with any expression, you must ensure that the operators you choose are applicable to the data type of the fields you are comparing. For instance, when using a percentage field you can use operators such as *less than* and *greater than*, but not *contains* or *starts with*. As well the value you are comparing against would need to be another percentage field or a static value such as the number *75*.

Configuring the Search Filters

You must have created any custom child objects you want to use the filters.

1. Go to **Build > Installed Packages > Apttus Approvals Management** and under **Package Components** select **Business Object** for the **Search Filter** parent object.
2. Under **Picklist Values** click **New** and enter the API name for the child object you want to use with child filters. Repeat the step for each child object.
3. Go to the **Search Filters** tab or click

and then **Search Filters**.
4. Click **New**, select the **Business Object** you want to use the filters with and click **Next**. This can include child objects of objects associated with an approval process.
5. Enter a **Filter Name** and **Description**.



6. Enter the required **Filter Criteria**, which will be used in the step entry criteria for the approval process. It is this expression that forms the basis of the child filter expression in the step entry criteria, for determining if an approval step is used.
7. Click **Save**.

The child object will be available when you select *Use LHS Filter* or *USE RHS Filter*, when creating an approval process for its parent object.

Walkthrough

Filters must have been created already via the Search Filters tab.

1. For an approval process, click **New Approval Step**.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

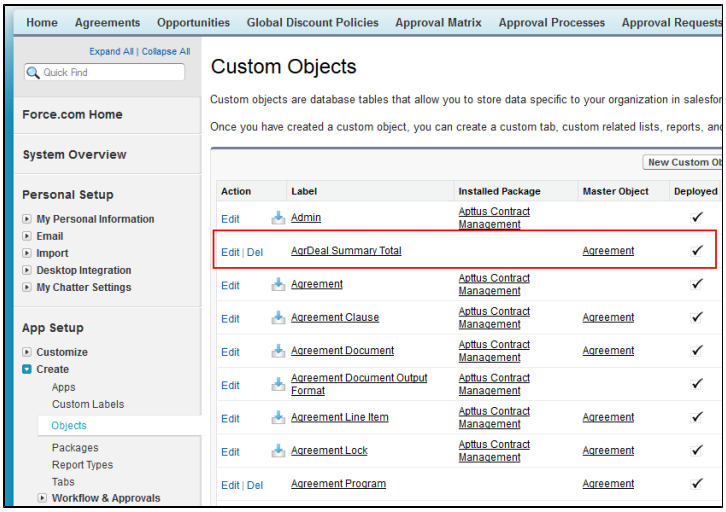
2. Enter a name for the step and click **Next**.
3. Click **Use LHS Filter** and the **LHS Child Filter** and **LHS Child Filter Field** drop-down lists are displayed. All search filters created for the child object of the approval process are available from the **LHS Child Filter** list.
4. Select the child object from the **LHS Child Filter** and select one of its fields from **LHS Child Filter Field**.
5. Select a valid operator for the field type and then select another filter or fixed value to compare it to.
6. Add further filters if necessary and then click **Next** to finish creating the step.

When an object record submitted for approval matches the step entry criteria, the approval process will be routed to that step's assignee.

Example: Child Object Filters

Using Agreements as an example, previously you could only use Agreement fields, such as Total Agreement Value, Category, and Status for entry criteria. With this feature you could create a new custom object and associate it with the Agreement object, enabling it to be used for step entry criteria.

Step 1: Create the custom child object for the Agreement object. In this instance that will be *AgrDeal Summary Total*. This will include fields used for indicating additional discounts for products included in an agreement.



Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Step 2: After the new custom object has been created for Agreements, the *AgrDeal Summary Total* related list needs to be added to the *Agreements* page layout.

Step 3: Add *AgrDeal Summary Total* to the picklist for the Search Filter Object. This is required to have it available when you set up a Search Filter in the next step. You got to *Build > Installed Packages > Apttus Approvals Management > View Components* and select *Business Object* (Search Filter).

BackupUserSearch		Visualforce Page
BackupUserSearchController		Apex Class
BackupUserSearchTest		Apex Class
Business Object	Approval Process Instance	Custom Field
Business Object	Search Filter	Custom Field
Business Object	Approval Rule Dimension	Custom Field
Business Object	Approval Rule	Custom Field
Business Object Link	Approval Process Instance	Custom Field
Business Object Type	Approval Process Instance	Custom Field

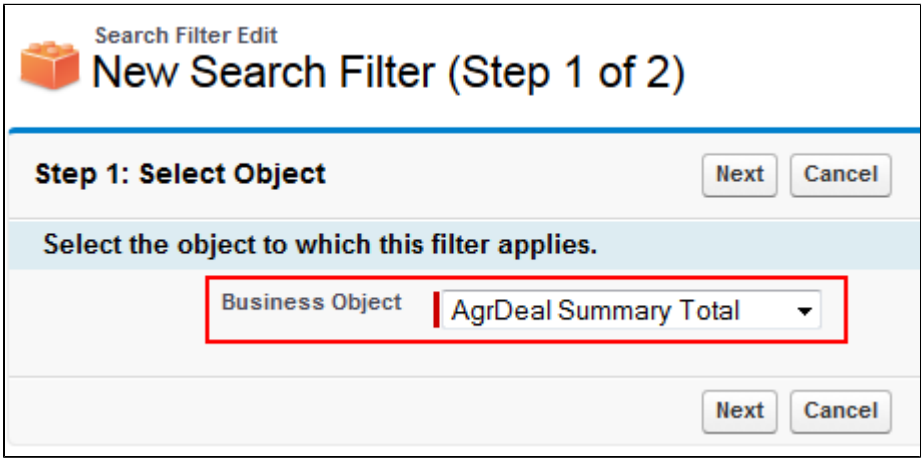
The *AgrDeal Summary Total* API name needs to be entered into the picklist.

Picklist Values

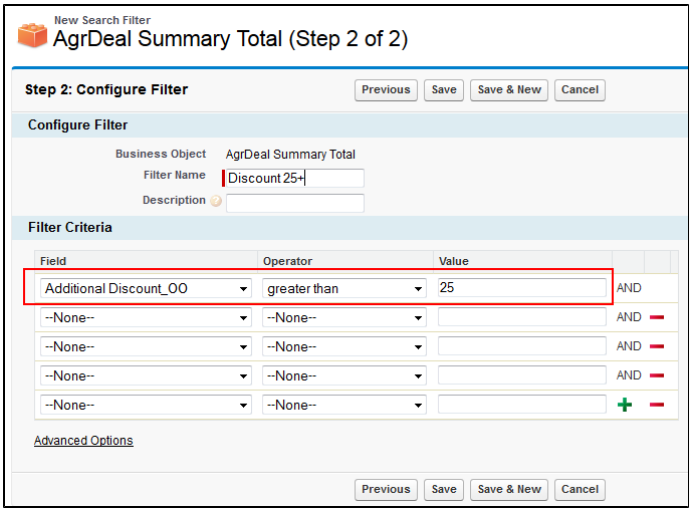
Action	Values
Edit | Del	Opportunity
Edit | Del	OpportunityLineItem
Edit | Del	Apttus__APTS_Agreement__c
Edit | Del	Apttus__AgreementLineItem__c
Edit | Del	Apttus__Agreement_Term_Exception__c
Edit | Del	AgrDeal_Summary_Total__c

Step 4: Now that AgrDeal Summary Total had been added to the picklist values, a search filter can be created that references it. This is then referenced in the approval step entry criteria. Click ? Unknown Attachment and then *Search Filters*, to begin creating the new filter called *Discount 25+*.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

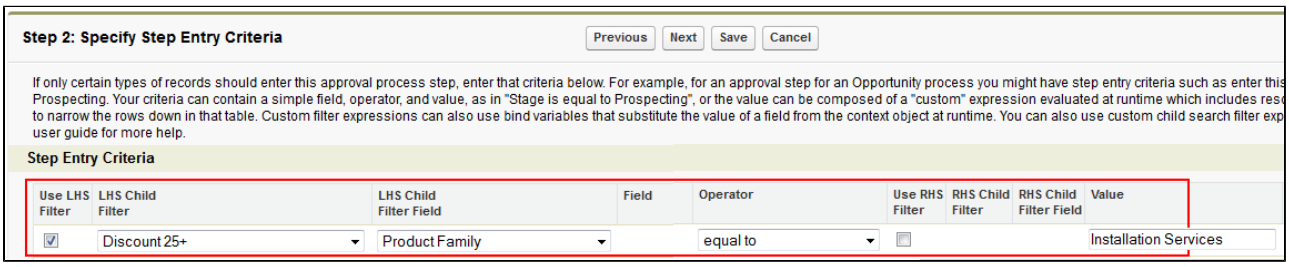


The expression you create for the search filter will be used to build the step entry criteria expression. Then when the *Additional Discount* value for an *AgrDeal Summary Total* record is greater than *25%*, the step entry criteria expression will be checked.



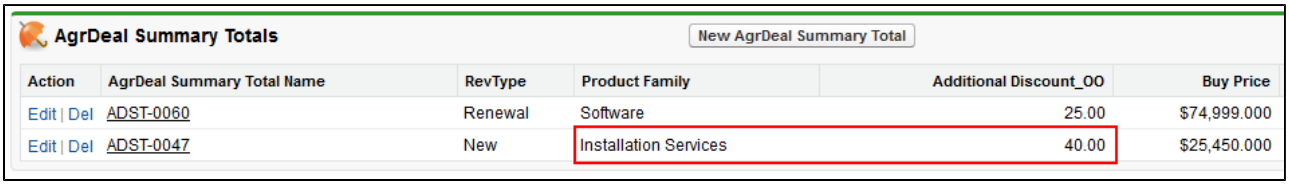
Step 5: Now an approval process step needs to be created which references that search filter. Go to the approval process for an Agreement and create a new step. In *Step 2*, click *Use LHS Filter* and from the *LHS Child Filter* list, select *Discount 25+*. This means only agreement records with an *AgrDeal Summary Total* record that has an *Additional Discount* greater than 25% may enter that step.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



Because this step is to route approvals to users who are responsible for the Acme Data product, as well as having a discount of greater than 25%, the AgrDeal Summary Total record's *Product Family* field, must have a value of *Acme Data*. Select an assignee for the step and then save and activate the approval process.

Step 6: Now that the approval process and approval step have been activated, submit an agreement for approval that evaluates as true when compared with the step entry criteria. Here *ADST-0047* has a *40%* discount for the *Installation Services* product family.



This meets the entry criteria as configured above and an approval request email is sent to the assignee for this step.

To configure the Cart Approvals page and Apex class

1. Go to **Setup > Develop > Apex Classes** and click **New**.
2. Copy and paste the code below and ensure the name of the new class is *CartViewController* .

```
/**
 *    Apttus CPQ Approval
 *    CartViewController
 *
 *  @2012-2013 Apttus Inc. All rights reserved.
 */
public with sharing class CartViewController  {
    // context id
    private ID contextId = null;
```


Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
    // approval type
    private String approvalType = null;
    /**
     * Class Constructor
     * @param stdController the standard controller
     */
    public CartViewController(ApexPages.StandardController
stdController) {
        // get context id
        contextId = stdController.getId();

        // get default approval context type
        //approvalType = SystemUtil.getDefaultApprovalCtxType();
        approvalType = 'cart';
    }
    /**
     * Gets context object Id
     */
    public ID getCtxObjectId() {
        return contextId;
    }
    /**
     * Gets cart approval context type
     */
    public String getCtxApprovalType() {
        return approvalType;
    }
}
```

3. Save the class and then go to **Pages** and click **New**.
4. Copy and paste the following code into the Visualforce Markup window

```
<apex:page standardController="Apttus_Proposal__Proposal__c"
    extensions="CartViewController">
    <apex:form >
        <apex:pageMessages id="errorPage" />

        <apex:outputPanel id="idApprovalContextPanel">
            <Apttus_CQApprov:ApprovalContextView contexSOId="{!
ctxObjectId}"
                contextApprovalType="{!ctxApprovalType}"/>
        </apex:outputPanel>
    </apex:form>
</apex:page>
```


Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

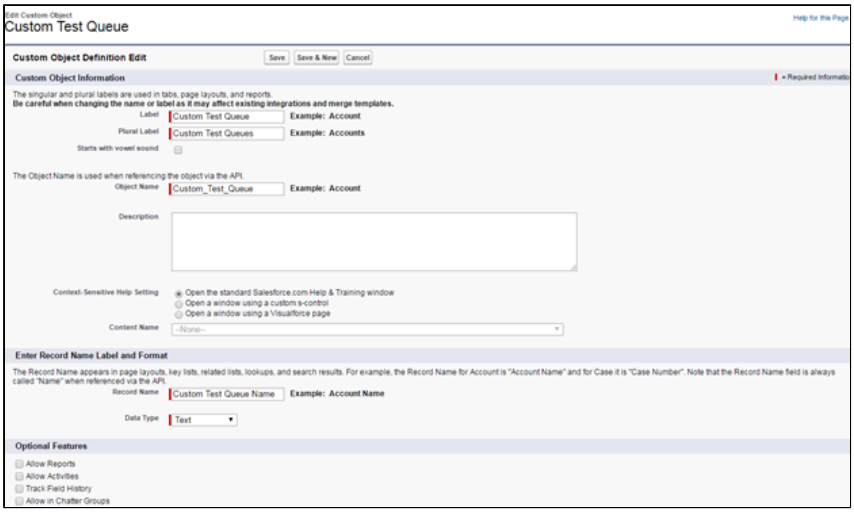
5. Ensure that the **Name** is *CartView* and click **Save**.
6. Go to **Create > Objects** and click **Quote/Proposal**.
7. Scroll to **Page Layouts** and click **Edit** for the page layout you want to add Cart Approvals to.
8. From the **Visualforce Pages** window, drag and drop **CartView** onto the page.
9. Display the VisualForce Page Properties for CartView and select **Show scrollbars**.
10. Save the changes to the page.

The CartView page acts like a related list for displaying the Cart Approvals, so the next time you go to a Quote/Proposal record that has been submitted for approval from the Cart, the approval steps and associated approvers will be displayed.

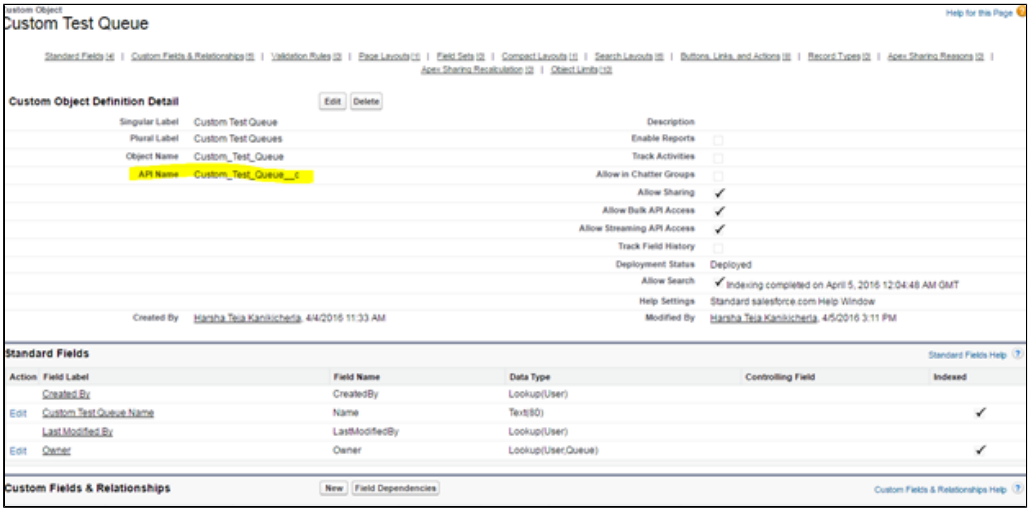
You must finish configuring the other objects before the feature will work as expected.

To create Custom Queues:

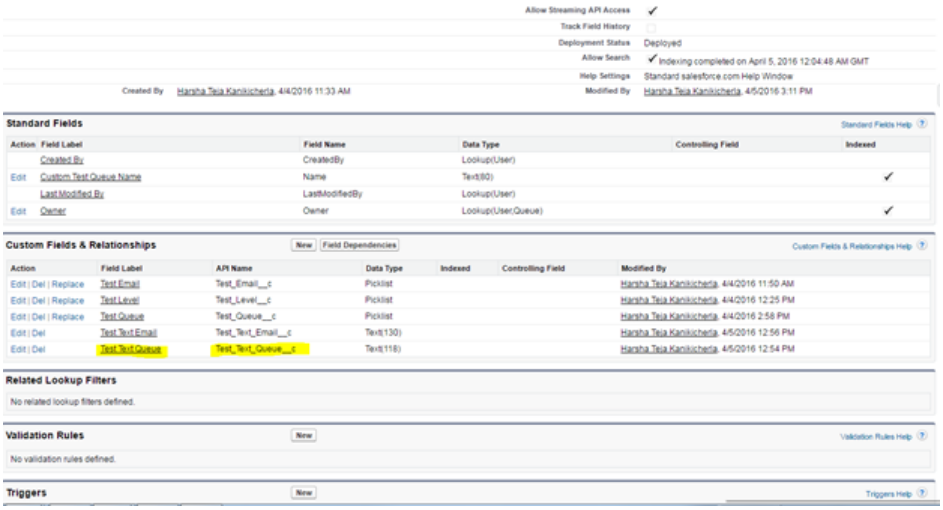
1. Create a custom object.



Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

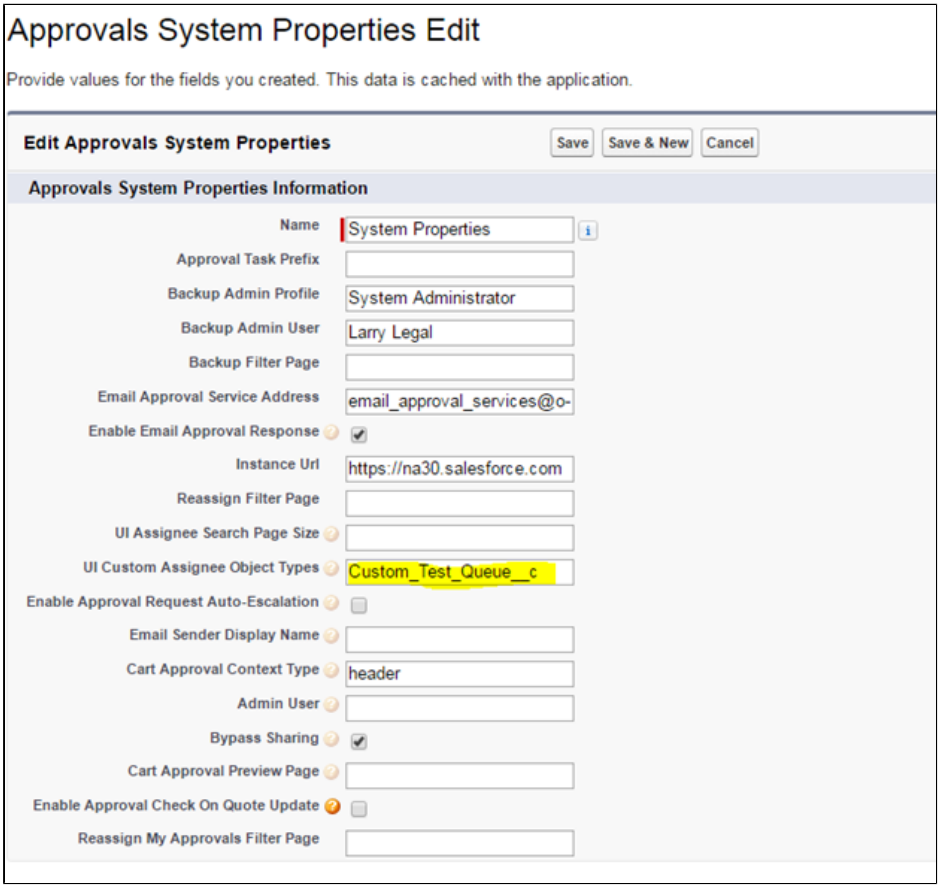


2. Create Custom fields (text fields) in the object to have the queue label (which is used to point out the queue) and other fields to have any other possible details about the queue (If required):
   In the use case a field “Test Level” is created and a value “Level 1” is specified.



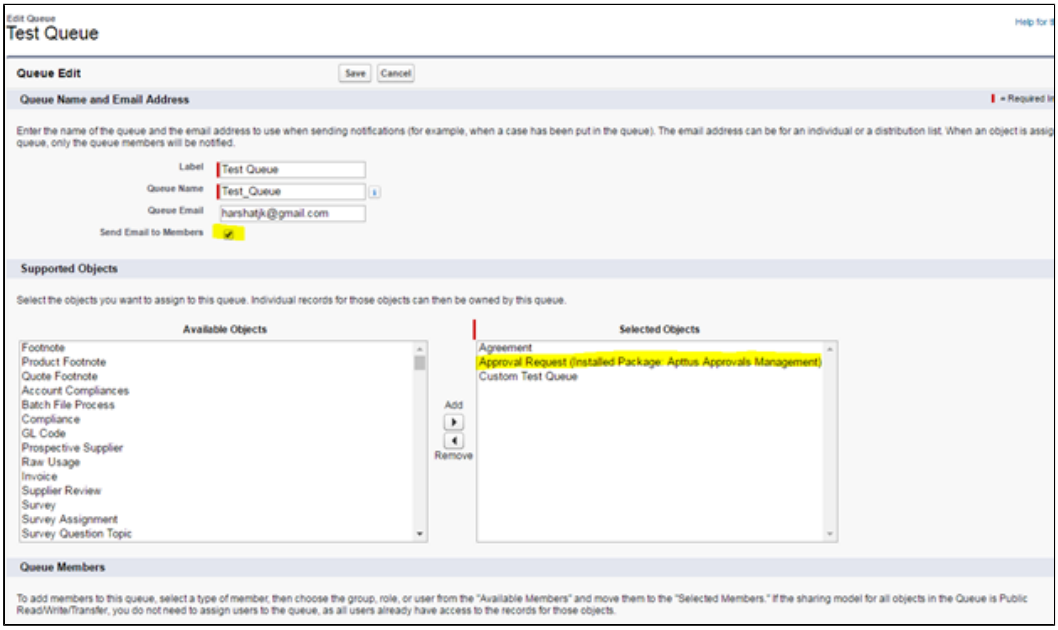
3. Make the custom object available to Intelligent Approvals via a custom setting.
4. From Setup, go to Develop > Custom Settings and click Manage for Approval Systems Properties. Click Edit and for UI Custom Assignee Object Types enter the name of the custom objects you want to use with custom assignees.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

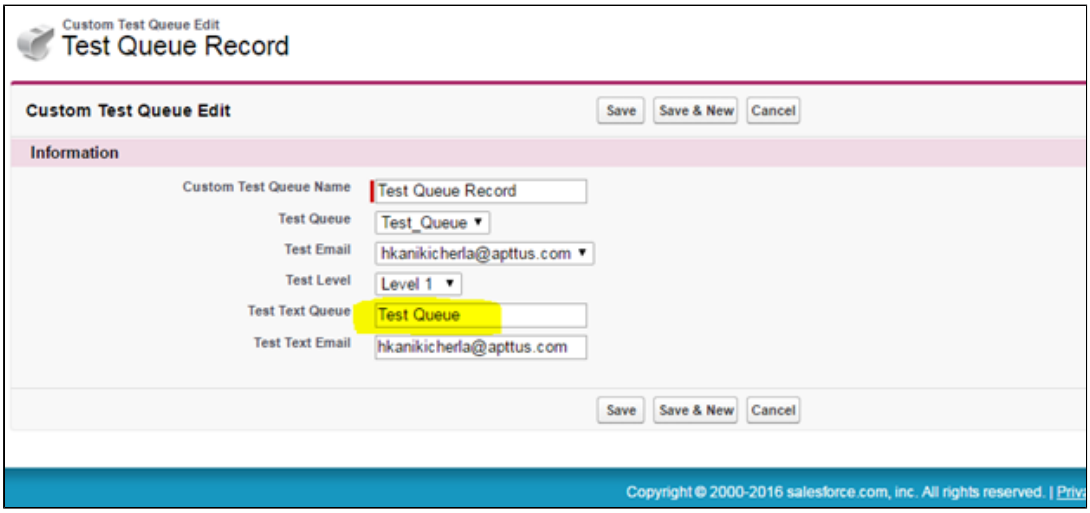


5. The Approval Systems Property must include the API name of the custom object.
6. Create Test Queue.
   The highlighted ones are the necessary configurations.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

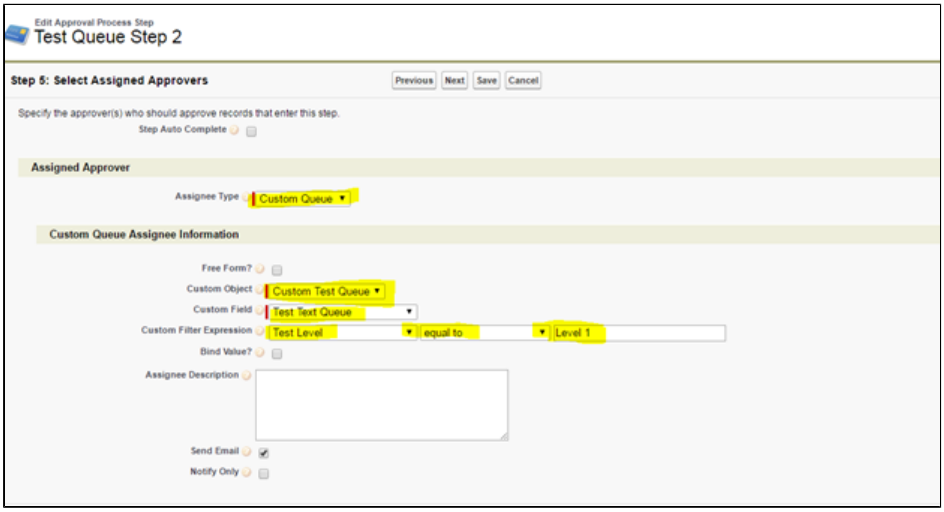


7. Send Email to Member's must always be selected in order to send mails to the people in the queue.
8. Approval Request (Installed Package Apttus Approvals Management) > Object must be selected in order for the approvals to be redirected to the queue.
9. Create records for the custom object:
   Populate the custom text field with Queue label.



10. Create Approval Process and steps.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



11. During the Approval Step, while assigning the approvers select the object created as “Custom object”, text field where queue label is defined as Custom Field and Custom filter expression has the formula which picks up the queue. You get the formula below after configuring:

```
Custom_Test_Queue__c(Test_Level__c='Level 1').Test_Text_Queue__c
```


Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Appendices

- Glossary of Intelligent Approval Terms
- Approval Email Notification Templates
- Configuring a Custom Approval Action for Non-Salesforce or Apttus profiles
- Approval System Properties
- Supported SOQL Limits
- FAQs

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Glossary of Intelligent Approval Terms

Approval Matrix	Approval matrix determines the assignees based on given criteria. For example, approver authority may change based on the discount being offered on a sales contract. So different levels of approvers can be assigned based on approval authority on a given item.
Approval Process	The process definition that describes approval processes within your organizations. You can define approval processes for Opportunity, Agreement or Term Exceptions objects. You have to define entry criteria, initial submission actions, step groups (steps, step filters) and final actions within an approval process.
Approval Rule (Rule)	Approval rule uniquely identifies an approver based on combinations of various logical conditions per business process and policies. For example, an agreement needs to be sent for approval to CFO if contract value is above $1M OR (geography is emerging markets AND contract value is above $250K).
Approval Summary Page	When an approver clicks on the link of an approval notification email, he/she is directed to an approval summary page where he/she can approve or reject that item. This page contains important business information for the person to make decision about approval. This page may be configured per your business requirements.
Assignee Type	The system supports the following: Approval Matrix, Auto Approval, Custom Queue, Custom Role, Custom Rule, Related User, Custom User, Queue, Role, Rule, User
Assignment Email Template	Email template used when an item is reassigned to another user. When an item is assigned to a user for approval, he/she always has an option to reassign the item to another user.
Auto Approval	

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><td></td><td>This Assignee Type can be selected for Approval Rule Entry Criteria when you want the item in an approval process to be automatically progressed. For this to work, in an Approval Process step which references that Approval Rule using Auto Approval, the Assigned Approver > Assignee Type must be Subprocess .</td></tr>
<tr><td>Auto Complete</td><td>Selecting Step Auto Complete checkbox denotes that this step may be auto completed without taking any manual approving actions. This functionality is most commonly used when submitter is also an approver and does not need to manually approve this agreement since its already reviewed it before submission for further approvals.For auto complete to work as expected, ensure that the step you set Set Auto Complete for is independent from another step.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Backup Approvers</td><td>When a user is out of office, all approvals can be automatically assigned to backup approvers. The user may choose to reassign in process approval requests to backup approvers as well.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cancellation Email Template</td><td>Email template used to notify that an approval process has been cancelled.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Consolidated Approvals</td><td>If some approval process results in a situation where the same user is required to approve the same object record/line items, these multiple approvals can be consolidated in one approval. In other words, the approver has to approve or reject it only once to approve or reject all of their approval requests for a single approval process.
Consider the following approval process with three steps:
<table>
<tr><th>Approval Step</th><th>Approver 1</th><th>Approver 2</th><th>Approver 3</th></tr>
<tr><td>Sales Level 1</td><td>John</td><td>Mary</td><td>Dave</td></tr>
<tr><td>Sales Level 2 (Dependent on 1)</td><td>James</td><td>John</td><td>Suze</td></tr>
<tr><td>Executive Sign-off</td><td>Art</td><td>-</td><td>-</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
</table>

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

	When the object record is submitted for approval and the approvers are selected based on the criteria in the approval process, the approver John is included in two steps, including one dependent step. Once Mary and Dave have approved their requests for the *Sales Level 1* step, John's approval request in the *Sales Level 2* step will be *Assigned* to him, while his approval request in *Sales Level 1* is on *Hold*. This enables him to approve both of his approval requests via a single action.
Consolidate Notifications	If some approval process results in a situation where same user is required to be notified for the same item, these multiple notifications can be consolidated in one notification. In other words, the approver has to approve or reject it only once to approve or reject all consolidated approvals.
Custom Assignee	Custom assignee option allows you to configure custom code to be called to evaluate an assignee. If none of the other options are meeting the assignment requirements, custom code can be developed to evaluate the approver based on given criteria.
Custom Queue	This assignee type points to a field which contains a queue name in any custom object with a filter to narrow it down to a single row. i.There are two ways to specify a filter: 1. Example 1: Select the row where the ‘Region__c’ field has a value of ‘Asia’. 2. Example 2: Select the row where the ‘Region__c’ field has a value which equals the value of ‘MyRegion__c’ field in the associated business object
Custom Role	This points to field which contains a role name in any custom object with filter to narrow down to a single row. For example: Custom_Object__c. Approver_RoleName__c
Custom User	This points to a user lookup reference field in any custom object with filter to narrow down to a single row. The custom object may have filter criteria enclosed in parenthesis like the Region filter in this example: Custom_Object__c (Region__c = ‘**Asia**’)**.**Approver_UserId__c
Depends On	This field defines the dependency of a step on other steps. For example, if a ‘Level 3’ step depends on Level 1 and Level 2, Level 3 approver will receive the item only after getting approved by Level 1 and Level 2 approvers. These

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

	dependencies automatically define these approval processes to be ‘sequential approval processes’. The absence of dependencies may mean that the approval processes are parallel approval processes.
Dimensions	Dimension allow you to map fields from a business object such as Opportunity, Agreement Term Exception etc and may be used in dimension-based selection.
Email Approval Response	The email approval response feature gives users the ability to approve or reject email approval requests by replying to the email. The first line of the email body may contain one of the following words: • approve • approved • yes • reject • rejected • no Periods and exclamation marks are also accepted at the end of the word. You can also optionally add comments in the second line of the email body. Users can still click a link in the email to access the approval page as well. This feature is especially useful for organizations with users who receive approval requests on mobile devices.
Entry Criteria	You can define certain logical conditions as part of entry criteria for an approval process. If these conditions evaluate true, the approval process is evaluated. This criteria allows you to make sure that all agreements (or opportunities) do not process through given approval process.
Field Update (Constant)	If you select ‘Field Update (Constant)’ as Initial Submission Action Type or Final Approval Action in an approval process, the system would update the given field with a constant value. For example, setting the field to fixed status type. For example, changing the Agreement Status field to ‘Pending Approval’.
Field Update (Value)	

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

	If you select ‘Field Update (Value)’ as Initial Submission Action Type or Final Approval Action in an approval process, the system would update the given field with a value, given by the field. For example, setting the approval submitter to current user ID (CurrUserId).
Final Approval Action	The action which need which will be performed on the record whenever the record is approved in final stage.
Initial Submission Action	The action which needs which will be performed on the record whenever the record is submitted for approval.
Notify Only	Selecting Step Notify Only checkbox designates this step as a notification only process step. Only notifications will be sent for information purpose only and no approvals will be sought as part of this step.
Notify Only Email Template	Email template used when a user has to be just notified as part of the process. No approval is requested as part of this email template.
Parallel Approval Process	This occurs when there are multiple approval steps in the same approval process and no step dependencies have been created.
Queue	You can assign the agreement to a queue (a collection of users) instead of a particular user, e.g. you can create a queue CXO in which to include CEO, CFO and COO. Assign the final approval to this queue, allowing any one of these members to approve the agreement.
Reassignment Email Template	Email template used when an item is reassigned to another user. Either specifically delegating to another user or automatically reassigned to a backup approver if the originally assigned user is out of the office.
Reassign	When an item is assigned to a user for approval, he/she always has an option to reassign the item to another user.
Related User	

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

	This points to a user lookup reference field in the associated business object (i. e. Agreement or Opportunity). For example: Approver_UserId__c
Role	You can assign an agreement to a group of users who has a particular role. Any user from that group can approve the agreement at that level. For example, an agreement can be approved by any user who has role of ‘Finance Approvers’.
Sequential Approval Process	An approval process is a sequential approval process when multiple steps are involved in a given approval process and they have to be processed in defined sequence. This is dictated by ‘Depends On’ field, i.e. presence of step names in ‘Depends On’ makes given process sequential approval process. And absence of the step names in ‘Depends On’ field signifies that as a parallel approval process.
Sequence Number	Indicates the order in which approval actions are run.
Step	A step is a business action of approval which will be performed by a user to approve or reject the record.
Step Assignee Type	The type of assignee to which the record will be assigned for approval.
Step Notify Only	The check box will be used if the user want to notify the step assignee about the approval process.
Step Filter	After a step is created and saved, step filters need to be created to define the filter criteria for given approval process.
Related User	A user lookup field in the context object (i.e. Agreement) or in its relationship path. This is useful when the approver data is available on the record.
Transfer In-Flight	

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

	If Transfer in-flight checkbox is checked, all in-process approval requests will be automatically transferred to backup approvers on effective date. This is useful if user prefers to hand over current approval activities to backup approver. If this is left unchecked, in-process approvals will not be transferred to backup approvers and main approver is expected to respond after coming back to office.
User	This assignee type refers to a named user of the system. Use this assignee type when you want to dynamically assign an approval request to a user.

Approval Email Notification Templates

The following approval email notification templates are available as a part of the standard Approvals Management package. These are generic email notification templates that can be used for approvals on any standard or custom objects without any change. However, these notification templates can be customized as needed. Clone these templates if you want to customize your own template.

Sample	Component Type	Description
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Assignment)	Visualforce Email Template	This template is used to notify users they must decide on an approval request.
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Reassignment)	Visualforce Email Template	This template is used to notify users that an approval request task initially assigned to them has been reassigned to someone else.
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Escalation)	Visualforce Email Template	This template is used for auto-escalation. Configuration is required to activate this feature.
		This template is used to notify users that an approval request has been cancelled.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Sample	Component Type	Description
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Cancellation)	Visualforce Email Template	
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Notify Only)	Visualforce Email Template	This template is used to notify users only.
Apttus My Approvals Notification (Reminder)	Visualforce Email Template	This template is used to send reminder emails.

APTS_ApprovalConfig

The following example shows *APTS_ApprovalConfig*, with template overrides for each template type and for some of the objects which can be associated with Intelligent Approvals: Opportunities, Agreements Term Exceptions, Quote/Proposals, and Quote Line Items.

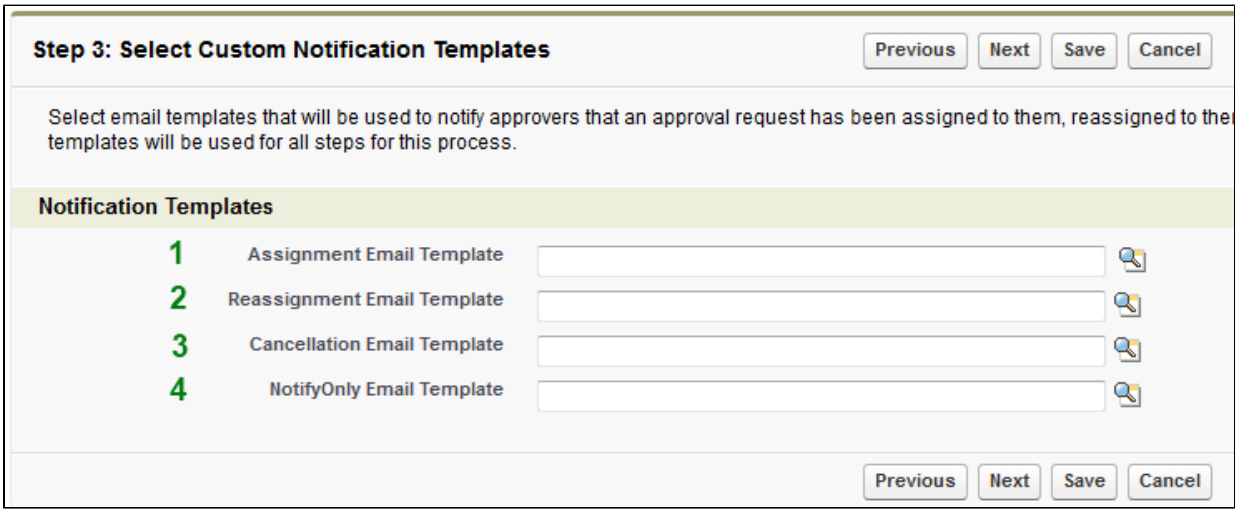
The numbers indicate how the templates in *APTS_ApprovalConfig* map to the fields used to select the templates when creating your intelligent approval process.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Name	APTS_ApprovalConfig
Value	XML

Code

```
<ApprovalConfig>

<OpportunitySpec>
<EmailTemplates>
1 <AssignmentEmailTemplate>C1d_OpptyApprovalAssignEmail</AssignmentEmailTemplate>
2 <ReassignmentEmailTemplate>C1d_OpptyApprovalReassignEmail</ReassignmentEmailTemplate>
4 <NotifyOnlyEmailTemplate>C1d_OpptyApprovalNotifyOnlyEmail</NotifyOnlyEmailTemplate>
3 <CancellationEmailTemplate>C1d_OpptyApprovalCancelEmail</CancellationEmailTemplate>
</EmailTemplates>
</OpportunitySpec>

<AgreementSpec>
<EmailTemplates>
<AssignmentEmailTemplate>C1d_AgrAppr_NotificationAssignmentEmail</AssignmentEmailTemplate>
<ReassignmentEmailTemplate>C1d_AgrApprReassignEmail</ReassignmentEmailTemplate>
<NotifyOnlyEmailTemplate>C1d_AgrApprNotifyOnlyEmail</NotifyOnlyEmailTemplate>
<CancellationEmailTemplate>C1d_AgrApprCancelEmail</CancellationEmailTemplate>
</EmailTemplates>
</AgreementSpec>

<QuoteSpec>
<EmailTemplates>
<AssignmentEmailTemplate>C1d_QuoteApprovalAssignEmail</AssignmentEmailTemplate>
<ReassignmentEmailTemplate>C1d_QuoteApprovalReassignEmail</ReassignmentEmailTemplate>
<NotifyOnlyEmailTemplate>C1d_QuoteApprovalNotifyOnlyEmail</NotifyOnlyEmailTemplate>
<CancellationEmailTemplate>C1d_QuoteApprovalCancelEmail</CancellationEmailTemplate>
</EmailTemplates>
</QuoteSpec>

<QuoteLineItemSpec>
<EmailTemplates>
<AssignmentEmailTemplate>C1d_QuoteLItemApprovalAssignEmail</AssignmentEmailTemplate>
<ReassignmentEmailTemplate>C1d_QuoteLItemApprovalReassignEmail</ReassignmentEmailTemplate>
<NotifyOnlyEmailTemplate>C1d_QuoteLItemApprovalNotifyOnlyEmail</NotifyOnlyEmailTemplate>
<CancellationEmailTemplate>C1d_QuoteLItemApprovalCancelEmail</CancellationEmailTemplate>
</EmailTemplates>
</QuoteLineItemSpec>

</ApprovalConfig>
```



Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Approvals Custom Config Settings

These custom settings are used to set the default pages, templates, and backup admin user for the system.

The same settings are used for each business context object (Agreement, Opportunity, Quote, etc...) that you are using with Intelligent Approvals.

Setting	Description
Backup Admin User	As well as the global backup admin user that is designated via the Approvals System Properties, you can also use this setting to designate a backup admin user for each context object. If you do not select a user here, the global backup admin user will be used. For more details, see Setting up the Backup Administrator.
Approval Summary Page	This is the default summary page for the context object and overrides the global default page. Approval summary pages contain the information and action items that enable a record to be reviewed and approval actions to be taken. The default summary pages provide sufficient information for agreements, opportunities, quote/proposals, proposal line items, and term exceptions; however, you can create a custom page and reference it here.
Assignment Email Template	This is the default email template for assigning approval requests for the context object and overrides the global default email template for assignments. For more details on templates, see Setting up Email Templates and Alerts.
Reassignment Email Template	The same as above, but for reassigned approval requests.
Escalation Email Template	The same as above, but for escalation notifications.
	The same as above, but for notification only emails.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Setting	Description
NotifyOnly Email Template	
Cancellation Email Template	The same as above, but for emails indicating an approval request has been cancelled.
Approval Status Field	This is for using custom objects with Intelligent approvals where the *Approval Status* field needs to be displayed on the custom object records. It is not used for standard supported objects.
Use Files Instead of Notes & Attachments	Selecting this setting, if you want the approvals engine to query all attachments from Files instead of Notes & Attachments.

Limitations and Exceptions

Supported Mobile Browsers for Approvals

Platform	Supported Actions
SF 1	IWA is supported on all device browsers certified by SFDC and only on CPQ approvals pages on SF1. Support for Approvals and MyApprovals pages for CPQ only on SF1. Approve or Reject with comments, and Take ownership actions only.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Windows 10 browser support

Pages	Chrome	Firefox	IE	Edge
IWA Admin like create approval process	Supported (v 49.0)	Supported (v 45.0)	Supported	Supported (v 25.0)
ngFlow	Supported (v 49.0)	Supported (v 45.0)	Supported	Supported (v 25.0)

For supported Salesforce browser editions, refer Supported Browser Versions.

Handling a large number of Approval Rules

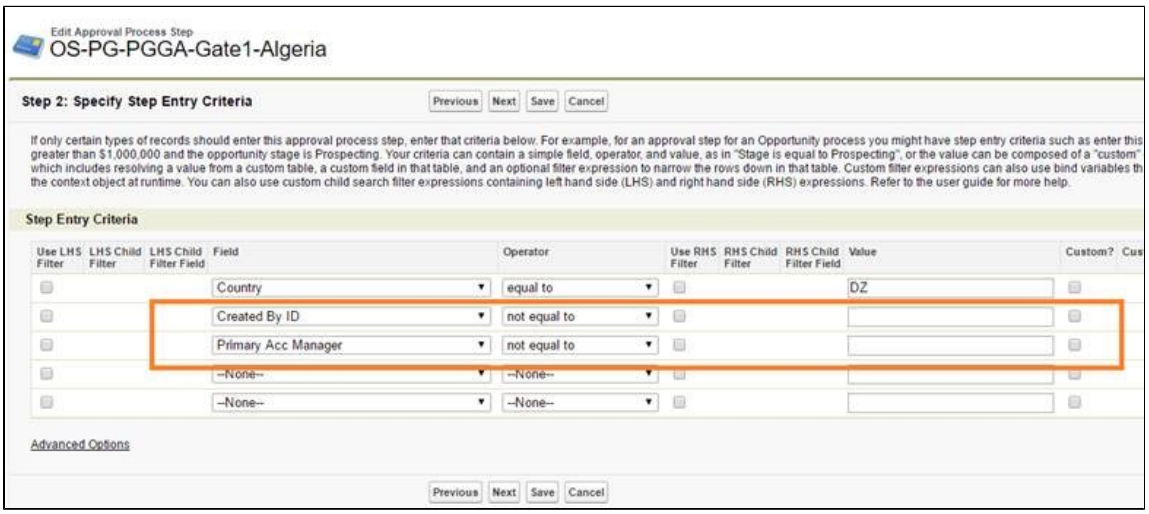
If an org has a large number of approval rule item records, and the approver is set as a formula field, the system cannot recognize the related user ID due to a large number of approval rules and Approval rule entries defined on the opportunity screening object. The approver cannot preview or submit the records.

Workaround

Define the related users in the rule entry or approval process step entry. for example. *Created By_ID not NULL*. The system is able to pick these values up and resolve it to the required assignee.

Update both related user values in the 1st step of the approval process as described below. If there are any more related users they should be defined on an approval process step (or in an approval rule main entry criteria). preview and submit the records.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



Lightning and SF1 limitations

- Lightning Experience Enable_Custom Buttons are not displaying on Agreement Summary Page.
- Lightning Experience Enable_Activate and Deactivate button is not working for Backup-Delegate Approver.
- Lightning Experience Enable_Blank Screen Display error when you click "Save" after Agreement Creation.
- Approval Rule name modification does not reflect on UI when Lightning Experience Feature is enabled.
- Lightning Experience Enable_Manage Entry Button does not display after Approval Rule Creation.
- SF Feature: Lightning: Cancel button does not work in the Approvals related list.
- Lightning Experience Enable_Custom Buttons does not display on Proposal Summary Page.

Supported SOQL Limits

When your quote for which you trigger header and line item approvals contains a certain number of line items, you may face an SOQL limit error.

Suppose a quote comprises three level of approvals, and comprises 20 line items to be approved. an SOQL error is thrown.An SOQL Limit is reached in the following scenarios.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Approval process	Number of line items supported
Total Number of Approval Requests supported per unique user	Up to 35 Approval Requests
Total number of line items supported that **need approvals**. (Assuming each line item will need all 5 levels of approvers in sequential format)	Up to 35 line items
Total number of approval requests supported per quote	Up to 225 Approval Requests
Total number of child process (line item level) approval requests supported per quote	Up to 175 Approval Requests
Total number of approval requests assigned to the user after which the user can Reassign or add an Ad hoc approver successfully.	Up to 40 requests.
Recall and Resubmission limits	35LIs with 5 level approvals in a sequential format. 4 levels are approved. Recall the quote, SOQL error on Resubmit.

FAQs

- How to determine version numbers?
- How to find the merge server end point?
- How to determine the salesforce.com organization ID?
- How to grant login access?

How to determine version numbers?

Login to salesforce.com with the affected login credentials.

1. Go to **Your Name** > **Setup** > **App Setup** > **Installed Packages**.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

2. In the **Installed Packages** section, all the installed packages are displayed. You can find the version numbers in the **Version Number** column.

How to find the merge server end point?

1. Go to **Setup** > **App Setup** > **Develop** > **Custom Settings**.
2. Click **Manage** for **Comply System Properties**.
3. Click **System Properties** and the **Merge Webservice Endpoint** setting is displayed. The https://mergeserver.apttus.net:9876 portion of the setting is what will be helpful to customer support.

How to determine the salesforce.com organization ID?

1. Go to **Your Name** > **Setup** > **Administration Setup** > **Company Profile** > **Company Information**.
2. From the Organization Detail pane, provide the Salesforce.com **Organization ID**.

How to grant login access?

1. Go to **Your Name** > **Setup** > **Personal Setup** > **My Personal Information** > **Grant Login Access**.
2. From the **Apttus Support** picklist, select an option for access duration.
3. Click **Save**.

Migrating Approval Data

This section outlines the migration of Apttus Intelligent Workflow and Approvals from the source (Dev/Test) to any other target (Dev/Test/Prod) environment.

Tools used for Migrating Data

Dataloader.iMio (to export/ import data with reference ids) www.dataloader.io

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Naming convention

- Source Environment > SrcEnv
- Target Environment > TrgEnv

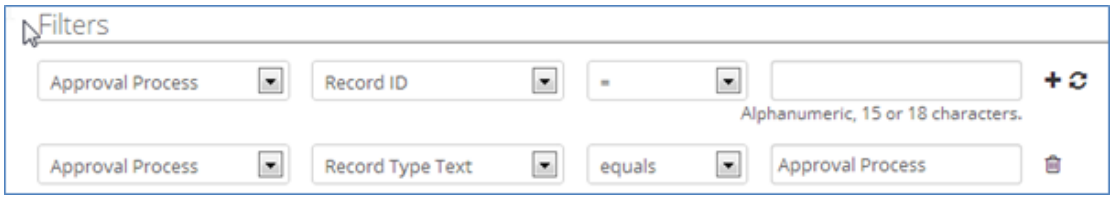
Execute the following steps

1. Ensure all other metadata is migrated beforehand. For example, any new fields created on Quote/Agreement objects which are used in Approval Process.
2. Create External ID fields for the objects, if not created.Text field with External Id flag checked, give any appropriate name.
    a. Approval Process
    b. Approval Rule Dimension
    c. Approval Rule
    d. Approval Rule Entry
3. In the object Approval Process create a formula field Record Type Text with return type Text. Formula : RecordType.Name.
4. For all this objects, copy Id for each of the records into External ID Fields in the SrcEnv. For this you will have to export the data from SrcEnv, update the data in the CSV and import the data back into the SrcEnv. For example, ID and External ID should be the same for all these records in source environment.

Exporting Data

- For Object Approval Rule Dimension export all records from SrcEnv.
- For Object Approval Rule export all records from SrcEnv.
- For Object Approval Rule Entry export all records from SrcEnv
- For Object Approval Rule Assignee export all records from SrcEnv
- For Object Approval Process from SrcEnv (*copy paste the filter values*)
    - Export records with filter Record Type Text = Approval Process and a specific Process Name.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



1. Manually update Backup Admin field in the CSV with the user id from TrgEnv.
    a. Export records with filter Record Type Text = ‘Entry Criteria’
    b. Export records with filter Record Type Text = ‘Initial Submission Action’
    c. Export records with filter Record Type Text = ‘Final Action’
    d. Export records with filter Record Type Text = ‘Step Group’
    e. Export records with filter Record Type Text = ‘Step’
2. Blank out all data from Step Assignee ID column in CSV.
    a. Export records with filter Record Type Text = Step Filter Criteria.

There are **11** CSV files in total.

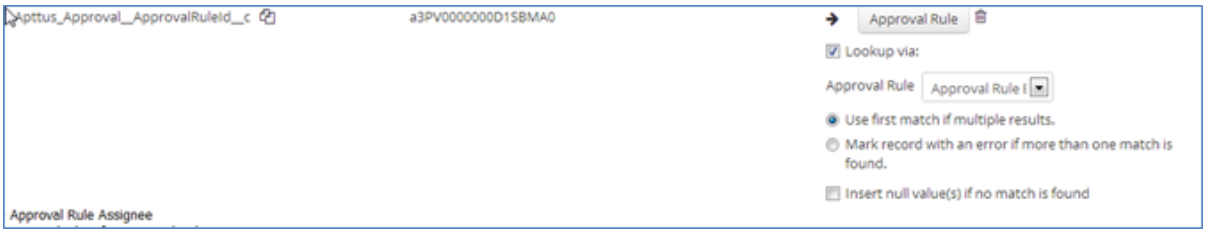
Importing Data

> Before importing data it is recommended that you sort the spreadsheet by record name (for advanced logic purposes).

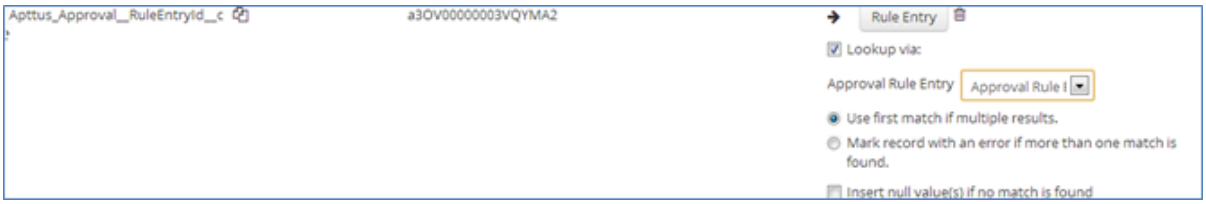
1. Import ‘Approval Rule Dimension’ csv in TrgEnv. No Lookups are required.
2. Import ‘Approval Rule’ csv in TrgEnv.
3. Use lookup to External ID for all **dimension** fields.

4. Import the Approval Rule Entry CSV in TrgEnv.
5. Use lookup to External ID for **Approval Rule** field.

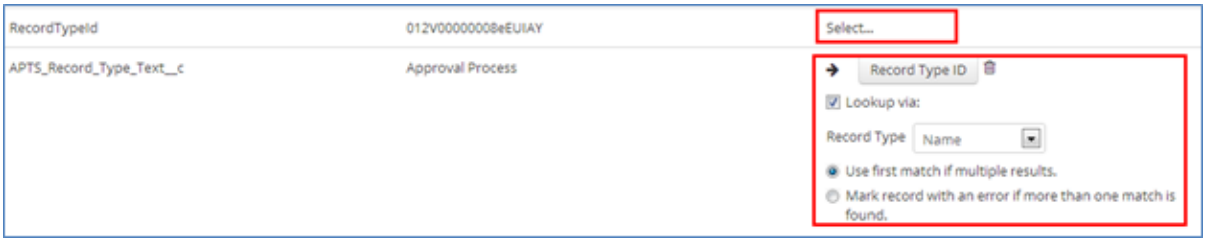
Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



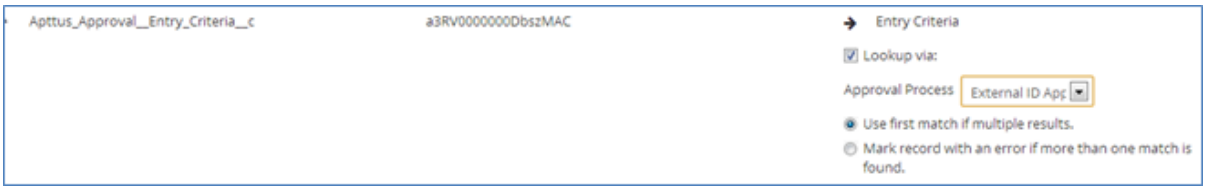
6. Import the Approval Rule Assignee CSV in TrgEnv.
7. Use Lookup to External ID for **Rule Entry** Field.



8. Import Approval Process CSV in TrgEnv.
9. Remove Mapping for RecordTypeId
10. Add Mapping to the custom field APTS_Record_Type_Text__c, to Record Type ID, Lookup via: Name.



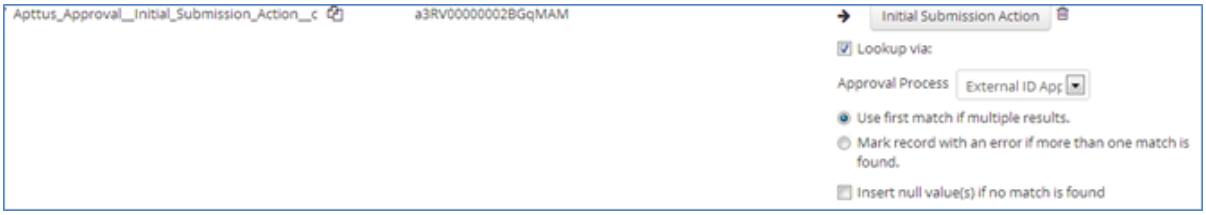
11. Import the Entry Criteria csv in TrgEnv.
12. Use the lookup to External ID for **Entry Criteria** field.



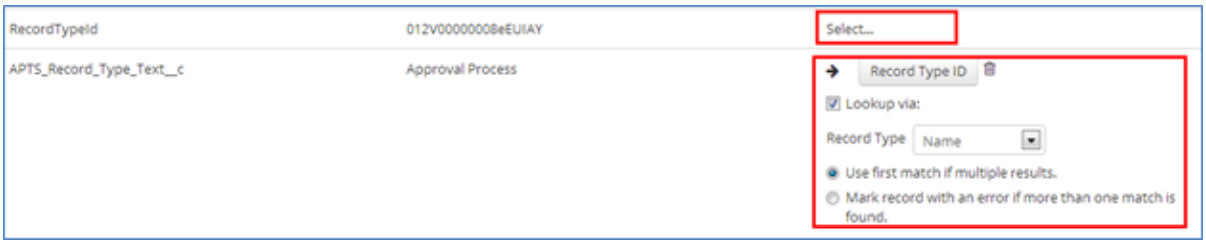
13. Remove the mapping for RecordTypeId
14. Add the mapping to custom field APTS_Record_Type_Text__c, to Record Type ID, Lookup via: Name

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

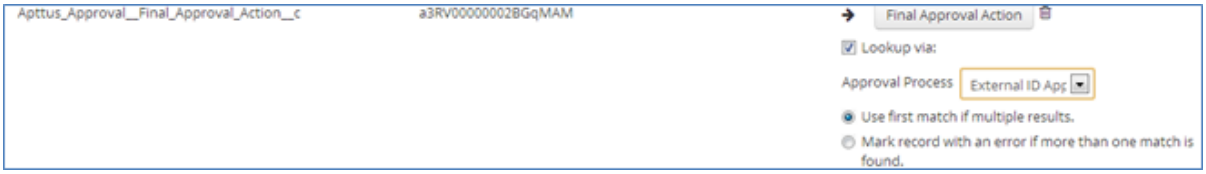
15. Import Initial Submission Action csv in TrgEnv.
16. Use the lookup to External ID for **Initial Submission Action** Field.



17. Remove Mapping for the RecordTypeId
18. Add Mapping to the custom field APTS_Record_Type_Text__c, to Record Type ID, Lookup via: Name
19. Import Final Action csv in TrgEnv.



20. Use the lookup to External ID for **Final Approval Action** Field.



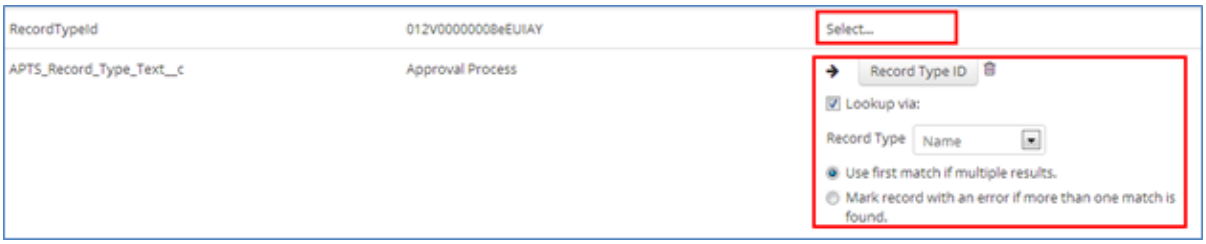
21. Remove Mapping for RecordTypeId.
22. Add a mapping to custom field APTS_Record_Type_Text__c, to Record Type ID, Lookup via: Name.
23. Import Step Group csv in TrgEnv.

> **Important**
>
> Any approval process must have only one Step Group and all other Steps must be associated to that Step Group only.

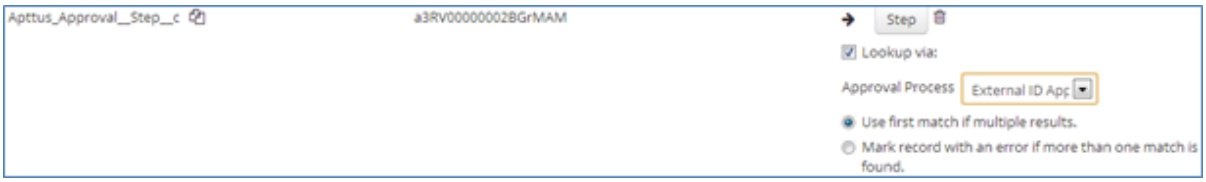
24. Use lookup to External ID for **Step Group** Field.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

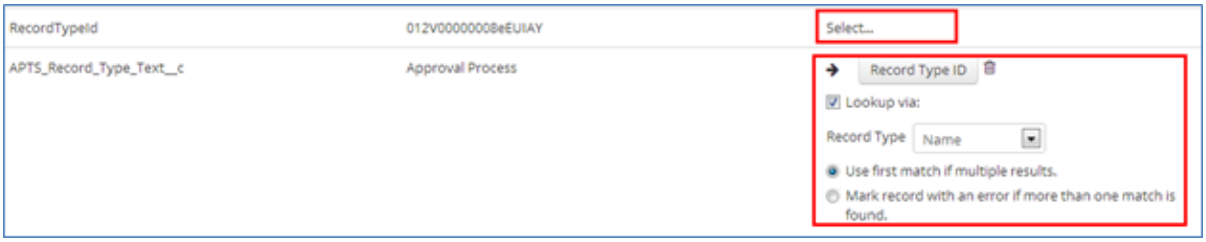
25. Remove the mapping for RecordTypeId.
26. Add the mapping to custom field APTS_Record_Type_Text__c, to Record Type ID, Lookup via: Name.



27. Import 'Step' csv in TrgEnv.
28. Use Lookup to External ID for **Step** Field.

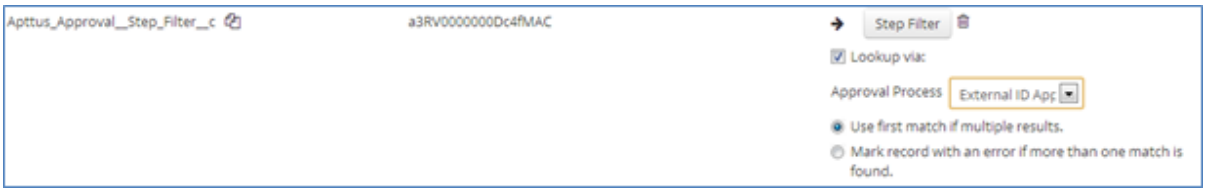


29. Remove the Mapping for RecordTypeId
30. Add the Mapping to custom field APTS_Record_Type_Text__c, to Record Type ID, Lookup via: Name

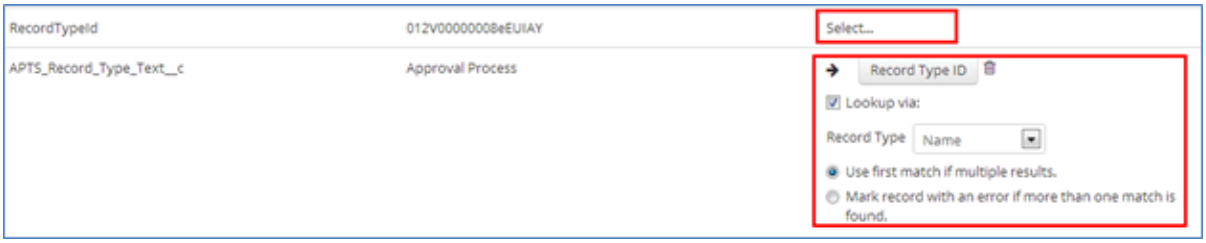


31. Import the Step Filter Criteria csv in TrgEnv
32. Use Lookup to External ID for **Step Filter** Field.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.



33. Remove Mapping for RecordTypeId.
34. Add Mapping to custom field APTS_Record_Type_Text__c, to Record Type ID, Lookup via: Name.



There is an issue with Advanced filter logic in Step Filter Criteria as there is no sequence number stored in the export files. If you are using Advanced Filter Logic, verify it manually after importing all the data.

Advanced Filter Condition
1 OR (2 AND 3) OR (4 AND 5) OR (6 AND 7) OR (8 AND 9)

For example, please also note if the user ID is not the same across the orgs, it may cause issues, and the user ID might have to be populated manually.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

Apttus Copyright Disclaimer

Copyright © 2019 Apttus Corporation (“Apttus”) and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

No part of this document, or any information linked to or referenced herein, may be reproduced, distributed, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including photocopying, recording, or other electronic or mechanical methods, without the prior written consent of Apttus. All information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error free.

This document may describe certain features and functionality of software that Apttus makes available for use under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not, in any form, or by any means, use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part of the software. Reverse engineering, disassembly, decompilation of, or the creation of derivative work(s) from, the software is strictly prohibited. Additionally, this document may contain descriptions of software modules that are optional and for which you may not have purchased a license. As a result, your specific software solution and/or implementation may differ from those described in this document.

U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS: Apttus software, including any operating system(s), integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, delivered to U.S. Government end users are “commercial computer software” pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation of the programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, shall be subject to license terms and license restrictions applicable to the programs. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

Neither the software nor the documentation were developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure its safe use. Apttus and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Apttus and X-Author are registered trademarks of Apttus and/or its affiliates.

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.

The documentation and/or software may provide links to Web sites and access to content, products, and services from third parties. Apttus is not responsible for the availability of, or any content provided by third parties. You bear all risks associated with the use of such content. If you choose to purchase any products or services from a third party, the relationship is directly between you and the third party. Apttus is not responsible for: (a) the quality of third-party products or services; or (b) fulfilling any of the terms of the agreement with the third party, including delivery of products or services and warranty obligations related to purchased products or services. Apttus is not responsible for any loss or damage of any sort that you may incur from dealing with any third party.

For additional resources and support, please visit https://community.apttus.com.

DOC ID: IWASFSUM19AGREVA20190910

Copyright ©2018 Apttus Corporation. All rights reserved.